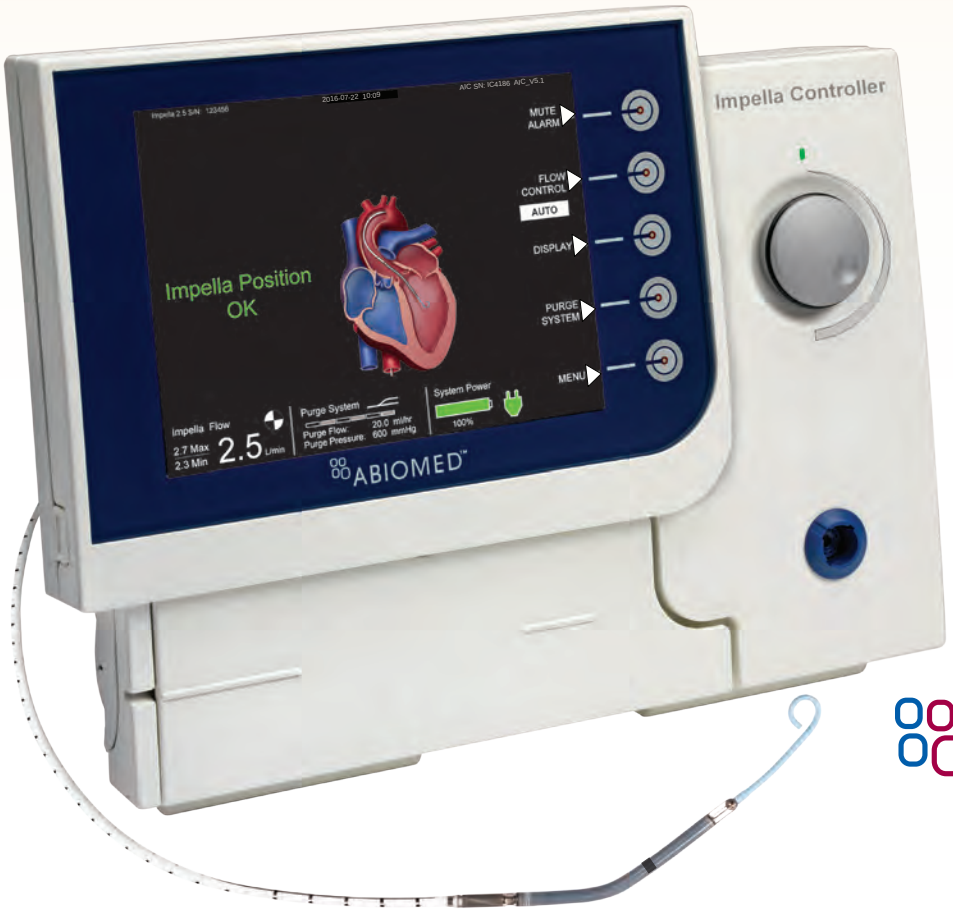
Impella Ventricular Support Systems

for Use During Cardiogenic Shock and High-Risk PCI

Impella 2.5™, Impella 5.0™, Impella LD™, and Impella CP® (Shock)
Impella 2.5™ and Impella CP® (HRPCI)

INSTRUCTIONS FOR USE AND CLINICAL REFERENCE MANUAL

(United States only)



ABIOMED®

Recovering hearts. Saving lives.™

IMPORTANT NOTICE: Read this entire manual before using the Automated Impella® Controller and Impella® 2.5, 5.0, LD, or Impella CP® Circulatory Support System (Impella® System). The Impella® System is to be used only in accordance with this manual. This manual is only applicable to Impella® Systems using the Automated Impella® Controller.

Information contained in this document is subject to change without notice.

IMPELLA VENTRICULAR SUPPORT SYSTEMS FOR USE DURING CARDIOGENIC SHOCK AND HIGH-RISK PCI INSTRUCTIONS FOR USE AND CLINICAL REFERENCE MANUAL

(UNITED STATES ONLY)

Rx Only

Abiomed, Inc.
22 Cherry Hill Drive
Danvers, MA 01923
978-646-1400 (voice)
978-774-7240 (fax)
clinical@abiomed.com (email)

Abiomed Europe GmbH
Neuenhofer Weg 3
52074 Aachen, Germany
+49 (241) 8860-0 (voice)
+49 (241) 8860-111 (fax)
europe@abiomed.com (email)

www.abiomed.com

24-Hour Clinical Support Center:
N. America 1-800-422-8666
Europe +49 (0) 1805 2246633

February 2018
Document No. 0042-9023, Rev. E

ABIOMED®
Recovering hearts. Saving lives.™

TABLE OF CONTENTS

TABLE OF CONTENTS

APPENDICES

TABLE OF CONTENTS

FIGURES

TABLE OF CONTENTS

TABLE OF CONTENTS

TABLES

INTRODUCTION

PURPOSE OF MANUAL

This Instructions for Use and Clinical Reference Manual is designed for healthcare professionals. It contains clinical and technical information to guide healthcare professionals in their use of the Impella 2.5™, and Impella CP® Catheters during High Risk PCI (HRPCI) procedures, and use of the Impella 2.5™, Impella 5.0™, Impella LD™, and Impella CP® Catheters to treat cardiogenic shock. The Impella Ventricular Support Systems perform life-sustaining functions. To use the system you must understand and follow these instructions. The Impella Ventricular Support Systems may be used only for its intended purpose.

MANUAL OVERVIEW

This manual provides instructions for use of the Impella 2.5, 5.0, LD, and Impella CP Catheters with the Automated Impella® Controller. The following summarizes the contents of each section of the manual.

- **Section 1: Indications, Contraindications, and Potential Adverse Events** discusses indications for use of the Impella Catheter with the Automated Impella Controller, contraindications, and potential adverse events that may be associated with the use of the system.
- **Section 2: Warnings and Cautions** discusses the warnings and cautions pertaining to the use of the Impella Catheter with the Automated Impella Controller.
- **Section 3: The Impella Catheter and Automated Impella Controller** provides an overview of the system and describes its major components and features.
- **Section 4: Using the Automated Impella Controller** describes the controls and various screen types on the Automated Impella Controller.
- **Section 5: Using the Automated Impella Controller with the Impella Catheter** provides the procedures for using the Impella Ventricular Support Systems.
- **Section 6: High-Risk PCI Clinical Experience** provides an overview of clinical studies of the Impella 2.5 and Impella CP for use in HRPCI. **Cardiogenic Shock Clinical Experience** provides an overview of clinical studies of the Impella 2.5, Impella CP, Impella 5.0, and Impella LD for use in cardiogeneic shock.
- **Section 7: Patient Management Topics** provides key information on various topics related to management of patients with the Impella Catheter and Automated Impella Controller.
- **Section 8: Automated Impella Controller Alarms** provides a listing of Automated Impella Controller alarms as well as information on what to do to resolve them.
- **Section 9: General System Information** contains information including definitions for key terms that appear in the manual, descriptions of the abbreviations and symbols that appear on Impella Catheter and Automated Impella Controller components and packaging, technical information pertaining to the Impella Catheter and Automated Impella Controller, and instructions on cleaning and storing system components as well as returning components to Abiomed.
- **Appendices** at the end of the manual provide supplemental information about topics including the Impella Limited Service Warranty; Abiomed-approved guidewires and introducers; and the Automated Impella Controller menu structure.

1 INDICATIONS, CONTRAINDICATIONS, AND POTENTIAL ADVERSE EVENTS

INDICATIONS (UNITED STATES)

THE IMPELLA VENTRICULAR SUPPORT SYSTEMS HAVE BEEN APPROVED FOR TWO SEPARATE INDICATIONS FOR USE

Impella 2.5® and Impella CP®

The Impella 2.5 and the Impella CP are temporary (<6 hours) ventricular support systems indicated for use during high-risk percutaneous coronary interventions (PCI) performed in elective or urgent, hemodynamically stable patients with severe coronary artery disease and depressed left ventricular ejection fraction, when a heart team, including a cardiac surgeon, has determined high-risk PCI is the appropriate therapeutic option. Use of the Impella 2.5 and the Impella CP in these patients may prevent hemodynamic instability which can result from repeat episodes of reversible myocardial ischemia that occur during planned temporary coronary occlusions and may reduce peri- and post-procedural adverse events.

Impella 2.5, Impella CP, Impella 5.0®, and Impella LD®

The Impella 2.5, Impella CP, Impella 5.0, and Impella LD Catheters, in conjunction with the Automated Impella® Controller, are temporary ventricular support devices intended for short term use ($\leq$ 4 days for the Impella 2.5 and Impella CP, and $\leq$ 6 days for the Impella 5.0 and Impella LD) and indicated for the treatment of ongoing cardiogenic shock that occurs:

- immediately (<48 hours) following acute myocardial infarction or open heart surgery, or
- in the setting of cardiomyopathy, including peripartum cardiomyopathy, or myocarditis

as a result of isolated left ventricular failure that is not responsive to optimal medical management and conventional treatment measures.* The intent of the Impella Support Systems therapy is to reduce ventricular work and to provide the circulatory support necessary to allow heart recovery and early assessment of residual myocardial function.

*Optimal medical management and conventional treatment measures include volume loading and use of pressors and inotropes, with or without IABP

CONTRAINDICATIONS (UNITED STATES)

Patients with aortic stenosis or other abnormal aortic valve performance may be compromised by the use of the Impella Catheter. Patients with aortic valve disease should be observed for aortic insufficiency.

The Impella Ventricular Support System is contraindicated in patients with:

- Mural thrombus in the left ventricle
- Mechanical aortic valve or heart constrictive device
- Aortic valve stenosis/calcification (equivalent to an orifice of 0.6 cm^2 or less)
- Moderate to severe aortic insufficiency (echocardiographic assessment of aortic insufficiency graded as ≥ +2)
- Severe peripheral arterial disease that precludes the placement of an Impella Catheter
- Significant right heart failure
- Combined cardiorespiratory failure
- Presence of an atrial or ventricular sepal defect (including post-infarct VSD)
- Left ventricular rupture
- Cardiac tamponade

POTENTIAL ADVERSE EVENTS (UNITED STATES)

- Acute renal dysfunction
- Aortic insufficiency
- Aortic valve injury
- Atrial fibrillation
- Bleeding
- Cardiogenic shock
- Cardiac tamponade
- Cardiopulmonary resuscitation
- Cerebral vascular accident / Stroke
- Death
- Device malfunction
- Failure to achieve angiographic success
- Hemolysis
- Hepatic failure
- Insertion site infection
- Limb ischemia
- Myocardial infarction
- Need for cardiac, thoracic or abdominal operation
- Perforation
- Renal failure
- Repeat revascularization
- Respiratory dysfunction
- Sepsis
- Severe hypotension
- Thrombocytopenia
- Thrombotic vascular (non-CNS) complication
- Transient ischemic attack
- Vascular injury
- Ventricular arrhythmia, fibrillation or tachycardia

2 WARNINGS AND CAUTIONS

WARNINGS

Use of the Impella Ventricular Support Systems by trained and experienced practitioners has been associated with improved outcomes. Consequently, the first use of Impella® should be preceded by the completion of a contemporary Abiomed Impella® training program and include on-site proctoring during the first use by Abiomed clinical support personnel certified in the use of Impella®.

Institution of circulatory support using Impella® has not been studied in the following conditions:

- Presence of irreversible end-organ failure
- Presence of severe anoxic brain injury

Fluoroscopy is required to guide placement of the Impella® Catheter and, for the Impella CP®, during rewire through the guidewire access port. The small placement guidewire must be reliably observed at all times.

Be sure that the stopcock on the peel-away introducer or repositioning sheath is always kept in the closed position. Significant bleed back can result if the stopcock is open.

Avoid manual compression of the inlet and outlet areas of the cannula assembly.

The sterile components of the Impella Ventricular Support Systems can be used only if the sterilization indicators show that the contents have been sterilized, the packaging is not damaged, and the expiration date has not elapsed.

Do ***NOT*** resterilize or reuse the Impella® Catheter. It is a disposable device and is intended for single use only. Reuse, reprocessing, or resterilization may compromise the structural integrity of the catheter and/or lead to catheter failure which, in turn, may result in patient injury, illness, or death.

Retrograde flow will occur across the aortic valve if the flow rate of the Impella® Catheter is less than 0.5 L/min.

To prevent malfunction of the locking mechanism of the peel-away introducer, do ***NOT*** hold the hemostatic valve while inserting into the artery.

To prevent failure of the peel-away introducer, remove the peel-away introducer prior to transport when activated clotting time (ACT) is less than 150 seconds.

Do ***NOT*** use saline in the purge system.

Do ***NOT*** use an Impella Ventricular Support Systems if any part of the system is damaged.

To prevent the risk of explosion, do ***NOT*** operate the Impella Ventricular Support Systems near flammable anesthetics.

If at any time during the course of support with the Impella® Catheter, the Automated Impella® Controller alarms "Purge Pressure Low" or "Purge System Open," follow the instructions presented in section 5 of this manual.

MR Unsafe - Do ***NOT*** subject a patient who has been implanted with an Impella System to magnetic resonance imaging (MRI). The strong magnetic energy produced by an MRI machine may cause the Impella System components to stop working, and result in injuries to the patient. An MRI may also damage the Impella System electronics.

Warnings

Warnings alert you to situations that can cause death or serious injury. The red symbol ⚠ appears before warning messages.

	Cardiopulmonary support (CPR) should be initiated immediately per hospital protocol if indicated for any patient supported by the Impella® Catheter. When initiating CPR, reduce the Impella® Catheter flow rate. When cardiac function has been restored, return flow rate to the previous level and assess placement signals on the controller.
	During defibrillation, do ***NOT*** touch the Impella® Catheter, cables, or Automated Impella® Controller.
	Power the Automated Impella® Controller using its internal battery if the integrity of the protective earth conductor is questionable.
	Lithium-ion battery replacement by inadequately trained personnel could result in excessive temperatures, fire, or explosion. Only technicians authorized by Abiomed should remove or change the battery.
	To avoid risk of electric shock, this equipment must only be connected to a supply mains with protective earth.
	No modification of this equipment is allowed.
	Medical electrical equipment needs special precautions regarding EMC and needs to be installed and put into service according to the electromagnetic compatibility (EMC) information provided in section 9 of this manual.
	During transport, the Automated Impella® Controller may be exposed to stronger electromagnetic disturbance than during in-hospital use. Strong electromagnetic disturbance may cause the Automated Impella® Controller to display soft button menu selections that were not selected by the user. Operators should be aware that, under these conditions, the operating parameters are not affected. No user intervention is required. Monitor Impella® Catheter flow and patient hemodynamics to confirm normal operation. The condition will resolve itself once the Automated Impella® Controller is no longer exposed to the disturbance.
	Portable and mobile RF communications equipment can affect medical electrical equipment.
	The equipment or system should not be used adjacent to or stacked with other equipment. If adjacent or stacked use is necessary, the equipment or system should be observed to verify normal operation in the configuration in which it will be used.
	Use of cables, other than those sold by Abiomed, may result in increased emissions or decreased immunity of the Automated Impella® Controller.
	The Automated Impella® Controller uses RFID (radio frequency identification) to identify and communicate with the purge cassette. Other equipment may interfere with the Automated Impella® Controller even if that other equipment complies with CISPR emission requirements.
	Infusion through the sideport of the introducer can be done only after all air is removed from the introducer. If performed, the infusion should be done for flushing purposes only and ***NOT*** for delivering therapy or monitoring blood pressure.
	Do ***NOT*** use the guidewire access port on the Impella CP® as an arterial line. The stylet should remain in place until guidewire access is required through the Impella® Catheter.

CAUTIONS

	Handle with care. The Impella® Catheter can be damaged during removal from packaging, preparation, insertion, and removal. Do ***NOT*** bend, pull, or place excess pressure on the catheter or mechanical components at any time.
	Physicians should exercise special care when inserting the Impella® Catheter during active Cardiopulmonary Resuscitation (CPR). In addition, active CPR maneuvers may change the position of the Impella device. Check that the pump is positioned correctly in the left ventricle after CPR with echocardiography guidance.
	Patients with aortic stenosis or other abnormal aortic valve performance may be compromised by the use of the Impella® Catheter. Patients with aortic valve disease should be observed for aortic insufficiency.
	Partial circulatory support with Impella® has been associated with more extensive use of rotational atherectomy. Extensive use of rotational atherectomy has been associated with a periprocedural increase in cardiac biomarkers indicative of myocardial injury. Rotational atherectomy, with or without the use of hemodynamic support, should be used in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions for use.
	Physicians should exercise special care when inserting the Impella® Catheter in patients with known or suspected unrepaired abdominal aortic aneurysm or significant descending thoracic aortic aneurysm or dissection of the ascending, transverse, or descending aorta.
	Use only original accessories and replacement parts supplied by Abiomed.
	Do ***NOT*** use damaged or contaminated connector cables.
	To prevent device failure, do ***NOT*** start the Impella® Catheter until the guidewire has been removed.
	Do ***NOT*** remove the Impella® Catheter over the length of the guidewire.
	When replacing the purge cassette, the replacement process must be completed within 2 minutes. The Impella® Catheter may be damaged if replacement takes longer than 2 minutes.
	To prevent malfunction of the Automated Impella® Controller, avoid long-term exposure to direct sunlight and excessive heat (40°C).
	To prevent overheating and improper operation, do ***NOT*** block the cooling vents of the Automated Impella® Controller while it is operating.
	Do ***NOT*** kink or clamp the Impella® Catheter with anything other than a soft jaw vascular clamp. Do ***NOT*** kink or clamp the peel-away introducer.
	During case start, make sure the yellow luer connection between the purge tubing and Y connector is tightened and not leaking.
	The Li-Ion batteries must be charged for 5 hours prior to system operation in order to meet the runtime requirement of 1 hour. Failure to do so will yield a shorter runtime. After being unplugged, the Automated Impella® Controller will operate for at least 60 minutes after the batteries have been fully charged.

Cautions

Cautions indicate situations in which equipment may malfunction, be damaged, or cease to operate. The yellow symbol ⚠ appears before caution messages.

	Minimize exposure of Impella Ventricular Support Systems components to sources of electromagnetic interference (EMI). Exposure to sources of EMI, such as cell phones and two-way radios, may cause operational interference. To clear interference, either increase the distance between system components and the EMI source or turn off the EMI source.
	During use with the Remote Link, a Medical Device Data System (MDDS), if the Automated Impella® Controller is exposed to strong electromagnetic disturbances, the Remote Link may either restart or shut down. Operators should be aware that, under these conditions, the Automated Impella® Controller operating parameters are not affected. If the Remote Link stops working because of electromagnetic disturbances, a hard restart (by first disconnecting, and then reconnecting its AC power) will correct the problem.
	Operation of Impella Ventricular Support Systems components may interfere with the operation of other devices. If interference occurs, increase the distance between the device and system components.
	Have a backup Automated Impella® Controller, purge cassette, connector cable, and Impella® Catheter available in the unlikely event of a device failure.
	Do ***NOT*** use the bed mount as a handle.
	Do ***NOT*** alter the Impella® Introducer kit in any way.
	Aspiration and saline flushing of the Impella® Introducer kit sheath, dilator, and valve should be performed to help minimize the potential for air embolism and clot formation.
	Indwelling introducer sheaths should be internally supported by a catheter or dilator.
	Dilators and catheters should be removed slowly from the sheath. Rapid removal may damage the valve, resulting in blood flow through the valve.
	Never advance the guidewire or sheath when resistance is met. Determine the cause of resistance using fluoroscopy and take remedial action.
	When injecting or aspirating through the sheath, use the sideport only.
	Operation of the system without heparin in the purge solution has not been tested. In the event that a patient is intolerant to heparin, due to heparin-induced thrombocytopenia or bleeding, physicians should use their clinical judgment to assess the risks versus benefits of operating the Impella Ventricular Support Systems without heparin. If it is in the best interest of the patient to operate the system without heparin, the dextrose solution is still required, and physicians should consider systemic delivery of an alternative anticoagulant. Do ***NOT*** add any alternative anticoagulant (such as a direct thrombin inhibitor) to the purge fluid. The Impella® Catheter has not been tested with any alternative anticoagulants in the purge solution.

3 THE IMPELLA® CATHETER AND AUTOMATED IMPELLA® CONTROLLER

OVERVIEW

The Impella Catheter is an intravascular microaxial blood pump that supports a patient's circulatory system. The Impella 2.5, 5.0, and Impella CP Catheters can be inserted percutaneously through the femoral or axillary artery and into the left ventricle. The Impella LD is inserted directly through the ascending aorta and into the left ventricle.

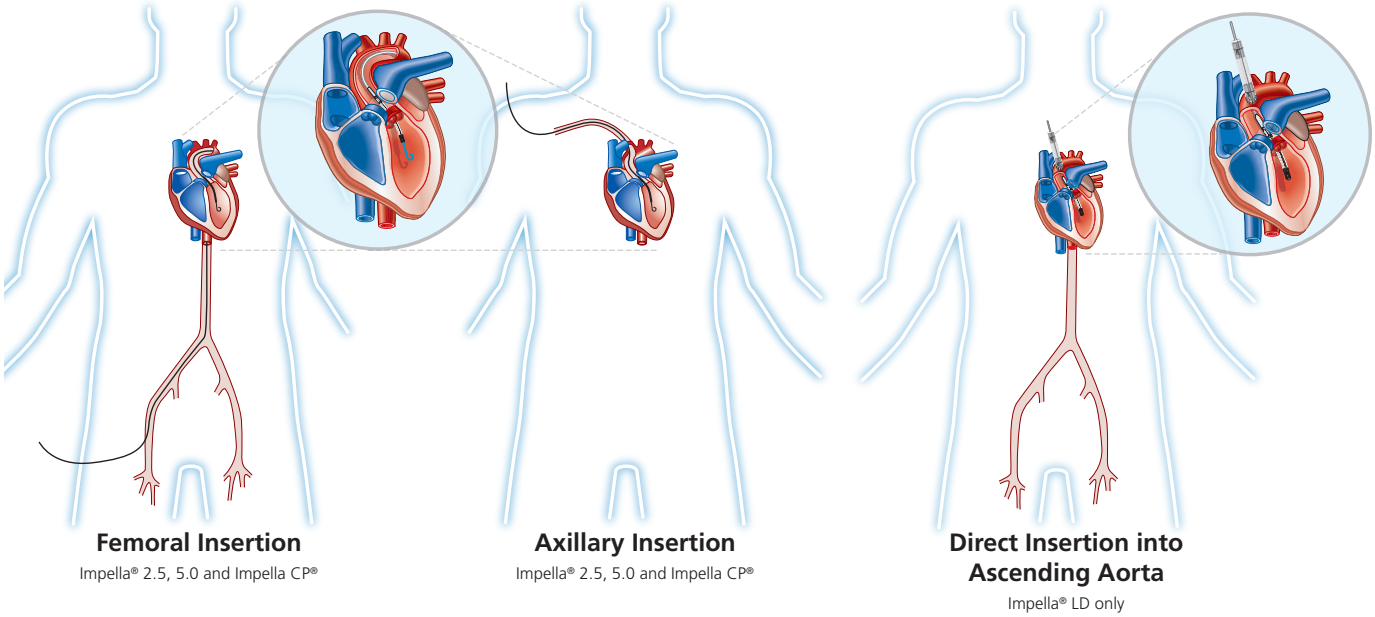


Figure 3.1 Impella Catheter in the Heart

When properly positioned, the Impella Catheter delivers blood from the inlet area, which sits inside the left ventricle, through the cannula, to the outlet opening in the ascending aorta. Physicians and device operators monitor the correct positioning and functioning of the Impella Catheter on the display screen of the Automated Impella Controller.

This section describes the components of the Impella Catheter and the Automated Impella Controller, as well as the accessory components.

REUSABLE SYSTEM COMPONENTS

The Impella Ventricular Support Systems consist of the following reusable components:

- Automated Impella® Controller—provides the user interface, alarm indications, and portable battery
- Automated Impella® Controller cart—for easy transport of the Automated Impella® Controller

SINGLE-USE SYSTEM COMPONENTS

The Impella Ventricular Support Systems also include the following single-use components:

- Impella® Catheter
- Purge cassette
- Introducer kit (Impella® 2.5 and Impella CP®)
- 0.018 inch, 260 cm placement guidewire (Impella® 2.5, 5.0, and Impella CP®)
- Impella® Axillary Insertion kit (Impella® 2.5, 5.0, and Impella CP®)
- Connector cable
- Incision template (Impella® LD)

IMPELLA® SET-UP AND INSERTION KITS (IMPELLA® 2.5 AND IMPELLA CP®)

The components of the Impella® 2.5 and Impella CP® Systems are each packaged into a single box called the Impella® Set-up and Insertion kit. Table 3.1 describes the contents of these kits.

Table 3.1 Impella® Set-up and Insertion Kit Components

The Impella® Set-up and Insertion kit contains the following:

- Impella® Catheter
- 0.018 inch, 260 cm placement guidewire
- Connector cable
- Purge cassette
- Introducer kit
  - » Peel-away introducer (13 Fr for Impella® 2.5, 14 Fr for Impella CP®)
  - » Dilator(s) (13 Fr for Impella® 2.5, 8 Fr, 10 Fr, 12 Fr, and 14 Fr for Impella CP®)
  - » 18 G Seldinger needle (Impella® 2.5)
  - » 12 cc syringe (Impella® 2.5)
  - » 0.035 inch stiff access guidewire

IMPELLA® AXILLARY INSERTION KIT (IMPELLA® 2.5, 5.0 AND IMPELLA CP®)

Table 3.2 describes the contents of the Impella® Axillary Insertion kit.

Table 3.2 Impella® Axillary Insertion Kit

The Impella® Axillary Insertion kit contains the following:

- 23 Fr diameter x 6 cm length peel-away introducer
- 2 graft locks used to attach a graft onto the introducer *(Note: Only one graft lock is required when used with the recommended Hemashield Platinum graft; a back-up is provided.)*
- 8 Fr silicone-coated lubrication dilator
- 2 silicone plugs

It is recommended that the Impella® Axillary Insertion kit be used in conjunction with a 10 mm diameter x 20 cm length Hemashield Platinum graft.

SYSTEM CONFIGURATIONS

Initial set-up configuration for Impella® 2.5 and Impella CP®

Figure 3.2a illustrates how the Automated Impella® Controller connects to the Impella® 2.5 or Impella CP® Catheter and accessory components in the initial set-up configuration.

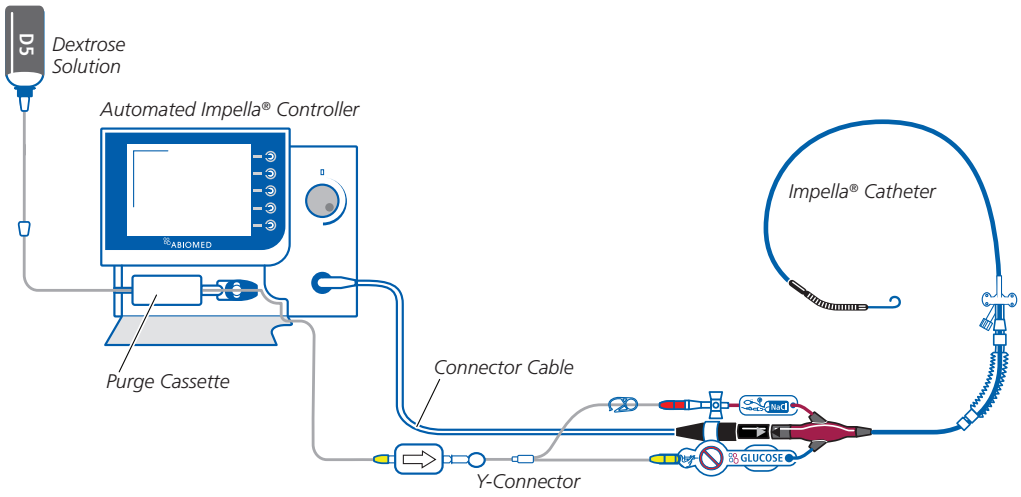


Figure 3.2a Set-up Configuration of the Automated Impella® Controller, Impella® 2.5 or Impella CP® Catheter, and Accessories (Impella CP® shown)

Standard configuration for Impella® 2.5 and Impella CP®

Figure 3.2b illustrates the standard configuration of the Impella® 2.5 or Impella CP® Catheter, Automated Impella® Controller, and accessory components.

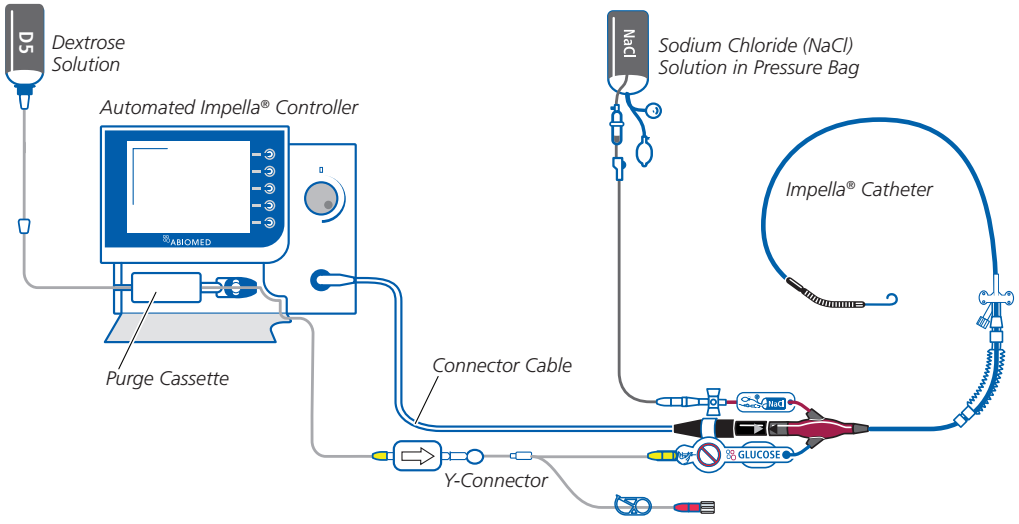


Figure 3.2b Standard Configuration of the Automated Impella® Controller, Impella® 2.5 or Impella CP® Catheter, and Accessories (Impella CP® shown)

System configuration for Impella® 5.0 and LD

Figure 3.3 illustrates how the Automated Impella® Controller connects to the Impella® 5.0 or LD Catheter and accessory components in the initial set-up configuration.

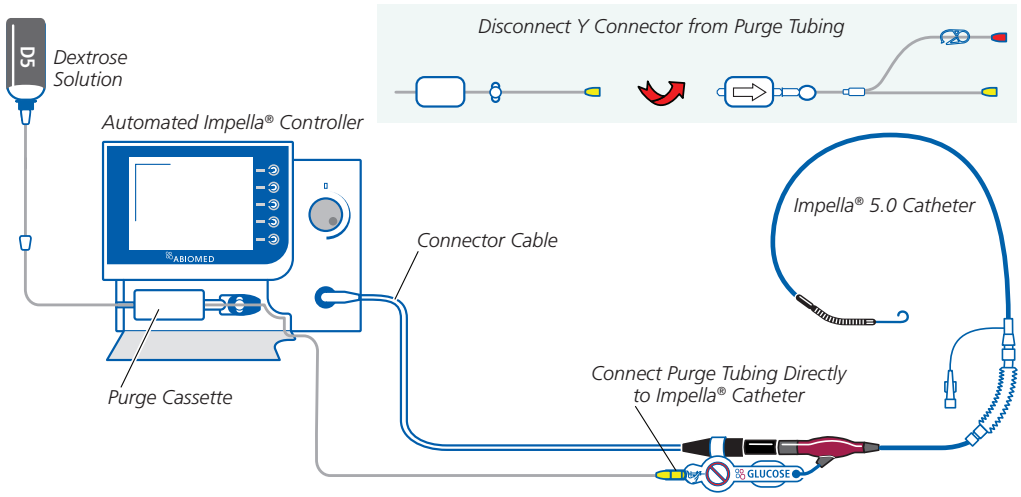


Figure 3.3 Set-up Configuration of the Automated Impella® Controller, Impella® 5.0 or LD Catheter, and Accessories (Impella® 5.0 shown)

IMPELLA® CATHETER

The Impella® Catheter is an intravascular microaxial blood pump that delivers up to 2.5 liters (Impella® 2.5), 3.3 liters (Impella CP®) or 5.0 liters (Impella® 5.0 and LD) of blood per minute from the left ventricle into the aorta. Figure 3.4 illustrates the Impella® Catheters. Table 3.3 describes each component from the pigtail at one end to the check valve on the other end.

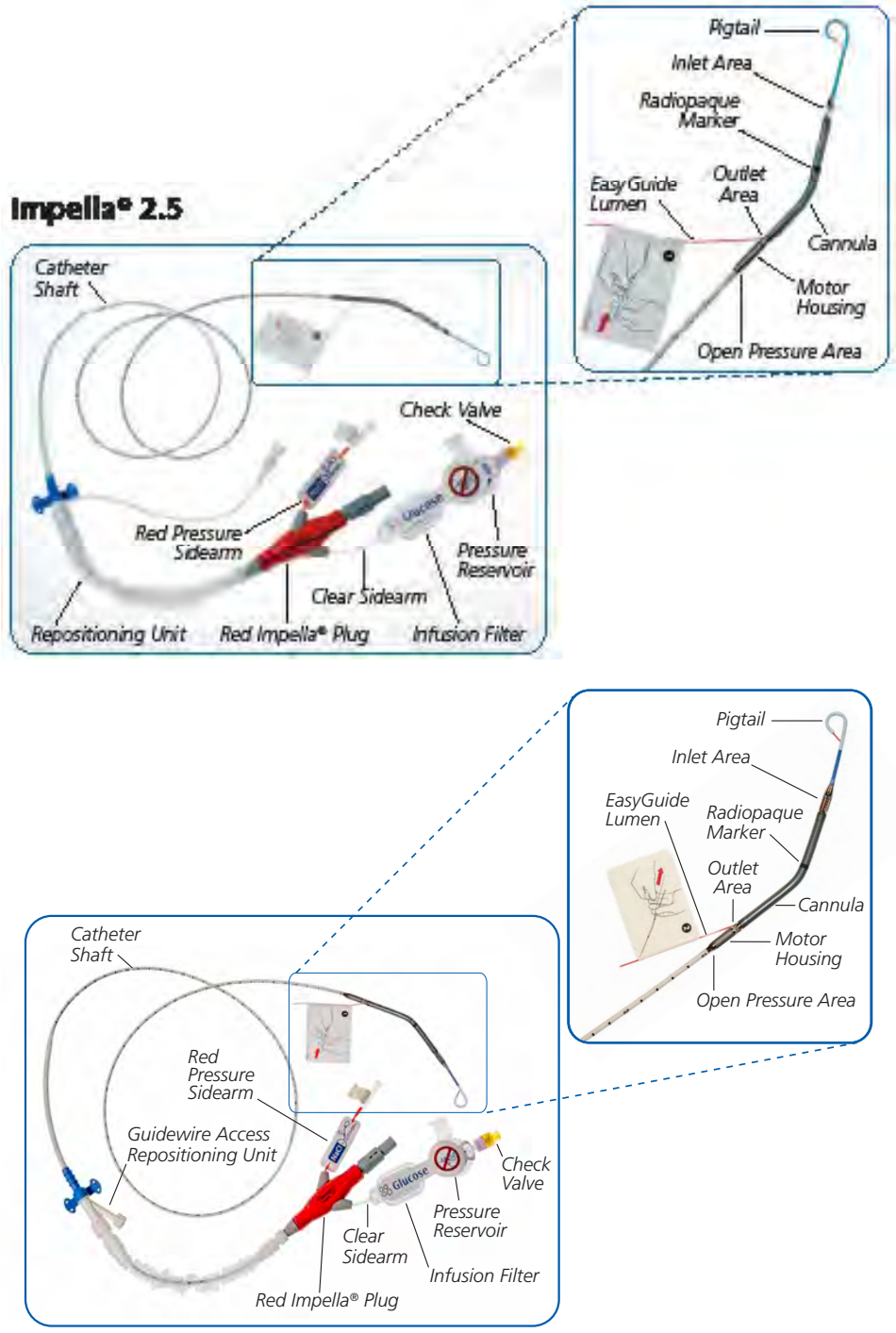


Figure 3.4 Impella® Catheters

Impella® 2.5 Repositioning Sheath: Outer Diameter

The repositioning sheath for the Impella® 2.5 has a graduated outer diameter of 9 Fr to 15 Fr.

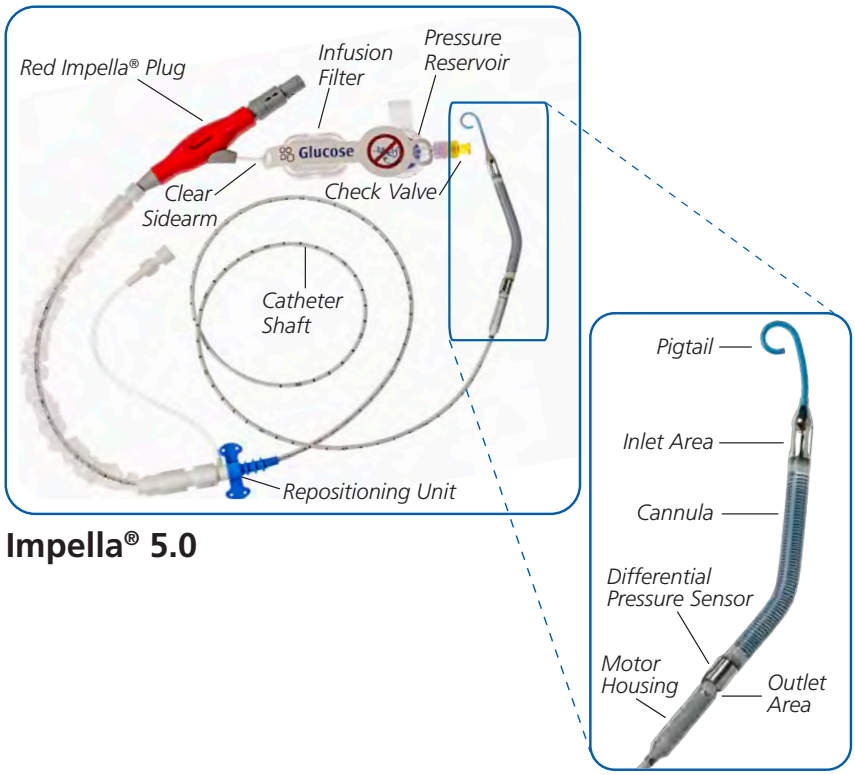


Figure 3.4 Impella® Catheters (continued)

Table 3.3 Impella® Catheter Components

Component	Description
Pigtail	The 6 Fr pigtail is attached to the cannula at the distal end of the inlet area. It assists with stabilizing the Impella® 2.5, 5.0, and Impella CP® Catheters in the correct position in the left ventricle.
Inlet area	The inlet area, located at the distal tip of the cannula, has four openings (windows) (five for the Impella® 5.0 and LD) that allow blood to be drawn into the inlet and channeled through the cannula.
Radiopaque marker	The radiopaque marker on the catheter shaft of the Impella® 2.5 and Impella CP® Catheters is visible with fluoroscopy and, when properly positioned, appears at the level of the aortic valve annulus.
Cannula	The cannula (12 Fr for the Impella® 2.5, 14 Fr for the Impella CP®, 21 Fr for the Impella® 5.0 and LD) has a spiral-shaped reinforced body that is angled for the Impella® 2.5, 5.0 and Impella CP® Catheters and straight for the Impella® LD. The cannula is made of nitinol and covered in polyurethane.
Differential pressure sensor	This sensor on the Impella® 5.0 and LD Catheters measures the pressure difference between the inside and outside of the cannula. The pressure value is used for positioning during placement and for monitoring flow and position during catheter operation.
Outlet area	The proximal end of the cannula is attached to the outlet area where the blood exits the cannula.
EasyGuide lumen	The red loading lumen on the Impella® 2.5 and Impella CP® runs from the tip of the pigtail through the outlet area of the cannula to facilitate loading the catheter onto the guidewire
Motor housing	The motor housing (12 Fr for the Impella® 2.5, 14 Fr for Impella CP®, 21 Fr for Impella® 5.0 and LD) consists of an encapsulated motor.
Silicone plugs	The two silicone plugs on the catheter shaft of the Impella® LD help control bleeding during and after the Impella® LD Catheter insertion process and while advancing the catheter through the Dacron® vascular graft.
Open pressure area	The open pressure area on the Impella® 2.5 and Impella CP® Catheters is an opening located between the motor housing and the distal end of the catheter shaft.
Catheter shaft	A 9 Fr catheter shaft is located between the motor housing and the red Impella® plug. The lumen of the catheter shaft contains a purge lumen, a pressure measurement lumen (Impella® 2.5 and Impella CP®), a nitinol wire, and an electrical cable. The catheter shaft has longitudinal and transversal marks: • The longitudinal mark along the inner radius shows correct position of the placement guidewire once backloaded on the Impella® Catheter. • The transversal marks at 1 cm intervals with numbers every 5 cm aid in proper positioning.

Table 3.3 Impella® Catheter Components (continued)

Component	Description
Repositioning unit	The repositioning unit on the Impella® 2.5, 5.0, and Impella CP® Catheters consists of a sheath, an anticontamination sleeve with an anchoring ring, and suture pads. • The sheath (with hemostatic valve) is graduated from 9 Fr to 15 Fr. It is located on the catheter shaft and allows repositioning of the catheter. • A guidewire access port on the Impella CP® may be used to facilitate insertion of a 0.035" (or smaller) guidewire into the arteriotomy prior to removal of the Impella® Catheter. A stylet maintains the patency of the guidewire lumen. • The anchoring ring of the anticontamination sleeve secures the sheath to the catheter. • The StatLock® compatible suture pads help secure the repositioning sheath to the patient's skin.
Red Impella® plug	The red Impella® plug at the proximal end of the catheter connects the catheter to the Automated Impella® Controller through a connector cable. It contains: • Memory that retains operating parameters in case the patient needs to be transferred to another controller • A pressure transducer (Impella® 2.5 and Impella CP® Catheters) that translates pressure for the pressure lumen proximal to the motor • The placement signal lumen (Impella® 2.5 and Impella CP® Catheters) that allows for pressure and waveform displays The Impella® 2.5 and Impella CP® Catheters have two sidearms: a red pressure sidearm and a clear sidearm. The Impella® 5.0 and LD Catheters have only a clear sidearm.
Red pressure sidearm	The red pressure sidearm on the Impella® 2.5 and Impella CP® Catheters is attached to a standard pressure bag and is used to prime the line of the pressure measurement system.
Clear sidearm	The clear sidearm is attached to the purge cassette tubing. It leads to the infusion filter, the pressure reservoir, and the check valve.
Infusion filter	The infusion filter prevents bacterial contamination and air from entering the purge lumen.
Pressure reservoir	The pressure reservoir includes a flexible rubber diaphragm that provides additional filling volume by means of an expansion chamber during purge solution change.
Check valve	The yellow check valve ensures that purge fluid does not flow in the reverse direction when the purge solution is exchanged.

DIFFERENTIAL PRESSURE SENSOR FOR IMPELLA® 5.0 AND LD

The Impella® 5.0 and LD Catheters have an electronic differential pressure sensor located at the proximal end of the 21 Fr cannula. The purpose of the pressure sensor is to generate the placement signal, which is used by operators and the controller to monitor the position of the Impella® cannula relative to the aortic valve.

The pressure sensor is a flexible membrane integrated into the cannula (see Figure 3.5). One side of the sensor is exposed to the blood pressure on the outside of the cannula and the other side is exposed to the pressure of the blood inside of the cannula. The sensor generates an electrical signal proportional to the difference between the pressure outside the cannula and the pressure inside. This signal is displayed on the Automated Impella® Controller as the placement signal.

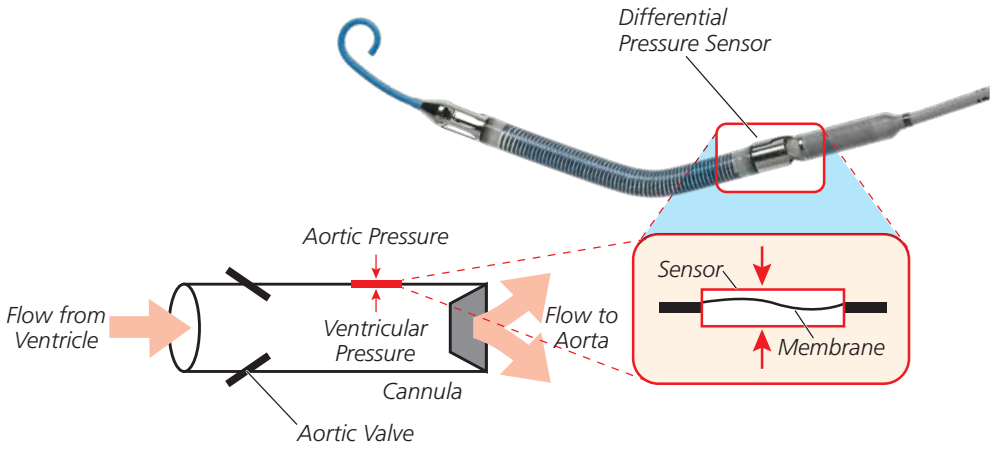


Figure 3.5 Impella® 5.0 and LD Differential Pressure Sensor (Impella® 5.0 shown)

The pressure sensor membrane flexes when the pressure on one side is different from the pressure on the other side, and the electrical properties of the membrane change when it flexes. This allows the sensor to generate an electrical signal proportional to how much the membrane is flexed, and thus proportional to the difference between the pressure on the outside of the cannula and the pressure inside. When the Impella® 5.0 or LD Catheter is placed in the correct position across the aortic valve, the top (outer surface) of the sensor is exposed to the aortic pressure and the bottom (inner surface) of the sensor is exposed to the ventricular pressure. Therefore, the placement signal is approximately equal to the difference between the aortic pressure and the ventricular pressure (see Figure 3.6).

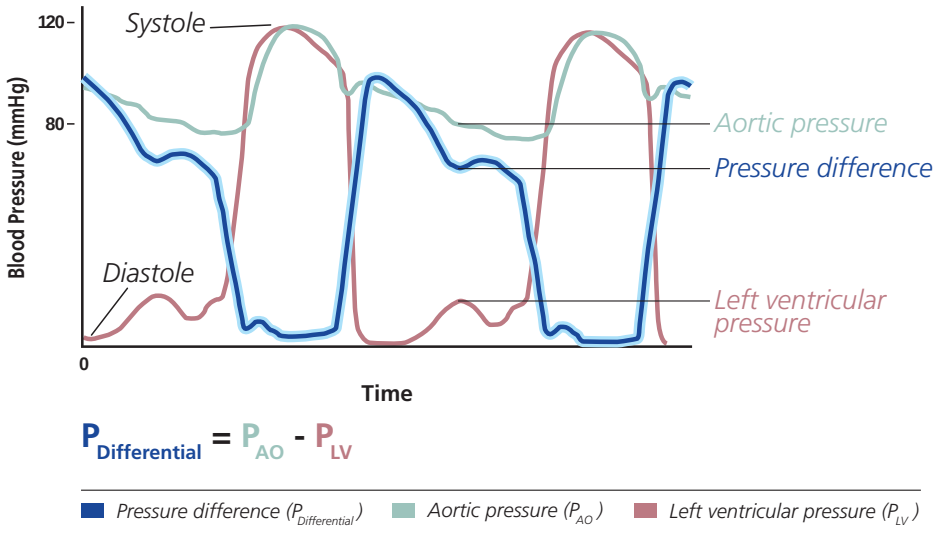


Figure 3.6 Electrical Signal Generated by the Cardiac Cycle

When the Impella® 5.0 or LD Catheter is correctly positioned across the aortic valve, the changes in pressure associated with the cardiac cycle result in a pulsatile placement signal (see Figure 3.7). During diastole (time zero in Figure 3.6), the large pressure difference between the aorta and the left ventricle creates a large electrical signal. Then at the peak of systole, when the aortic valve opens, the pressure difference between the aorta and the left ventricle—and thus the electrical signal—is zero. Thus, the continual pressure changes associated with the cardiac cycle produce the pulsatile (up and down) waveform seen on the Automated Impella® Controller display.

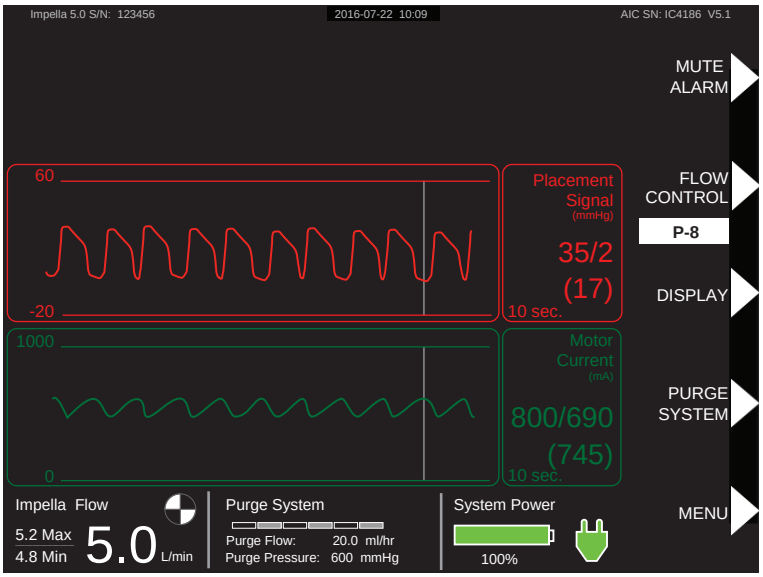


Figure 3.7 Correct Impella® 5.0/LD Catheter Positioning and Pulsatile Placement Signal

When the Impella® 5.0 or LD Catheter is not properly placed across the aortic valve, or when it is fully in the aorta or fully in the ventricle, the pressures outside and inside the cannula are the same throughout the cardiac cycle. As a result, the pressure on either side of the sensor membrane is the same, resulting in a flat placement signal (see Figure 3.8).

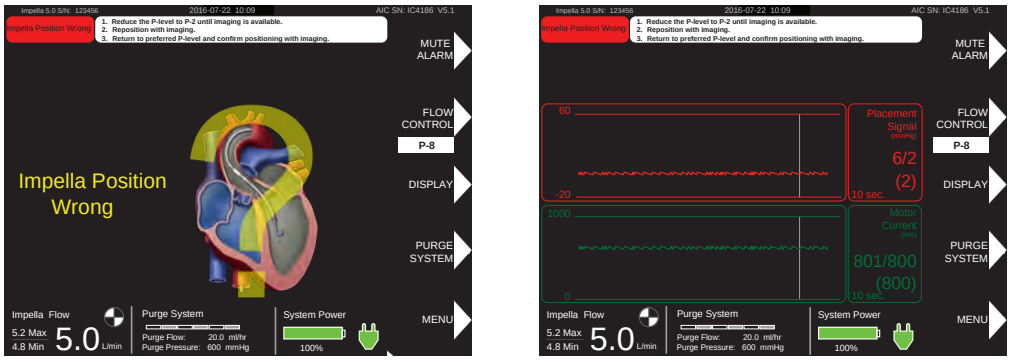


Figure 3.8 Incorrect Impella® 5.0/LD Catheter Positioning and Flat Placement Signal

AUTOMATED IMPELLA® CONTROLLER

The Automated Impella® Controller (see Figure 3.9) provides three vital functions to the operation of the Impella® Catheter:

- The controller provides an interface for monitoring and controlling the function of the Impella® Catheter
- The controller provides a purge fluid to the Impella® Catheter
- The controller provides backup power when the Impella Ventricular Support Systems are operated away from AC power

The controller weighs 26 lbs (11.8 kg) and can operate on its internal battery for at least 60 minutes when fully charged.

Automated Impella® Controller operation is described in detail in section 4 of this manual.

Automated Impella® Controller Battery Power

The controller can operate on its internal lithium-ion (Li-Ion) battery for at least 60 minutes when fully charged.

Automated Impella® Controller Power Cord

Use caution when moving equipment to prevent damaging the controller's power cord.

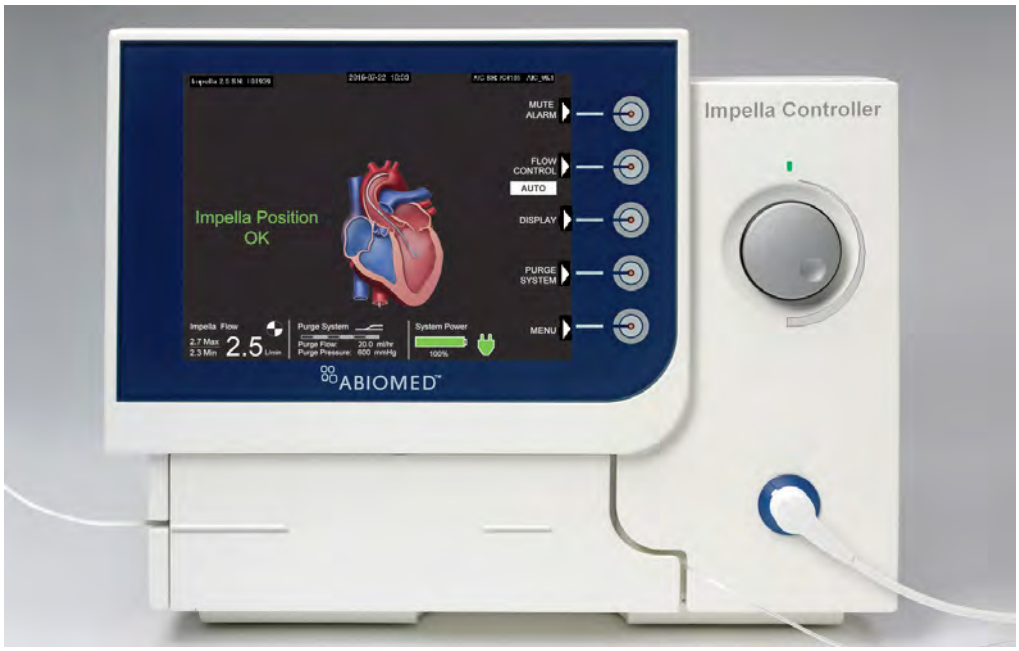


Figure 3.9 Automated Impella® Controller – Front View

PURGE CASSETTE

Do not use saline in the purge system.

The purge cassette delivers rinsing fluid to the Impella® Catheter. The purge fluid (typically 5% dextrose solution) flows from the purge cassette through the catheter to the microaxial blood pump to prevent blood from entering the motor. When the purge cassette is properly installed in the Automated Impella® Controller, the Abiomed logo is upright and facing you. Figure 3.10 illustrates the purge cassette and related components. Table 3.4 describes each component.

Y connector

The Y connector attached to the purge tubing is used for the initial set-up configuration of the Impella® 2.5 and Impella CP® Systems (see Figure 3.2a). Switch to the standard configuration (see Figure 3.2b) as soon as practical.

Disconnect and discard the Y connector from the purge tubing when setting up the Impella® 5.0 or LD Systems and connect the yellow luer on the end of the purge tubing directly to the yellow luer on the Impella® 5.0 or LD Catheter as shown in Figure 3.3.

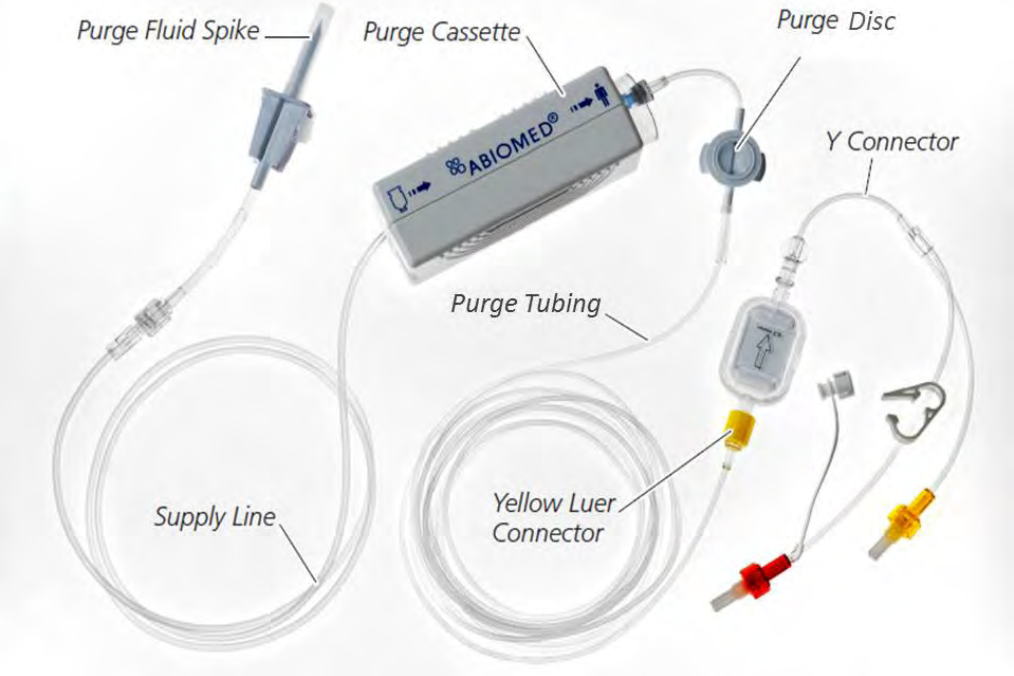


Figure 3.10 Purge Cassette

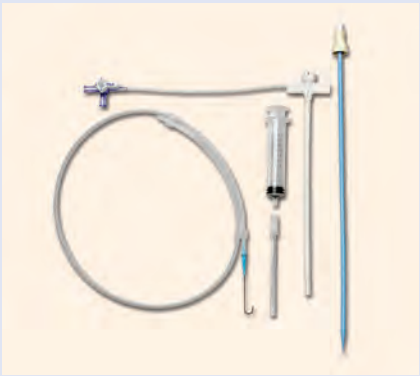
Table 3.4 Purge Cassette Components

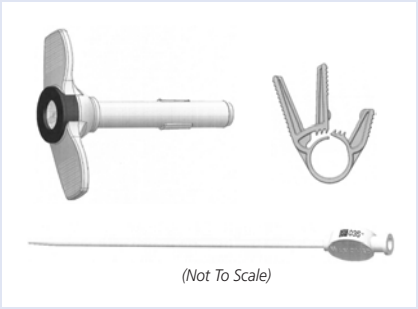
Component	Description
Purge fluid spike	One end spikes the purge fluid bag and the other end connects the bag to the purge cassette supply line
Supply line	Carries fluid from the purge fluid bag to the purge cassette
Purge cassette	Contains the components for delivering the purge fluid; the purge fluid maintains the pressure barrier between the blood and the motor to prevent blood from entering the motor
Purge disc	Transmits pressure to the controller based on the purge pressure in the purge tubing; a sensor in the controller measures the pressure so that it can be displayed on the screen and used by the purge pressure algorithm to maintain the purge pressure
Purge tubing	Carries purge fluid from the purge cassette to the Impella® Catheter
Yellow luer connector	Connects the purge tubing to the Y connector at case start (for Impella® 2.5 and Impella CP®) and to the check valve (yellow luer lock) on the Impella® Catheter after system change and initial setup of Impella® 5.0 and LD.
Y connector *(for Impella® 2.5 and Impella CP® only)*	Adapter that connects the purge tubing to the sidearms of the Impella® 2.5 or Impella CP® Catheter during case start. The Y connector consist of: • Yellow luer that connects to the clear sidearm • Red luer that connects to the red sidearm • Cap for the red luer when it is disconnected from the sidearm for transfer to the standard configuration • Clamp for the purge tubing leading to the red sidearm • Rectangular antibacterial air filter

ACCESSORIES

Table 3.5 illustrates and describes the accessories used with the Impella® Catheter and Automated Impella® Controller.

Table 3.5 Impella® Catheter and Automated Impella® Controller Accessories

Component	Description
 ***Figure 3.11 White Connector Cable***	The white connector cable connects the Impella® Catheter to the Automated Impella® Controller. Clips on the cable are used to secure the purge tubing to the cable. • The socket at the black end of the cable connects to the Impella® Catheter plug. • The white plug at the opposite end of the cable is inserted into the blue catheter plug on the front of the Automated Impella® Controller.
 ***Figure 3.12 Impella® 2.5 Introducer Kit***	The Impella® 2.5 introducer kit is used to gain arterial access for the Impella® 2.5 Catheter. It contains: • Peel-away introducer—with hemostatic valve for tight fit around components and single-step "break-away" configuration • Dilator—easy to insert and remove with soft design for atraumatic approach into femoral artery • 18 G Seldinger needle • 12 cc syringe • 0.035 inch stiff access guidewire
 ***Figure 3.13 Impella CP® Introducer Kit***	The Impella CP® introducer kit is used to gain arterial access for the Impella CP® Catheter. It contains: • 14 Fr peel-away introducer—with hemostatic valve for tight fit around components and single-step "break-away" configuration • 8 Fr, 10 Fr, 12 Fr, and 14 Fr dilators—easy to insert and remove with soft design for atraumatic approach into femoral artery • 0.035 inch stiff access guidewire
 ***Figure 3.14 Silicone Plugs (Impella® 5.0/LD)***	The two silicone plugs can be placed around the catheter shaft to help control bleeding during and after Impella® 5.0 or LD Catheter insertion and while advancing the catheter through the vascular graft. (Note: The two silicone plugs are preassembled on the Impella® LD catheter shaft.)

Component	Description
 *Figure 3.15 Impella® Axillary Insertion Kit (Impella® 2.5, 5.0, and Impella CP®)*	The Impella® Axillary Insertion kit facilitates placement of the Impella® 2.5, 5.0, or Impella CP® Catheter via the axillary artery. It contains a 23 Fr diameter x 6 cm length peel-away introducer and two (2) graft locks used to attach a graft onto the introducer. (Note: Only one graft lock is required when used with the recommended Hemashield Platinum graft; a back-up is provided.) The kit is packaged with an 8 Fr silicone-coated lubrication dilator and 2 silicone plugs (not shown). It is recommended to be used in conjunction with a 10 mm diameter x 20 cm length Hemashield Platinum graft.
 *Figure 3.16 Placement Guidewire*	The 0.018 inch, 260 cm placement guidewire is used for the placement of the Impella® 2.5, 5.0, or Impella CP® Catheter. The guidewire has a radiopaque, shapable tip.
 *Figure 3.17 Dextrose Solution*	Hospital Provided: Dextrose solution (typically 5% dextrose in water with 50 IU/mL of heparin) is used as the purge fluid through the Impella® Catheter.
 *Figure 3.18 Automated Impella® Controller Cart*	The Automated Impella® Controller cart holds the Automated Impella® Controller. The cart has wheels for easy transport of the controller and a storage basket.

Guidewire Use

It is important to use only the guidewire supplied with the system or an Abiomed-approved alternative. Refer to Appendix B for more information about Abiomed-approved guidewires.

4 USING THE AUTOMATED IMPELLA® CONTROLLER

OVERVIEW

The Automated Impella® Controller is the primary user control interface for the Impella® Catheter. It controls the Impella® Catheter performance, monitors the catheter for alarms, and provides real-time catheter position information regarding the location of the catheter across the aortic valve. The controller can be powered by AC power or can operate on internal battery power for at least 60 minutes when fully charged.

This section of the manual discusses Automated Impella® Controller features and displays.

AUTOMATED IMPELLA® CONTROLLER FEATURES

IMPORTANT NOTE: The underside of the Automated Impella® Controller has a battery switch to turn on the batteries. This switch is turned off for shipping purposes. Before operating the Automated Impella® Controller for the first time, make sure you turn this switch on. If the battery switch is not turned on, the Automated Impella® Controller will not be able to operate on battery power.

Figure 4.1 illustrates the features on the front of the Automated Impella® Controller. These features are described in Table 4.1.

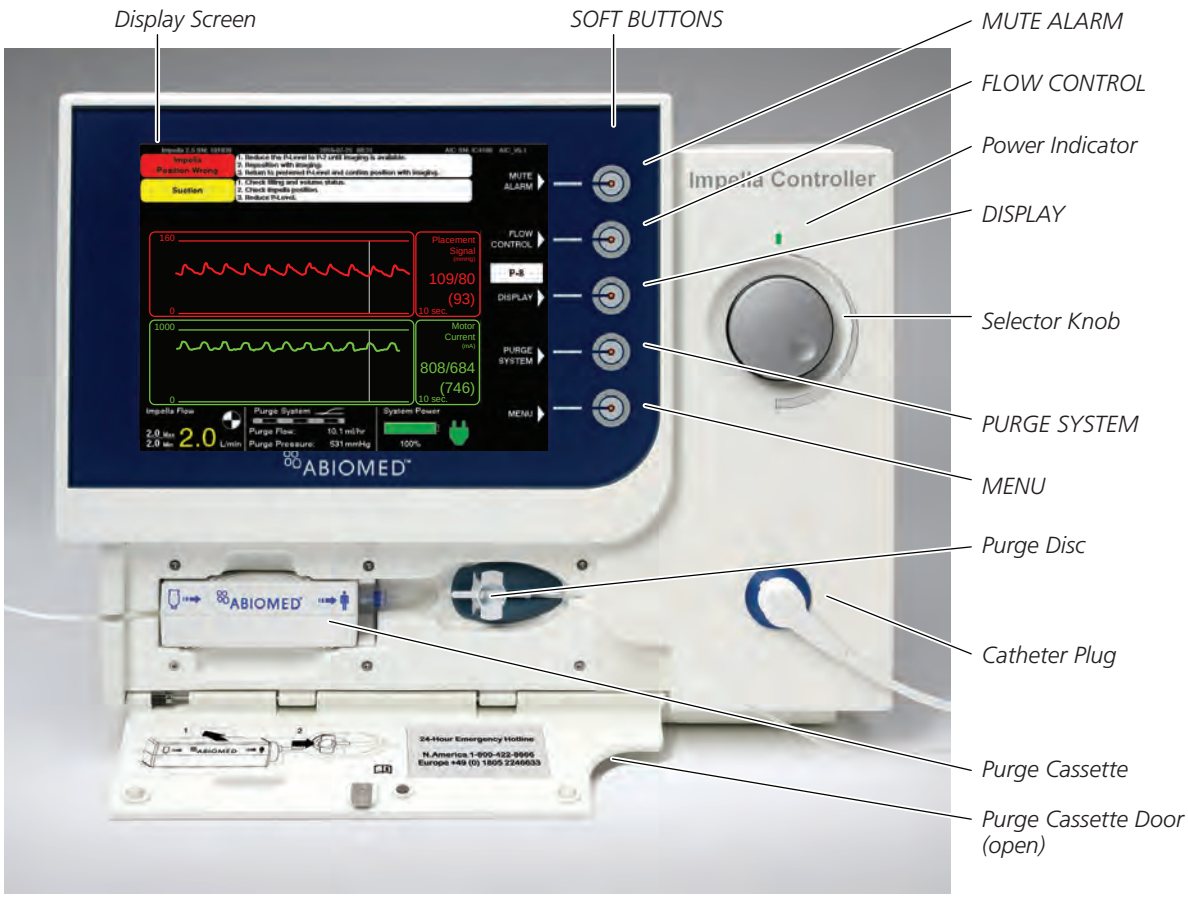


Figure 4.1 Automated Impella® Controller Features – Front View

Table 4.1 Automated Impella® Controller Front View Features

Feature	Description
Display screen	Displays user information, including the labels for the soft buttons. (Display screen elements described in detail later in this section.)
Soft buttons	Display, open, and close menus. The function for each soft button is defined by labels adjacent to the button on the display screen; function changes depending on the screen. (Soft button functions are described in Table 4.3.) When the Impella® Catheter is running, the default soft button labels are as follows: • **MUTE ALARM** • **FLOW CONTROL** • **DISPLAY** • **PURGE SYSTEM** • **MENU**
Power indicator	LED light above the selector knob; indicates the power status of the Automated Impella® Controller. • Green light—controller is on and plugged into AC power or running on battery power • Amber light—controller is off but plugged into AC power • No light—controller is off and not plugged into AC power
Selector knob	Rotating push button; turn clockwise and counterclockwise to navigate through menu items; push to make a selection.
Purge disc	A flexible diaphragm on the purge cassette tubing used to monitor purge pressure and regulate purge flow.
Catheter plug	Connection point on the controller for the connector cable that connects to the Impella® Catheter.
Purge cassette	Contains the components for delivering the purge fluid; maintains the pressure barrier between the blood and the motor to prevent blood from entering the motor. (The purge cassette and its components are described in section 3 of this manual.)
Purge cassette door	Spring-loaded door that opens to provide access to the purge cassette.

Display Options

If equipped with a VGA connector, the controller can be connected to a monitor to display information on another screen as described under "Slave Monitor Connection" in section 9 of this manual.

Selector Knob Function

***Rotate** the selector knob on the controller to navigate through menu items.*
***Push** the selector knob to confirm your selection.*

Figure 4.2 illustrates the features on the left and right sides of the Automated Impella® Controller. These features are described in Table 4.2.

Figure 4.2 Automated Impella® Controller Features – Side Views

Table 4.2 Automated Impella® Controller Side View Features

Feature	Description
Bed mount	Metal bracket on the back of the controller; attaches controller to the cart or bed
Purge cassette door release	Button located on the left side of the controller; press to open the purge cassette door
VGA OUT	Connection for connecting the controller to another monitor to slave the display
USB connector	Interface for data transfer by Abiomed maintenance or service personnel
Service	Connection used by Abiomed maintenance or service personnel
AC fuses	Electrical safety device in the event of current overload
AC plug	Connection point on the controller for the AC power cord
Power switch	Button that turns the controller on or off • ON: Press and hold the power switch for 3 seconds • OFF: (1) Disconnect the Impella® Catheter from the Automated Impella® Controller (2) Press and hold the power switch for 3 seconds (3) A pop-up confirmation box will appear (4) Press **OK** using the selector knob to confirm that the controller should be turned off NOTE: Holding down the power switch for longer than 30 seconds during operation will cause the controller to initiate an emergency shutdown
Equipotential ground stud	Used to ground the Automated Impella® Controller according to hospital procedures
Ethernet jack	Connection for downloading data

HOME SCREEN

The home screen displays operating parameters and information for the entire Impella Ventricular Support Systems.
Figure 4.3 illustrates the home screen. Each element of the display is described in Table 4.3.

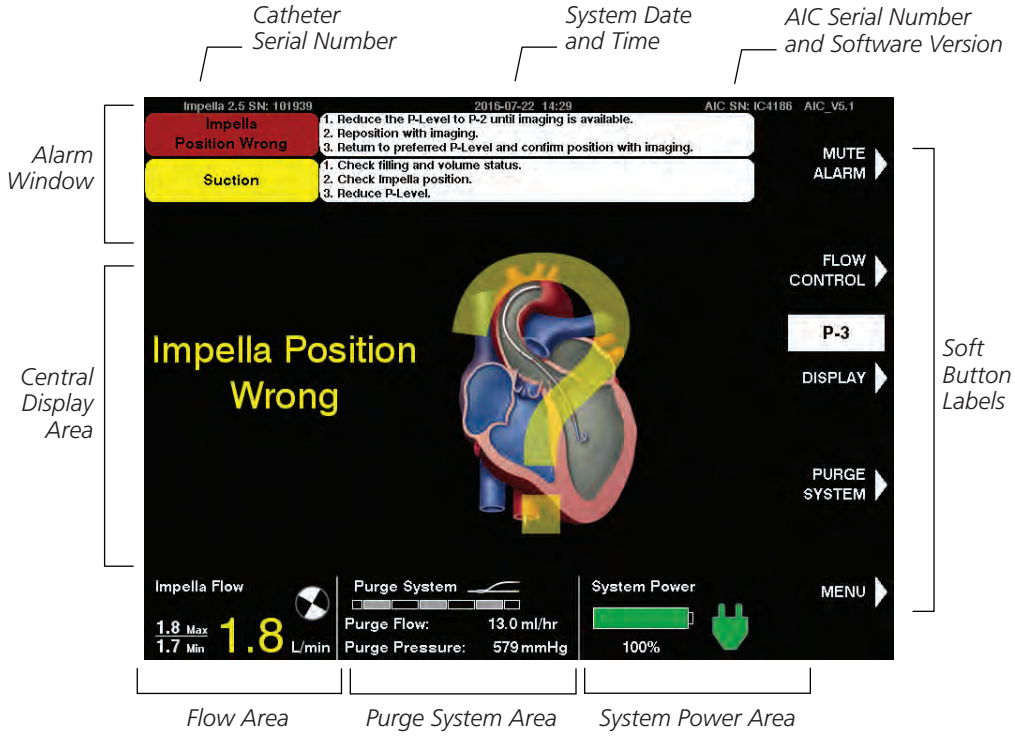


Figure 4.3 Home Screen

Table 4.3 Automated Impella® Controller Display Elements

Display Element	Description
Alarm window	The alarm window displays up to 3 alarms simultaneously, in order of priority from top to bottom. For each alarm, the alarm window displays: • Alarm header – displayed in the left column; window is color-coded red for critical alarms, yellow for serious alarms, white for advisory notifications, gray for resolved alarms • Detailed text – up to 3 lines of instructions for resolving the alarm condition are displayed in the right column of the alarm window next to the alarm header and subhead information (See section 8 of this manual for further discussion of alarms.)
Catheter serial number	Displayed in the upper left of the display screen if a catheter is connected to the controller.
System date and time	The current date (YYYY-DD-MM) and time (24-hour format; HH:MM) are displayed in the upper center of the screen display. (In this example it is July 22, 2016 at 2:29pm.)

Table 4.3 Automated Impella® Controller Display Elements (continued)

Display Element	Description
Mute alarm indicator	Displayed in place of the words "MUTE ALARM" when an alarm is silenced. (See section 8 of this manual for more information about the mute alarm function; Figure 8.1 illustrates the mute alarm indicator.) • Yellow bell with red X displayed when an alarm is muted • Not displayed when an alarm is active (but not muted) or when there are no active alarms
Soft button labels	The soft buttons on the Automated Impella® Controller have corresponding labels adjacent to them on the display screen. These labels change depending on the type of screen displayed. (Refer to Appendix C in this manual for more details about the menu structure.) **MUTE ALARM** • Mutes (silences) active alarms **FLOW CONTROL** (or **NEXT**) • **FLOW CONTROL** – Allows you to control the flow of the Impella® Catheter • **NEXT** – Advances to the next screen **DISPLAY** (or **BACK**) • **DISPLAY** – Brings up the Display menu for viewing waveforms and navigating to other screen displays • **BACK** – Returns to the previous screen **PURGE SYSTEM** (or **EXIT**) • **PURGE SYSTEM** – Brings up the Purge System menu for changing the purge fluid, purge cassette, or purge system; de-airing the purge system; or transferring to the standard configuration • **EXIT** – Exits the current procedure **MENU (or CANCEL)** • **MENU** – Brings up a menu of options related to controller settings, alarm history, and starting a case • **CANCEL** – Exits out of current Menu
System power area	System power information is displayed to the right of the purge system information on the bottom of the display screen. Battery status – Bar within battery symbol indicates the overall remaining capacity of the batteries • Full green bar for fully charged battery • Partial green bar for battery that is at least 50% charged • Partial yellow bar for battery that is between 16% and 50% charged • Partial red bar for battery that is less than or equal to 15% charged • Moving gray bar for battery that is in charging mode • Percentage of battery power remaining displayed below the battery icon AC plug indicator • Green plug indicates that the controller is running on AC power • Gray plug with a red X indicates no AC power detected and the controller is running on battery power

Table 4.3 Automated Impella® Controller Display Elements (continued)

Display Element	Description
Purge system area	Information about the purge system is displayed to the right of the flow area at the bottom of the display screen. Purge system marquee—scrolls from left to right when purge system is operating • Slow scrolling represents normal purge flow rate • Fast scrolling represents bolus flow rate and priming flow rate Y connector icon (for Impella® 2.5 and Impella CP®) • Appears above the purge system marquee when the Impella Ventricular Support Systems are configured using the Y connector in the set-up configuration Purge flow • Current purge flow displayed in mL/hr below the purge system marquee if the purge flow is known • Not displayed when the purge system is stabilizing, when there is no purge cassette, or when the procedure has not yet started Purge pressure • Current purge pressure (pressure of the purge fluid delivered through the catheter to the motor) displayed in mmHg below the purge flow
Flow area	Information about Impella® Catheter flow is displayed in the lower left corner of the display screen. Max/Min • Max/Min displays the range for the flow rate Current flow rate • Mean catheter flow displayed in liters per minute (L/min)—the numbers appear in *white* if the catheter position is correct; *yellow* if the catheter position is incorrect or unknown • If the system is unable to calculate flow, a yellow triangular caution icon is displayed with the message "Flow Calculation Disabled" Catheter operation icon • The circular catheter operation icon rotates when the Impella® Catheter is running

Purge System Stabilization

The purge system must stabilize after case start, a purge procedure, or resolution of a purge alarm. During this time, it may take up to 3 minutes for purge system information to display on the screen.

PLACEMENT SCREEN

The placement screen (see Figure 4.4) displays real-time operating data for the system. The screen displays the placement signal and motor current waveforms as well as the maximum/minimum and average values for each waveform in the central display area of the screen.

Use the **DISPLAY** soft button to navigate to the placement screen.

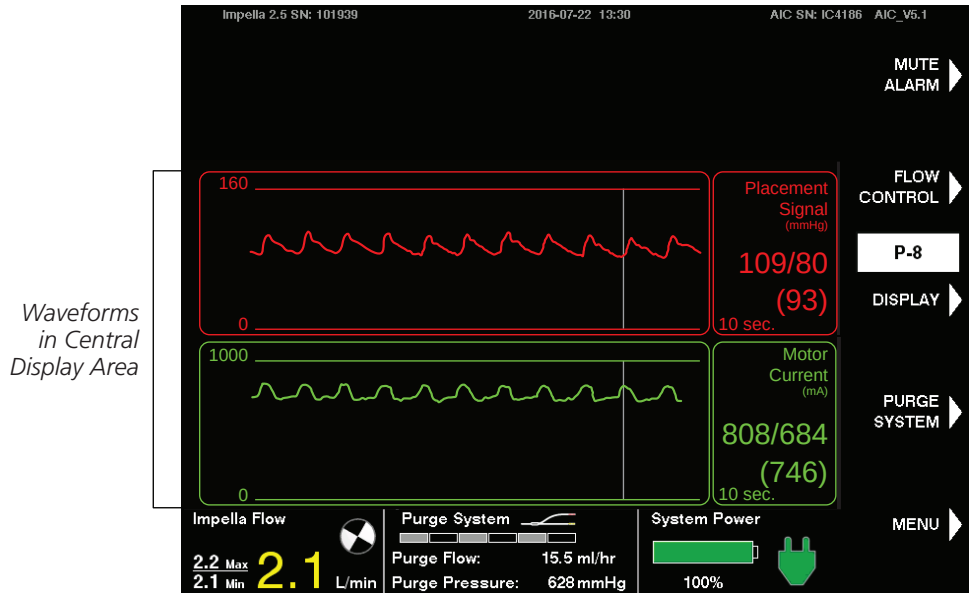


Figure 4.4 Placement Screen

Figure 4.4 shows two time-based waveform signals from different sources.

- Placement signal waveform
- Motor current waveform

PLACEMENT SIGNAL WAVEFORM

The placement signal waveform displays a pressure measurement that is useful for determining the location of the open pressure area of the catheter with respect to the aortic valve. The placement signal is used to verify whether the Impella® Catheter is in the aorta or in the ventricle by evaluating the current pressure waveform as an aortic or ventricular waveform (Impella® 2.5 and Impella CP®) or by evaluating the differential pressure as pulsatile or flattened (Impella® 5.0 and LD). The scale for the placement signal waveform is displayed to the left of the waveform. The default scaling is 0–160 mmHg (Impella® 2.5 and Impella CP®) or -20–60 mmHg (Impella® 5.0 and LD). For Impella® 2.5 and Impella CP®, it can be adjusted in 20 mmHg increments, with a minimum upper limit of 100 mmHg and a maximum upper limit of 240 mmHg. For Impella® 5.0 and LD, the maximum display range is -60–100 mmHg.

To the right of the waveform is a display that labels the waveform, provides the units of measurement, and shows the maximum and minimum values and the average value from the samples received. At the bottom of that window is the time scale, which you can set by pressing the **DISPLAY** soft button.

Retrograde Flow

A setting of P-0 will result in retrograde flow when the Impella® Catheter is placed across the aortic valve. Retrograde flow may also occur at P-1.

MOTOR CURRENT WAVEFORM

Motor current is a measure of the energy intake of the Impella® Catheter motor. The energy intake varies with motor speed and the pressure difference between the inlet and outlet areas of the cannula. Motor current (see Figure 4.4) provides information about the catheter position relative to the aortic valve. When the Impella® Catheter is positioned correctly, with the inlet area in the ventricle and the outlet area in the aorta, the motor current is pulsatile because the pressure difference between the inlet and outlet areas changes with the cardiac cycle. When the inlet and outlet areas are on the same side of the aortic valve, the motor current will be dampened or flat because there is little or no pressure difference between the inlet and outlet areas.

The scale for the motor current waveform is displayed to the left of the waveform. The default scaling is 0–1000 mA. It is adjustable in 100 mA increments for the Impella® Catheter, with a minimum difference between upper and lower limits of 200 mA and a maximum difference of 1000 mA.

To the right of the waveform is a display that labels the waveform, provides the units of measurement, and shows the maximum and minimum values and the average value from the samples received. You can set the time scale at the bottom of that window by pressing the **DISPLAY** soft button.

PURGE SCREEN

The purge screen (see Figure 4.5) displays purge system data. In the central display area of the screen, the purge flow rate and purge pressure are plotted as a function of time. To the right of the plots, the current purge flow rate and purge pressure are displayed.

Use the **DISPLAY** soft button to navigate to the purge screen.

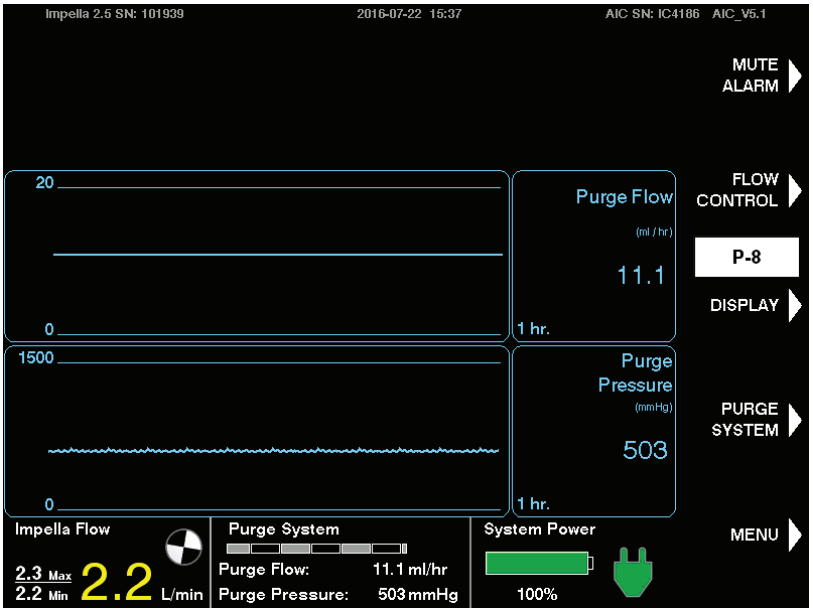


Figure 4.5 Purge Screen

PURGE FLOW

The purge flow rate delivered by the purge cassette is displayed in mL/hr. The standard scale for the purge flow (0–30 mL/hr) is displayed to the left of the purge flow plot. The maximum value on this scale can be adjusted from 20 mL/hr to 200 mL/hr in increments of 10 mL/hr.

To the right of the plot is a display that labels the plot and shows the most recent value update. You can set the time scale at the bottom of the window by pressing the **DISPLAY** soft button.

A purge flow change notification can be enabled to indicate when the purge flow rate increases or decreases by 2.5 mL/h. The message is intended to aid patient management by alerting the clinician to changes in the rates of dextrose and heparin infusion through the purge fluid. The alarm clears when you press the **MUTE ALARM** button. This alarm is disabled by default. To enable this alarm, press **MENU**, select Settings/Service, and select Enable Purge Flow Change Notification.

PURGE PRESSURE

The Automated Impella® Controller regulates purge pressure, the pressure of the purge fluid delivered through the catheter to the motor. The purge pressure generated by the purge cassette is displayed in mmHg. The standard scale for the purge pressure (0–1500 mmHg) is displayed to the left of the purge pressure plot. The maximum value on this scale can be adjusted from 100 mmHg to 2000 mmHg in increments of 100 mmHg. An alarm appears if purge pressure falls below 300 mmHg or exceeds 1100 mmHg.

To the right of the plot is a display that labels the plot and shows the most recent value update. You can set the time scale at the bottom of the window by pressing the **DISPLAY** soft button.

Purge Flow

In the initial set-up configuration of the Impella Ventricular Support Systems, purge flow is regulated to keep the purge pressure at 600 mmHg, although it may not reach 600 mmHg in low resistance catheters in this configuration.

In the standard configuration, purge flow can range from 2 to 30 mL/hr and purge pressure can range from 300 to 1100 mmHg.

Purge Pressure Depends on System Configuration

When in the initial set-up configuration, the purge pressure is set to 600 mmHg with flows between 2 and 30 mL/hr. After switching to the standard configuration, the purge pressure is set to an ideal pressure between 300 and 1100 mmHg and flows between 2 and 30 mL/hr.

INFUSION HISTORY SCREEN

The infusion history screen displays the infusion volume as well as the amount of heparin and dextrose infused each hour. The current time period is displayed at the top of the list.

Use the **DISPLAY** soft button to navigate to the infusion history screen.

Figure 4.6 shows a sample infusion history screen.

Figure 4.6 Infusion History Screen

MOBILE OPERATION

> The Li-Ion batteries must be charged for 5 hours prior to system operation in order to meet the runtime requirement of 1 hour. Failure to do so will yield a shorter runtime. After being unplugged, the Automated Impella® Controller will operate for at least 60 minutes after the batteries have been fully charged.

The Automated Impella® Controller can be operated on internal battery power when it is not connected to AC power.

1. Disconnect the Automated Impella® Controller from AC power.
2. The Automated Impella® Controller beeps once every 5 minutes to alert you that it is running on battery power and a white advisory notification appears in the alarms area on the screen. The AC power icon turns gray with an X through it.
3. When the Automated Impella® Controller is connected back to AC power, the white advisory notification turns gray and the AC power icon turns green.

5 USING THE AUTOMATED IMPELLA® CONTROLLER WITH THE IMPELLA® CATHETER

Continued on next page

Using the Automated Impella® Controller With the Impella® Catheter (continued)

PRE-SUPPORT EVALUATION

Before initiating the procedure, evaluate the patient for factors that may prevent successful placement of the Impella® Catheter. Use imaging technology to examine the patient's vasculature and femoral access site. An echo assessment of the left ventricle is also recommended to rule out left ventricular thrombus, mechanical aortic valves, or severe aortic insufficiency.

Table 5.1 Evaluation Prior to Inserting the Impella® Catheter

Technology	Observations
• Standard traditional angiography • Magnetic resonance angiography (MRA) • Coronary computed tomography angiography (CTA) • Ultrasound • Echocardiography	• LV thrombus • Mechanical aortic valve • Aortic valve stenosis / calcification • Moderate to severe aortic insufficiency • Tortuous iliac artery (see below) • Severe peripheral arterial obstructive disease • Multiple access (scar tissue) • Obesity • RV failure • Minimal 7 mm vessel diameter (Impella® 5.0)

Table 5.2 Additional Considerations Prior to Inserting the Impella® LD Catheter

Impella® LD Considerations	Explanations
Quality of access	Examine the ascending aorta to evaluate the quality of access in the 7 cm between the aortic valve and potential insertion point; look for signs of calcification
Vascular access	Assess the aortic root and ascending aorta for any factor that may impede Impella® LD insertion. Use the incision template to confirm a minimum of 7 cm from the aortic valve annulus to the graft incision.
Hemodynamic monitoring	Consider inserting a Swan-Ganz catheter to provide continuous hemodynamic monitoring, including pulmonary artery and central venous pressures, measurement of cardiac output, and SvO_2.

ALTERNATIVE SHEATHS AND SURGICAL TECHNIQUES

If the patient has a tortuous iliac artery, an alternative 30 cm sheath can be used for insertion of the Impella® 2.5 or Impella CP® Catheter. The Impella® 2.5 and Impella CP® Catheters can also be inserted surgically.

STARTUP

	Do ***NOT*** use an Impella Ventricular Support Systems if any part of the system is damaged.
	The sterile components of the Impella Ventricular Support Systems can be used only if the sterilization indicators show that the contents have been sterilized, the packaging is not damaged, and the expiration date has not elapsed.
	Do ***NOT*** resterilize or reuse the Impella® Catheter. It is a disposable device and is intended for single use only.
	To prevent malfunction of the Automated Impella® Controller, avoid long-term exposure to direct sunlight and excessive heat (40°C).
	To prevent overheating and improper operation, do ***NOT*** block the cooling vents of the Automated Impella® Controller while it is operating.
	The Li-Ion batteries must be charged for 5 hours prior to system operation in order to meet the runtime requirement of 1 hour. Failure to do so will yield a shorter runtime. After being unplugged, the Automated Impella® Controller will operate for at least 60 minutes after the batteries have been fully charged.
	Have a backup Automated Impella® Controller, purge cassette, connector cable, and Impella® Catheter available in the unlikely event of a device failure.

SUPPLIES NEEDED

- Automated Impella® Controller
- Impella® Catheter
- Set-up and Insertion kit (Impella® 2.5 and Impella CP®)
- Diagnostic catheter (AL1 or MP without side holes or pigtail with or without side holes) (Impella® 2.5, 5.0, and Impella CP®)
- 5–8 Fr introducer (Impella® 2.5 and Impella CP®)
- 10 Fr dilator (Impella® 2.5)
- Standard 0.035" x175 cm J-tip guidewire (Impella® 2.5 and Impella CP®)
- Standard IV infusion set (Impella® 2.5 and Impella CP®)
- Normal saline flush solution with pressure bag (Impella® 2.5 and Impella CP®)
- 500 cc bag of dextrose solution for purge solution (20% recommended; 5% to 20% acceptable) with 50 IU heparin/mL
- Impella® Axillary Insertion kit for axillary insertion of the Impella® (Impella® 2.5, 5.0, and Impella CP® only)
- 8 or 10 mm x 20 cm Dacron vascular graft (if using Axillary Insertion kit or optional for femoral insertion of Impella® 5.0)
- 6 or 8 Fr sheath (if using Axillary Insertion kit or if using vascular graft for Impella® 5.0)
- 10 mm diameter x 15 cm length Dacron® vascular graft (Impella® LD)

- If using the Axillary Insertion kit with the Impella® 2.5, 5.0, or Impella CP® Catheter, the following are recommended: vessel loops, vascular clamp, 10 mm diameter x 20 cm length Hemashield Platinum graft, number 2 sutures or umbilical tape, 4 Fr–6 Fr pigtail or diagnostic catheter of choice to achieve an apical wire placement while avoiding a subannular wire position, diagnostic 0.035 inch guidewire, and Abiomed 0.018 inch placement guidewire

TURNING ON THE AUTOMATED IMPELLA® CONTROLLER

To turn the controller on:

1. Press and hold the power switch on the right side of the Automated Impella® Controller for 3 seconds (see Figure 5.1).

Figure 5.1 Automated Impella® Controller Power Switch

Battery Switch

Before operating the Automated Impella® Controller for the first time, turn on the switch on the underside of the controller to turn on the batteries.

The Automated Impella® Controller automatically performs a system test when turned on.

A display bar shows the progress of the system test. If the system test passes, the system displays the startup screen (see Figure 5.2).

If the system test fails, the controller displays a system self check failure message:

SYSTEM SELF CHECK FAILED.
CHANGE CONSOLE IMMEDIATELY.

The controller displays the reason for the system test failure at the bottom of the screen.

THE STARTUP SCREEN

Check Date and Time

The current date and time appear at the top of the startup screen. Confirm that these are correct. For more information, refer to Appendix C.

The startup screen (see Figure 5.2) appears when you successfully turn on the Automated Impella® Controller.

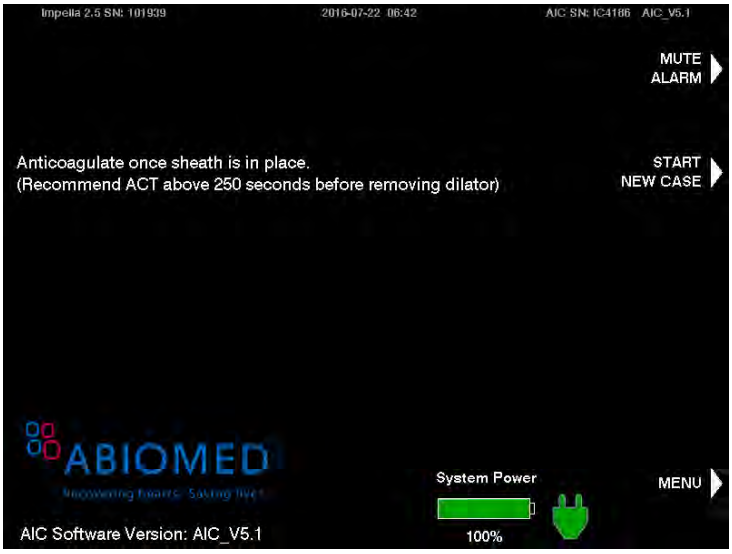


Figure 5.2 Automated Impella® Controller Startup Screen

The startup screen displays the current version of the software that the Automated Impella® Controller is running.

The startup screen also displays system power information along the bottom of the screen and three active soft buttons—**MUTE ALARM, MENU,** and **START NEW CASE**—along the right side of the screen.

CASE START

⚠	Fluoroscopy is required to guide placement of the Impella® Catheter and, for the Impella CP®, during rewire through the guidewire access port. The small placement guidewire must be reliably observed at all times.
⚠	The sterile components of the Impella Ventricular Support Systems can be used only if the sterilization indicators show that the contents have been sterilized, the packaging is not damaged, and the expiration date has not elapsed.
⚠	Avoid manual compression of the inlet and outlet areas of the cannula assembly.
⚠	Do ***NOT*** remove the Impella® Catheter over the length of the guidewire.
⚠	Handle with care. The Impella® Catheter can be damaged during removal from packaging, preparation, insertion, and removal. Do ***NOT*** bend, pull, or place excess pressure on the catheter or mechanical components at any time.
⚠	During case start, make sure the yellow luer connection between the purge tubing and Y connector is tightened and not leaking (for Impella® 2.5 and Impella CP®)
⚠	Do ***NOT*** kink or clamp the Impella® Catheter with anything other than a soft jaw vascular clamp. Do ***NOT*** kink or clamp the peel-away introducer.

Sensitive Medical Device

The Impella® Catheter is a sensitive medical device with extremely fine tolerances. In particular, the inlet and outlet areas of the catheter assembly may be damaged if subjected to strong external forces.

CASE START

1. Press the **START NEW CASE** soft button from the startup screen or plug in a new Impella® Catheter. "Case Start" can also be selected by pressing the MENU soft key.
2. The controller displays the screen shown in Figure 5.3.

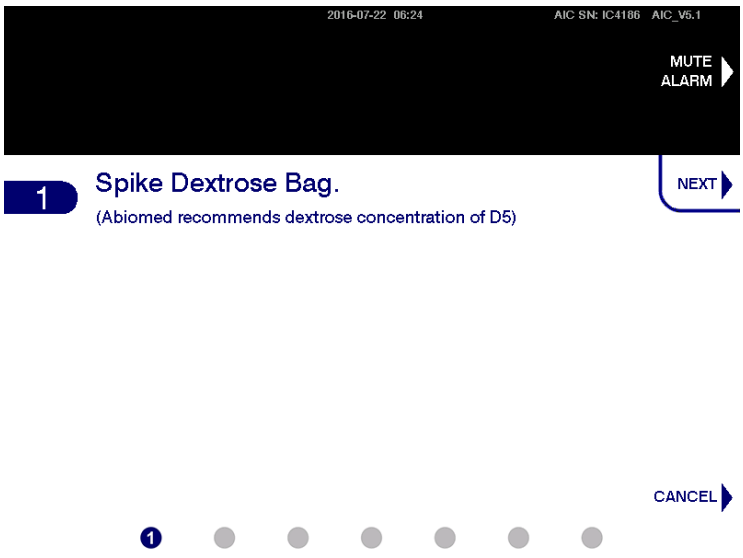


Figure 5.3 Initial Case Start Screen

INSERT PURGE CASSETTE

Shaded Steps

All shaded steps require sterile technique.

1. Open the purge cassette package.
2. Secure the red and yellow luers to the sterile field (Impella® 2.5 and Impella CP®) or discard the Y-connector and secure the yellow luer connector on the purge tubing to the sterile field (Impella® 5.0 and LD).
3. Pass the purge cassette and spike off the sterile field.
4. Spike the fluid bag/bottle.
5. Press the **NEXT** soft button to continue.
6. Open the purge cassette door by pressing the release on the left side of the controller. Insert the purge cassette into the Automated Impella® Controller (as shown in Figure 5.4 and described in the steps that follow).

Purge Solution Bottles

If the purge solution is supplied in bottles, open the vent on the purge fluid spike and follow the same procedure as if supplied in bags.

Figure 5.4 Inserting Purge Cassette into Automated Impella® Controller

Connect Purge Disc Within 3 Seconds

The instructions for inserting the purge disc appear if it is not snapped into place within 3 seconds of inserting the purge cassette.

7. Insert the purge cassette into the compartment on the front of the controller. Follow the diagram on the inside of the purge cassette door for proper placement.
8. Slide the purge disc into the slot to the right of the purge cassette until it snaps into place. The controller will automatically begin priming the purge cassette.
9. Extend the purge tubing and close the purge cassette door. There is sufficient room around the edges of the purge cassette door so that it will not pinch the purge tubing as it exits.
10. The controller automatically begins priming the purge cassette after it is inserted. The progress bar shown in Figure 5.3 marks the progress of the purge cassette priming.

Close Purge Cassette Door

Once the purge cassette is installed, be sure to close the purge cassette door to prevent the purge cassette from being dislodged accidentally.

CONNECT THE IMPELLA® CATHETER

1. Remove the Impella® Catheter from its package using sterile technique and inspect the catheter, including its connector, for damage.
2. Remove the white connector cable from its package using sterile technique.
3. Inspect the cable for damage, including damage to the connector pins at the controller end.
4. Secure the grey end of the cable to the sterile field.
5. Insert the catheter plug into the connector cable socket (grey end). The tab and the slot must be aligned during connection (see Figure 5.5).

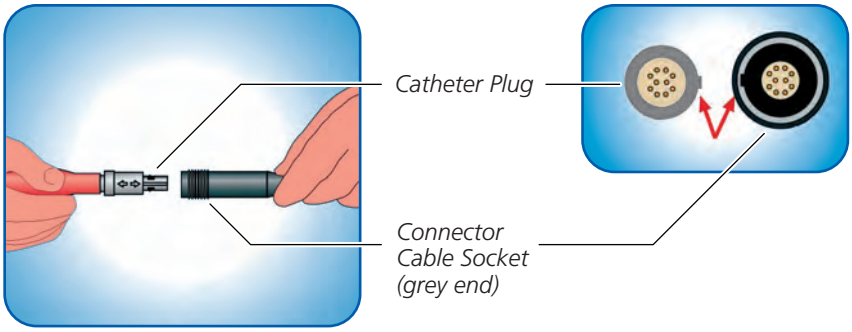


Figure 5.5 Inserting the Catheter Plug into the Connector Cable

6. Pull back on the connection to make sure that the plug has snapped into place.
7. Snap the purge clip (located on the pressure reservoir of the clear sidearm) to the connector cable as shown in Figure 5.6.

Important Step

Snapping the purge clip on the pressure reservoir to the connector cable is important to prevent the tube from kinking.

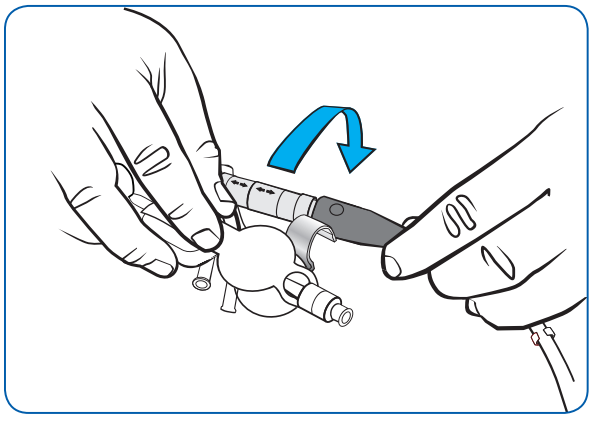


Figure 5.6 Snapping Purge Clip to Connector Cable (Impella CP® shown)

8. Pass the sterile connector cable from the Impella® Catheter off the sterile field.
9. Line up the notch on the connector cable with the notch in the blue catheter plug on the front of the Automated Impella® Controller and plug the cable into the controller.

10. Connect and tighten the luer(s) on the purge tubing to the Impella® Catheter sidearm(s) as shown in Figure 5.7. If using the Impella® 5.0 or LD Catheter, disconnect and discard the Y connector with red and yellow luers from the purge tubing.

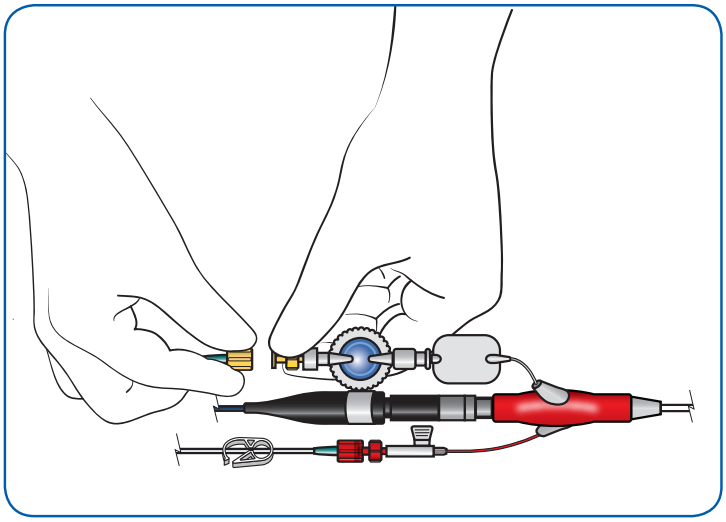


Figure 5.7 Connecting the Luer(s) to the Impella® Catheter (Impella CP® shown)

11. When the controller detects that the luer(s) are connected, it automatically begins priming the purge lumen (Figure 5.8).

PRIMING THE PURGE (IMPELLA® 2.5 AND IMPELLA CP®)

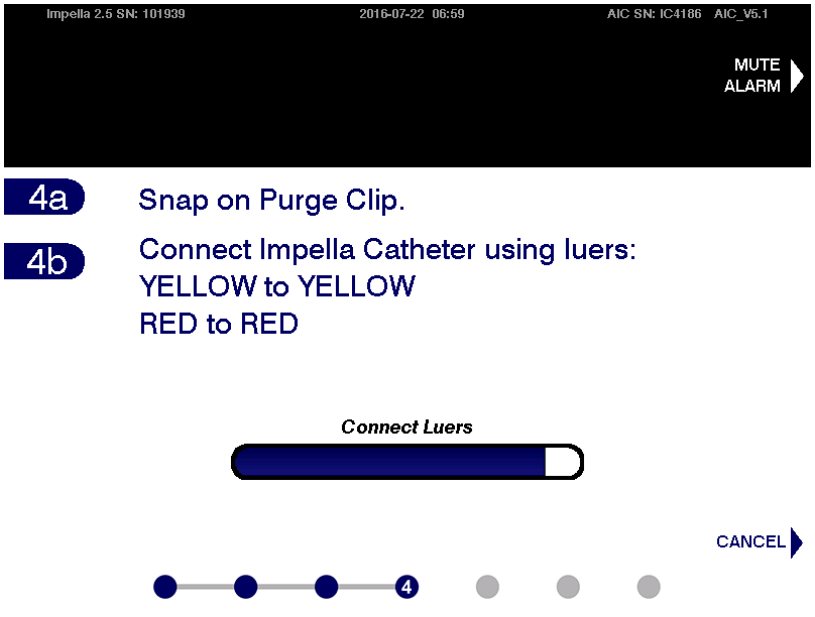


Figure 5.8 Connecting the Impella Catheter using the luers

12. Prime the Impella 2.5® or Impella CP® placement signal lumen by squeezing the sides of the white flush valve for 10 seconds (see Figure 5.9) until the Automated Impella® Controller beeps. The progress bar shows the progress of the priming.

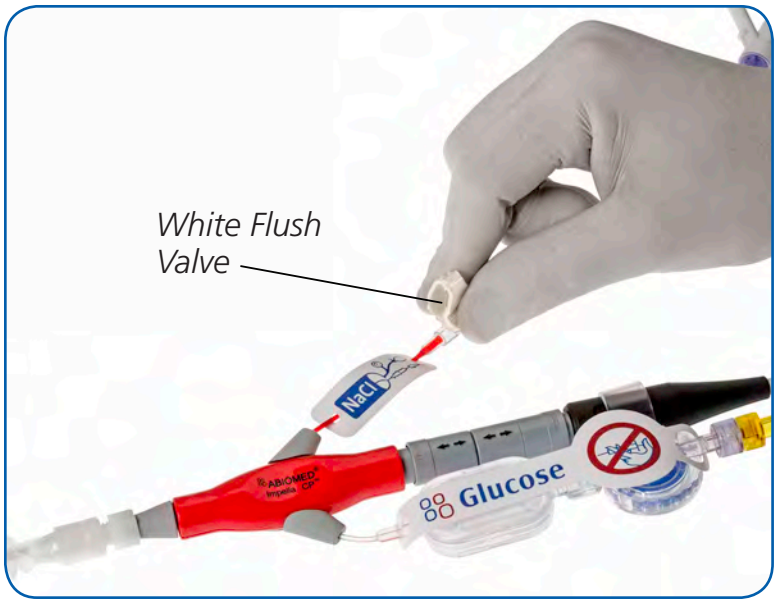


Figure 5.9 Squeezing the White Flush Valve to Prime the Placement Signal Lumen

Placement Lumen Flush Not Complete Error Screen

This error screen will pop up after 60 seconds of inactivity on the Flush Placement Lumen screen. The design allows the user to manually flush the placement lumen so that case start can be completed with a risk of no position or suction detection, but will allow them to provide hemodynamic support in an emergent situation.

13. When the system detects that the flush solution has reached the target pressure within the required amount of time, the system will advance to the next screen automatically.

ENTER PURGE FLUID DATA

1. Enter the purge fluid information. The screen in Figure 5.10 shows a table of recommended default values for the purge fluid.

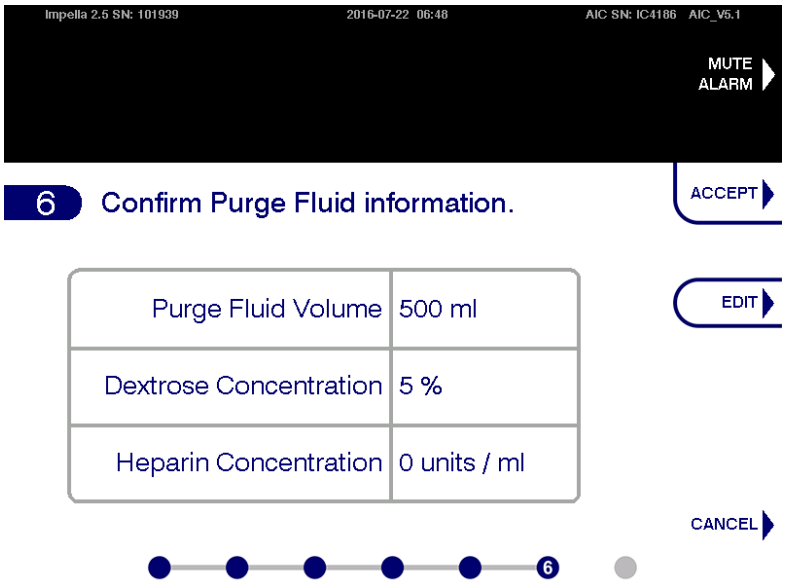


Figure 5.10 Entering Purge Fluid Information

2. To select the default values displayed on the screen, press the **ACCEPT** soft button. This will select those values and automatically advance to the next screen. Note: the Automated Impella® Controller will remember the purge fluid value entered on the previous Case Start.

3. To change the purge fluid information, press the **EDIT** soft button, scroll to the appropriate item and push the selector knob to select it or use the white arrow soft keys. Then scroll through the values and push the selector knob or press **SELECT** to make a new selection. Press the **DONE** button to finish editing. The controller will use the default values if no other selections are made. See Figure 5.11.
   - Purge fluid can be set to 50 mL, 100 mL, 250 mL, 500 mL (default), or 1000 mL.
   - Dextrose concentration can be set to 5% (default), 10%, 20%, 30%, or 40%.
   - Heparin concentration can be set to 0 (default), 5, 10, 12.5, 15, 20, 25, or 50 units/mL.

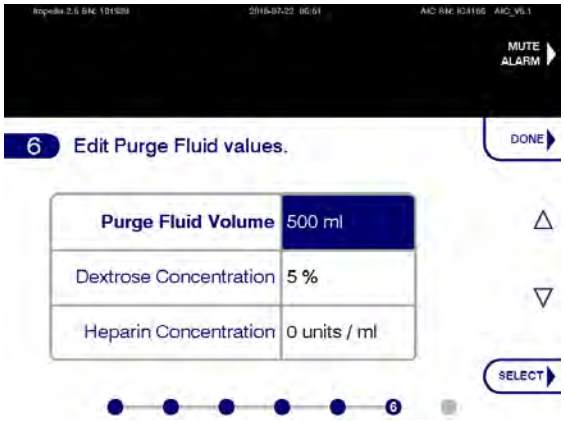


Figure 5.11 Changing the Purge Fluid Information

SECURE THE PURGE TUBING

1. To complete the setup, connect the purge tubing to the white connector cable by pushing the purge tubing into the clips attached to the white connector cable as shown in Figure 5.12.

Figure 5.12 Connecting the Purge Tubing to the Connector Cable

IMPELLA® SYSTEM SET-UP CONFIGURATION

Figure 5.13 illustrates the correct set-up configuration of the Impella Ventricular Support Systems (Impella CP® shown; Impella® 5.0 and LD configurations do not use the Y connector).

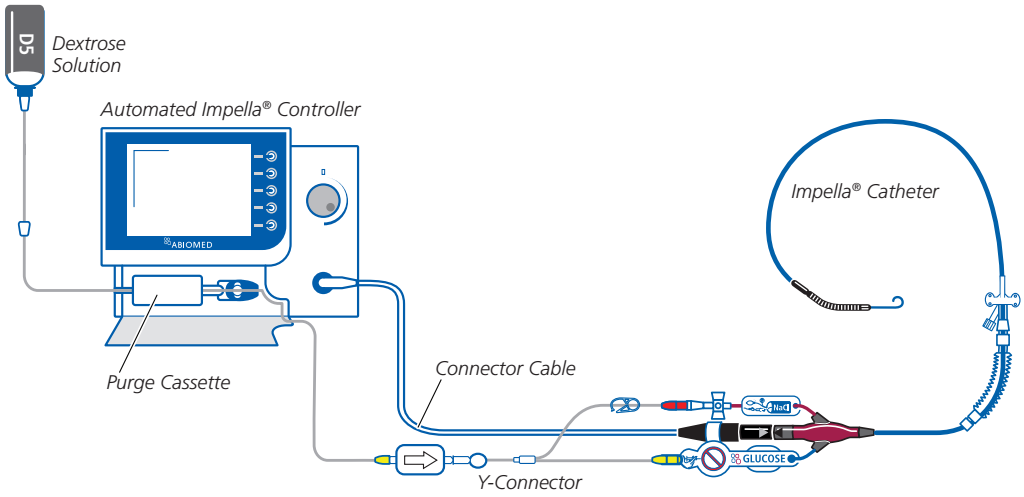


Figure 5.13 Set-up Configuration of the Impella Ventricular Support Systems (Impella CP® shown)

IMPELLA® 2.5 CATHETER INSERTION (WIRED)

NOTE – Proper surgical procedures and techniques are the responsibility of the medical professional. The described procedure is furnished for information purposes only. Each physician must evaluate the appropriateness of the procedure based on his or her medical training and experience, the type of procedure, and the type of systems used.

⚠	Fluoroscopy is required to guide placement of the Impella® Catheter. The small placement guidewire must be reliably observed at all times.
⚠	Avoid manual compression of the inlet and outlet areas of the cannula assembly.
⚠	To prevent malfunction of the locking mechanism of the peel-away introducer, do ***NOT*** hold the hemostatic valve while inserting into the artery.
⚠	Do ***NOT*** kink or clamp the Impella® Catheter with anything other than a soft jaw vascular clamp. Do ***NOT*** kink or clamp the peel-away introducer.
⚠	Handle with care. The Impella® Catheter can be damaged during removal from packaging, preparation, insertion, and removal. Do ***NOT*** bend, pull, or place excess pressure on the catheter or mechanical components at any time.
⚠	Patients with aortic stenosis or other abnormal aortic valve performance may be compromised by the use of the Impella® Catheter. Patients with aortic valve disease should be observed for aortic insufficiency.

1. Confirm purge fluid is exiting the Impella Catheter.
2. Obtain access to the femoral artery.
3. Insert a 5–8 Fr introducer over the 0.035 guidewire (provided) to pre-dilate the vessel.

Use Fluoroscopy for Placement

Impella® Catheter performance will be compromised if correct placement cannot be confirmed. While other imaging techniques, such as transesophageal echocardiography (TEE), portable C-Arm fluoroscopy, or chest x-ray can help confirm the position of the Impella® Catheter after placement, these methods do not allow visualization of the entire catheter assembly and are inadequate for reliably placing the Impella® Catheter across the aortic valve.

Introducer Setup

Refer to the instructions for use for each introducer for setup instructions.

Keep ACT ≥250 Seconds

Achieving an ACT ≥ 250 seconds prior to removing the dilator will help prevent a thrombus from entering the catheter and causing a sudden stop on startup.

GP IIb-IIIa Inhibitors

If the patient is receiving a GP IIb-IIIa inhibitor, the dilator can be removed and the Impella® Catheter inserted when ACT is 200 or above.

Using a Pigtail Diagnostic Catheter with Side Holes

When using a pigtail diagnostic catheter with side holes, ensure that the guidewire exits the end of the catheter and not the side hole. To do so, magnify the area one to two times as the guidewire begins to exit the pigtail.

4. Remove the 5–8 Fr introducer over the 0.035 guidewire. Predilate the artery with a 10 Fr dilator prior to inserting the 13 Fr peel-away introducer with dilator (see Figure 5.14). While inserting the introducer, hold the shaft of the introducer to slide it into the artery.

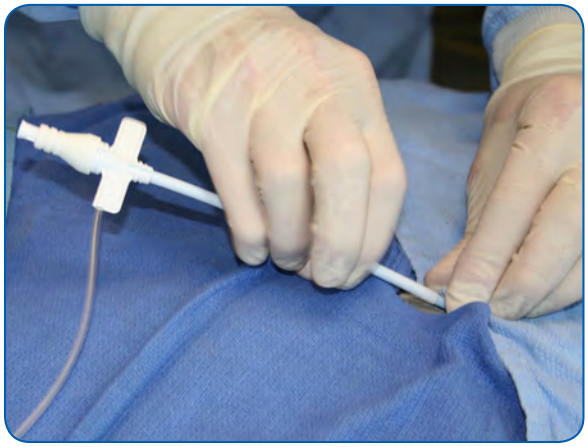


Figure 5.14 Inserting the Peel-Away Introducer

5. Administer heparin. When the ACT is greater than or equal to 250 seconds, remove the dilator.

6. Insert a diagnostic catheter (Abiomed recommends a 6 Fr AL1 or Multipurpose without side holes or 4–5 Fr pigtail with or without side holes) over a 0.035 inch diagnostic guidewire into the introducer and advance it into the left ventricle.

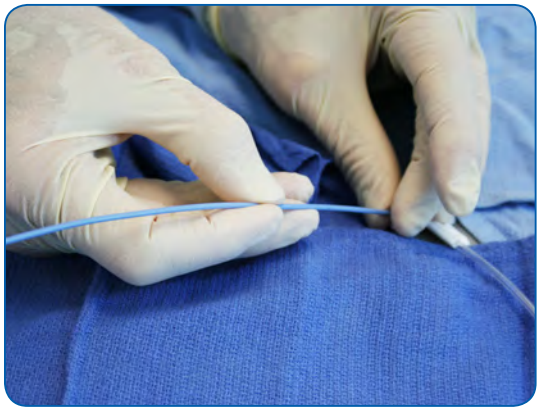


Figure 5.15 Inserting the Diagnostic Catheter

7. Remove the 0.035 inch diagnostic guidewire, leaving the diagnostic catheter in the ventricle. Form a curve or bend on the end of the 0.018 inch, 260 cm placement guidewire, following the instructions and heeding the precautions described in the sidebar box.

8. Advance the placement guidewire into the apex of the left ventricle.

9. Remove the diagnostic catheter.

To backload the catheter using the EasyGuide lumen

10. Insert the placement guidewire into the red EasyGuide lumen at the tip of the pigtail as shown in Figure 5.16. **(If the catheter does not have a red EasyGuide lumen, follow the procedure outlined in step 11.)**

a. Advance the guidewire until it exits the red lumen near the label.

b. Remove the EasyGuide lumen by gently pulling the label in line with the catheter shaft while holding the Impella® Catheter as shown in Figure 5.16.

c. If you suspect that a portion of the red lumen remains in the catheter, do NOT use the Impella® Catheter. Measure red lumen length using catheter markings (intact length is between 21.5 cm and 22.5 cm).

d. Skip to step 11 if the catheter is successfully backloaded on the guidewire.

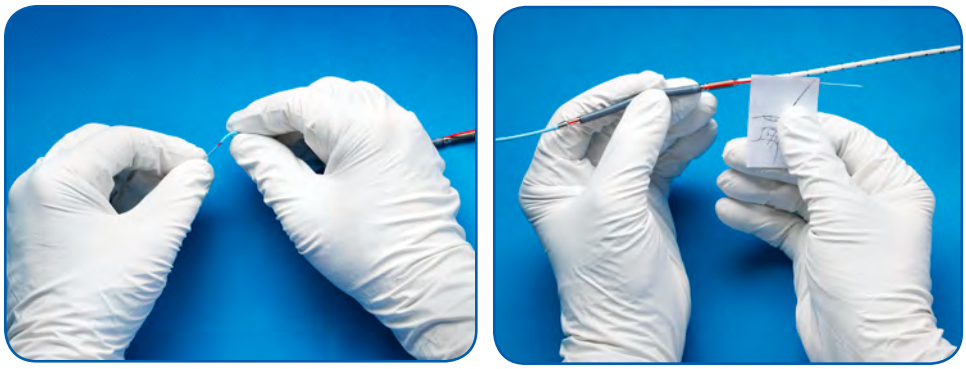


Figure 5.16 Loading the Catheter on the Guidewire using the EasyGuide Lumen

To backload the catheter without the EasyGuide lumen

11. Wet the cannula with sterile water and backload the catheter onto the placement guidewire. One or two people can load the catheter on the guidewire.

One-person technique

a. Advance the guidewire into the Impella® Catheter and stabilize the cannula between the fingers as shown in Figure 5.17. This prevents pinching of the inlet area. The guidewire must exit the outlet area on the inner radius of the cannula and align with the straight black line on the catheter as shown in Figure 5.17. The cannula can be hyperextended as necessary to ensure the guidewire exits on the inner radius of the cannula.

Two-person technique

b. The scrub assistant can help stabilize the catheter by holding the catheter proximal to the motor. This will allow the implanting physician to visualize the inner radius. The guidewire must exit the outlet area on the inner radius of the cannula and align with the straight black line on the catheter, as shown in Figure 5.17. The physician can focus on advancing the guidewire and, if the cannula needs to be hyperextended, the scrub assistant is available to assist.

Shaping the 0.018" Placement Guidewire

Place the shaping tool just distal to the weld separating the shaping ribbon from the body of the placement guidewire. Bend the shaping ribbon against the tool, using minimal force. Do NOT use a shaping tool with a sharp tip or edge. Do NOT pull the shaping tool along the length of the shaping ribbon as this could strip the coil off the guidewire and cause it to unfurl and separate. Inspect the coil and guidewire for damage after shaping and before using.

Do NOT reinsert the EasyGuide lumen

Once you remove the EasyGuide lumen from the Impella® Catheter, do not attempt to reinsert it. If necessary, follow instructions for backloading the catheter ***without*** *the EasyGuide lumen.*

Avoid Damaging Inlet Area

During placement of the Impella® Catheter, take care to avoid damage to the inlet area while holding the catheter and loading the placement guidewire.

Positioning in Small Hearts

If a patient has a smaller than normal ventricular cavity, the proper placement of the inlet area of the catheter may be 3 cm (rather than 3.5 cm) from the aortic valve.

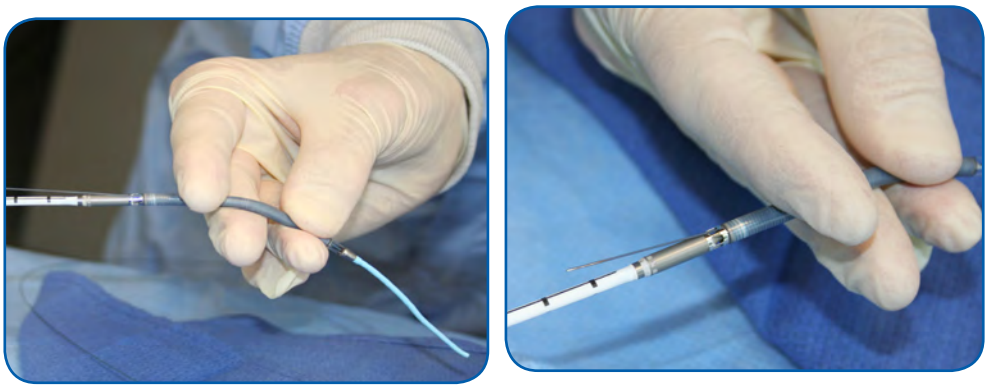


Figure 5.17 Loading the Catheter on the Guidewire without the EasyGuide Lumen and Aligning the Placement Guidewire

Take "Small Bites" During Insertion

While inserting the Impella® Catheter, push the catheter from only a few centimeters behind the hub of the peel-away introducer. This prevents the catheter from buckling during insertion.

12. Advance the catheter through the hemostatic valve into the femoral artery (see Figure 5.18) and along the placement guidewire and across the aortic valve using a fixed-wire technique. Follow the catheter under fluoroscopy as it is advanced across the aortic valve, positioning the inlet area of the catheter 3.5 cm below the aortic valve annulus and in the middle of the ventricular chamber, free from the mitral valve chordae. Be careful not to coil the guidewire in the left ventricle.

Do NOT Touch Inlet or Outlet Areas

While feeding the Impella® Catheter through the introducer, hold the catheter at the cannula or motor housing. Do NOT touch the inlet or the outlet areas.

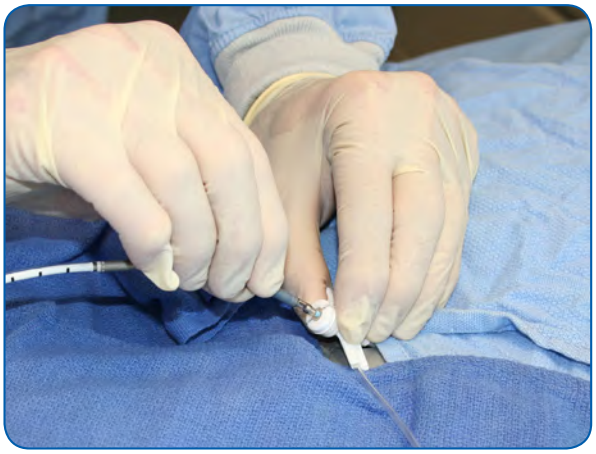


Figure 5.18 Inserting the Impella® Catheter

Maintaining ACT

After insertion of the catheter (and until explant), ACT should be maintained at 160 to 180 seconds.

To prevent device failure, do ***NOT*** start the Impella® Catheter until the guidewire has been removed.

Do ***NOT*** remove the Impella® Catheter over the length of the guidewire.

13. Remove the placement guidewire.

14. Confirm position with fluoroscopy and confirm that an aortic waveform (see Figure 5.19) is displayed on the Automated Impella® Controller.

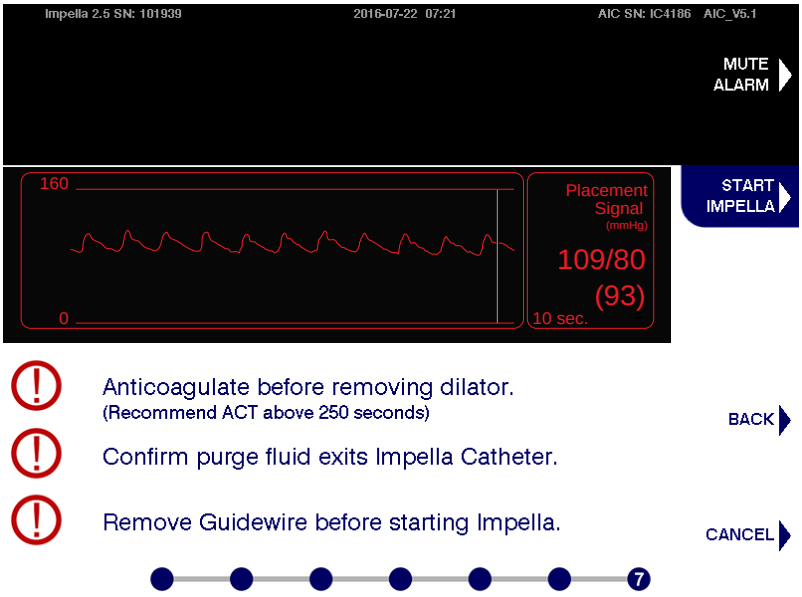


Figure 5.19 Aortic Waveform on Final Case Start Screen

WIRELESS INSERTION OF THE IMPELLA® 2.5 CATHETER

OVERVIEW

Physicians should exercise special care when inserting the Impella® Catheter in patients with known or suspected unrepaired abdominal aortic aneurysm or significant descending thoracic aortic aneurysm or dissection of the ascending, transverse, or descending aorta.

Physicians have developed a wireless technique as an alternative to the standard insertion method for the Impella® 2.5 Catheter. This technique eliminates several of the steps in the traditional insertion method.

WIRELESS INSERTION TECHNIQUE

Wireless Insertion

The Impella® 2.5 Catheter must be visualized at all times.

Do NOT apply excessive force on the catheter when advancing it across the aortic valve. The spring characteristics and robust catheter design should make it easy for the catheter to cross the aortic valve and move into position.

1. Place a 13 Fr introducer in the usual manner.
2. Administer heparin. When the ACT is above 250 seconds, remove the 13 Fr dilator.
3. Straighten the pigtail at the end of the Impella® 2.5 Catheter by hand and advance it through the hemostatic valve. Advance the catheter in small steps to avoid kinking.
4. Track the catheter through the descending aorta using fluoroscopy. Maintain the pigtail curve on the medial aspect of the aorta closer to the spine.
5. When the pigtail reaches the aortic valve, rest the pigtail against the medial cusp and continue to advance it until the catheter begins to prolapse.
6. Pull back while turning the catheter clockwise, allowing it to advance ("pop") across the aortic valve.
7. If the catheter fails to advance across the valve, pull back, twist 45°, and repeat the process.

RECOMMENDATIONS FOR HANDLING THE IMPELLA® 2.5 CATHETER

Unsuccessful Wireless Insertion

Persistent unsuccessful attempts at wireless insertion of the Impella® 2.5 Catheter will require reverting to the standard wired procedure.

During wireless insertion of the Impella® 2.5 Catheter, avoid twisting the catheter more than 360°. Doing so will tangle the connector cable and purge tubing. To reduce the likelihood of twisting or stressing the clear sidearm, ensure that the clear sidearm is clipped to the connector cable and is rotating with the red Impella plug. When in the initial set-up configuration, carefully inspect the catheter for kinking. In this configuration, occlusion alarms will not sound.

If the Impella® 2.5 Catheter must be removed from the patient, carefully rinse the catheter with heparinized saline solution to prevent blood from clotting on it when it is exposed to air. Use a new, clean basin to ensure the catheter will not come in contact with any loose fibers that could interfere with the operation of the motor.

IMPELLA CP® CATHETER INSERTION

NOTE – Proper surgical procedures and techniques are the responsibility of the medical professional. The described procedure is furnished for information purposes only. Each physician must evaluate the appropriateness of the procedure based on his or her medical training and experience, the type of procedure, and the type of systems used.

Fluoroscopy is required to guide placement of the Impella® Catheter and during re-wire through the guidewire access port. The small placement guidewire must be reliably observed at all times.

Avoid manual compression of the inlet and outlet areas of the cannula assembly.

To prevent malfunction of the locking mechanism of the peel-away introducer, do ***NOT*** hold the hemostatic valve while inserting into the artery.

Do ***NOT*** kink or clamp the Impella® Catheter with anything other than a soft jaw vascular clamp. Do ***NOT*** kink or clamp the peel-away introducer.

Handle with care. The Impella® Catheter can be damaged during removal from packaging, preparation, insertion, and removal. Do ***NOT*** bend, pull, or place excess pressure on the catheter or mechanical components at any time.

1. Confirm purge fluid is exiting the Impella Catheter.
2. Obtain access to the femoral artery.
3. Insert a 5–8 Fr introducer over the 0.035 guidewire (provided) to pre-dilate the vessel.
4. Remove the 5–8 Fr introducer over the 0.035 guidewire. Sequentially insert and remove the 8 Fr, 10 Fr, and 12 Fr dilators and then insert the peel-away introducer with dilator (see Figure 5.20). While inserting the introducer, hold the shaft of the introducer to slide it into the artery.

Figure 5.20 Inserting the Peel-Away Introducer

Use Fluoroscopy for Placement

Impella® Catheter performance will be compromised if correct placement cannot be confirmed. While other imaging techniques, such as transesophageal echocardiography (TEE), portable C-Arm fluoroscopy, or chest x-ray can help confirm the position of the Impella® Catheter after placement, these methods do not allow visualization of the entire catheter assembly and are inadequate for reliably placing the Impella® Catheter across the aortic valve.

Introducer Setup

Refer to the instructions for use for each introducer for setup instructions.

When inserting the dilator, be sure to twist and lock it onto the hub of the sheath and twist it off when removing it from the sheath.

Keep ACT ≥250 Seconds

Achieving an ACT ≥ 250 seconds prior to removing the dilator will help prevent a thrombus from entering the catheter and causing a sudden stop on startup.

GP IIb-IIIa Inhibitors

IF the patient is receiving a GP IIb-IIIa inhibitor, the dilator can be removed and the Impella® Catheter inserted when ACT is 200 or above.

Using a Pigtail Diagnostic Catheter with Side Holes

When using a pigtail diagnostic catheter with side holes, ensure that the guidewire exits the end of the catheter and not the side hole. To do so, magnify the area one to two times as the guidewire begins to exit the pigtail.

Shaping the 0.018" Placement Guidewire

Place the shaping tool just distal to the weld separating the shaping ribbon from the body of the placement guidewire. Bend the shaping ribbon against the tool, using minimal force. Do NOT use a shaping tool with a sharp tip or edge. Do NOT pull the shaping tool along the length of the shaping ribbon as this could strip the coil off the guidewire and cause it to unfurl and separate. Inspect the coil and guidewire for damage after shaping and before using.

5. Administer heparin. When the ACT is greater than or equal to 250 seconds, remove the dilator.

6. Insert a diagnostic catheter (Abiomed recommends a 6 Fr AL1 or Multipurpose without side holes or 4–5 Fr pigtail with or without side holes) over a 0.035 inch diagnostic guidewire into the introducer and advance it into the left ventricle.

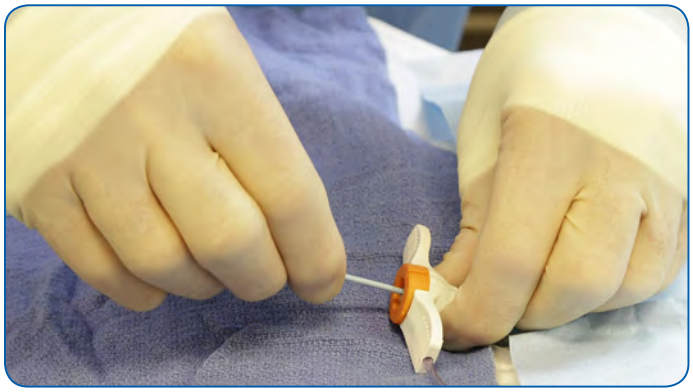


Figure 5.21 Inserting the Diagnostic Catheter

7. Remove the 0.035 inch diagnostic guidewire, leaving the diagnostic catheter in the ventricle. Form a curve or bend on the end of the 0.018 inch, 260 cm placement guidewire, following the instructions and heeding the precautions described in the sidebar box.

8. Advance the placement guidewire into the apex of the left ventricle.

9. Remove the diagnostic catheter.

To backload the catheter using the EasyGuide lumen

10. Insert the placement guidewire into the red EasyGuide lumen at the tip of the pigtail as shown in Figure 5.22. **(If the red EasyGuide lumen has been removed, follow the procedure outlined in step 11.)**

- **a.** Advance the guidewire until it exits the red lumen near the label.
- **b.** Remove the EasyGuide lumen by gently pulling the label in line with the catheter shaft while holding the Impella® Catheter as shown in Figure 5.22.
- **c.** If you suspect that a portion of the red lumen remains in the catheter, do NOT use the Impella® Catheter. Measure red lumen length using catheter markings (intact length is between 21.5 cm and 22.5 cm).
- **d.** Skip to step 11 if the catheter is successfully backloaded on the guidewire.

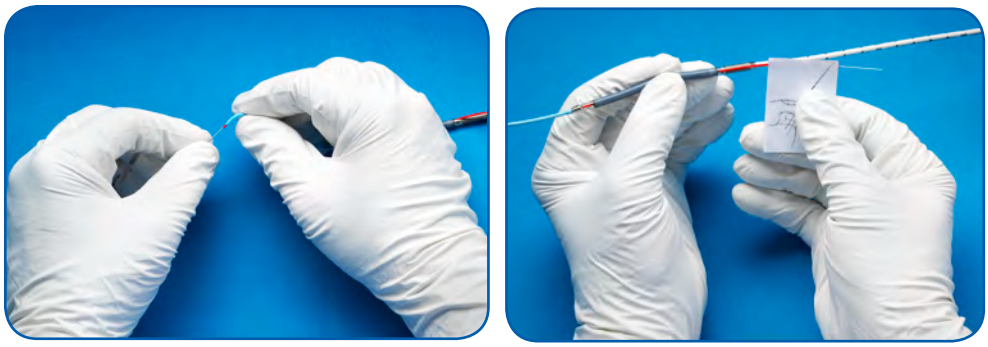


Figure 5.22 Loading the Catheter on the Guidewire using the EasyGuide Lumen

To backload the catheter without the EasyGuide lumen

11. Wet the cannula with sterile water and backload the catheter onto the placement guidewire. One or two people can load the catheter on the guidewire.

One-person technique

a. Advance the guidewire into the Impella® Catheter and stabilize the cannula between the fingers as shown in Figure 5.23. This prevents pinching of the inlet area. The guidewire must exit the outlet area on the inner radius of the cannula and align with the straight black line on the catheter as shown in Figure 5.23. The cannula can be hyperextended as necessary to ensure the guidewire exits on the inner radius of the cannula.

Two-person technique

b. The scrub assistant can help stabilize the catheter by holding the catheter proximal to the motor. This will allow the implanting physician to visualize the inner radius. The guidewire must exit the outlet area on the inner radius of the cannula and align with the straight black line on the catheter, as shown in Figure 5.23. The physician can focus on advancing the guidewire and, if the cannula needs to be hyperextended, the scrub assistant is available to assist.

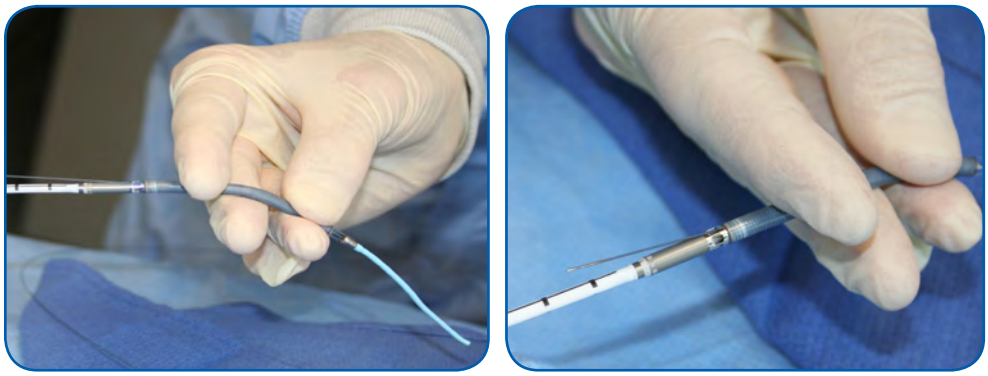


Figure 5.23 Loading the Catheter on the Guidewire without the EasyGuide Lumen and Aligning the Placement Guidewire

Do NOT reinsert the EasyGuide lumen

Once you remove the EasyGuide lumen from the Impella® Catheter, do not attempt to reinsert it. If necessary, follow instructions for backloading the catheter ***without*** *the EasyGuide lumen.*

Avoid Damaging Inlet Area

During placement of the Impella® Catheter, take care to avoid damage to the inlet area while holding the catheter and loading the placement guidewire.

Impella® Catheter Use in Open Heart Surgery

If the Impella® Catheter is used in the OR as part of open heart surgery, manipulation may be performed only at the access site. Direct manipulation of the catheter assembly through the aorta or ventricle may result in serious damage to the Impella® Catheter and serious injury to the patient.

Positioning in Small Hearts

If a patient has a smaller than normal ventricular cavity, the proper placement of the inlet area of the catheter may be 3 cm (rather than 3.5 cm) from the aortic valve.

12. Advance the catheter through the hemostatic valve into the femoral artery (see Figure 5.24) and along the placement guidewire and across the aortic valve using a fixed-wire technique. Follow the catheter under fluoroscopy as it is advanced across the aortic valve, positioning the inlet area of the catheter 3.5 cm below the aortic valve annulus and in the middle of the ventricular chamber, free from the mitral valve chordae. Be careful not to coil the guidewire in the left ventricle.

Take "Small Bites" During Insertion

While inserting the Impella® Catheter, push the catheter from only a few centimeters behind the hub of the peel-away introducer. This prevents the catheter from buckling during insertion.

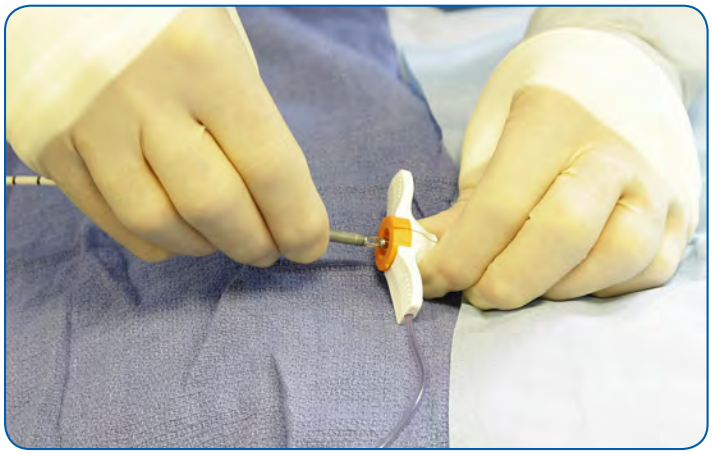


Figure 5.24 Inserting the Impella® Catheter

Do NOT Touch Inlet or Outlet Areas

While feeding the Impella® Catheter through the introducer, hold the catheter at the cannula or motor housing. Do NOT touch the inlet or the outlet areas.

To prevent device failure, do ***NOT*** start the Impella® Catheter until the guidewire has been removed.

Do ***NOT*** remove the Impella® Catheter over the length of the guidewire.

13. Remove the placement guidewire.

14. Confirm position with fluoroscopy and confirm that an aortic waveform (see Figure 5.25) is displayed on the Automated Impella® Controller.

Maintaining ACT

After insertion of the catheter (and until explant), ACT should be maintained at 160 to 180 seconds.

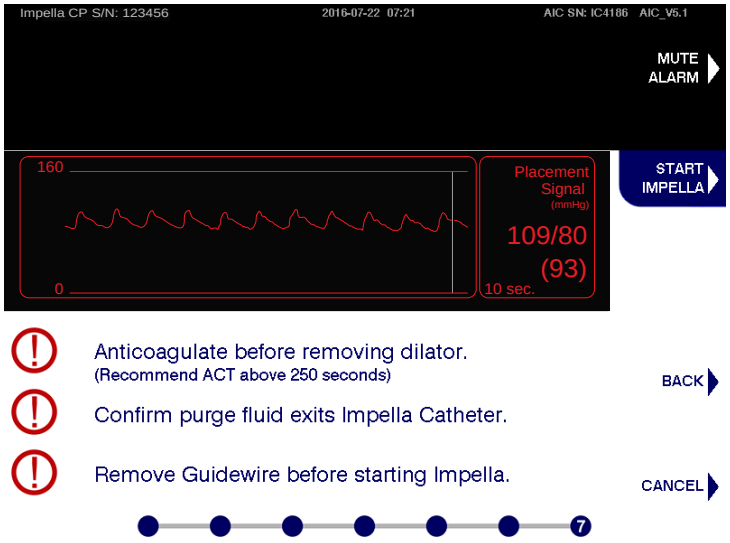


Figure 5.25 Aortic Waveform on Final Case Start Screen

AXILLARY INSERTION OF THE IMPELLA® 2.5, 5.0, OR IMPELLA CP® CATHETER

NOTE – Proper surgical procedures and techniques are the responsibility of the medical professional. The described procedure is furnished for information purposes only. Each physician must evaluate the appropriateness of the procedure based on his or her medical training and experience, the type of procedure, and the type of systems used.

	The introducer and graft lock are supplied sterile and can be used only if the packaging is not damaged and the expiration date has not elapsed.
	Fluoroscopy is required for the insertion of the Impella® guidewire and Impella® 5.0 Catheter.
	During insertion, avoid manual compression of the inlet or outlet areas of the Impella® Catheter or the sensor area of the cannula on the Impella® 5.0 Catheter.
	The graft must be affixed to the introducer proximal to the retainers on the introducer sheath to prevent the introducer from sliding out of the graft.
	When inserting the Impella® Catheter through the introducer and into the graft, be sure to clamp the graft with a vascular clamp just above the anastomosis to avoid blood loss through the pump cannula during insertion through the valve.
	The Impella® Axillary Insertion kit is intended to be used for insertion only. To provide continued hemostasis, the introducer must be peeled away and the repositioning sheath inserted into the graft.
	Do ***NOT*** resterilize or reuse any components of the Impella® Axillary Insertion kit. All components are disposable and intended for single use only. Reuse, reprocessing, or resterilization may compromise performance.
	The Impella® Axillary Insertion kit is not designed for use with the Impella® LD Catheter.
	The introducer is designed to be inserted into a graft. It is not intended for direct insertion into the artery.
	Abiomed recommends the use of a 10 mm diameter Hemashield Platinum graft with the introducer for proper fit and hemostasis between the graft and the introducer. A smaller diameter graft will not fit over the introducer.
	Abiomed recommends the use of a 20 cm length graft to allow enough length to fully insert the Impella® Catheter cannula into the graft prior to releasing vascular clamps at the anastomosis to minimize blood loss through the cannula.
	Do ***NOT*** kink or clamp the Impella® Catheter with anything other than a soft jaw vascular clamp. Do ***NOT*** kink or clamp the peel-away introducer.
	Proper positioning of the Impella® Catheter is extremely important and it is worthwhile to take extra time when positioning the catheter.
	Take care to insert the guidewire with diagnostic catheter into the middle of the hemostatic valve of the introducer to avoid tearing the valve.
	When inserting the Impella® Catheter into the introducer, take care to insert it straight into the center of the introducer valve.

The following steps describe the recommended technique for axillary artery insertion of the Impella® 2.5, 5.0, or Impella CP® Catheter.

1. Isolate and expose the axillary artery and obtain control via proximal and distal vessel loops.

2. Attach a 10 mm diameter x 20 cm long vascular graft to the axillary artery using a standard end-to-side anastomosis. NOTE: Abiomed recommends using a Hemashield Platinum graft and recommends using at least a 60 degree bevel on the end of the graft to facilitate passage of the rigid motor housing into the artery.

Use Fluoroscopy for Placement

Impella® Catheter performance will be compromised if correct placement cannot be confirmed. While other imaging techniques, such as transesophageal echocardiography (TEE), can help confirm the position of the Impella® Catheter after placement, TEE does not allow visualization of the entire catheter assembly and is inadequate for reliably placing the Impella® Catheter across the aortic valve.

3. Clamp the graft with a vascular clamp just above the anastomosis and loosen the vessel loops to allow blood to flow into the graft to assess for hemostasis at the anastomosis.

4. Insert the introducer into the graft and secure it with one (1) provided graft lock. To place the graft lock, open it and place it between the retainers and the hub on the introducer to prevent the introducer from sliding out of the graft (see Figure 5.26). NOTE: If a graft other than the Hemashield Platinum is used, 2 graft locks may be required to maintain hemostasis between the graft and the introducer. Correct positioning of the second graft is illustrated in Figure 5.27).

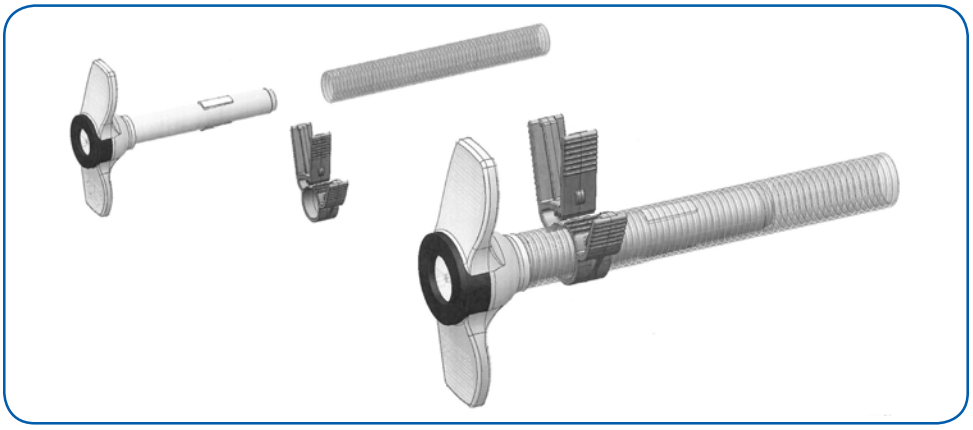


Figure 5.26 Introducer, Graft Lock, and Hemashield Platinum Graft (Graft Not Supplied)

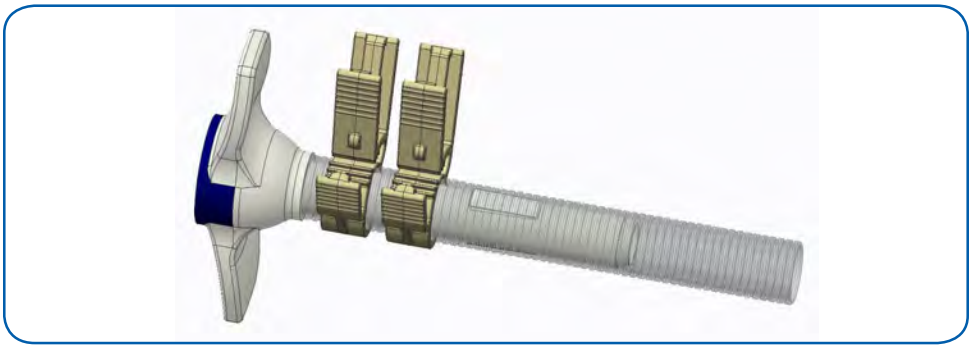
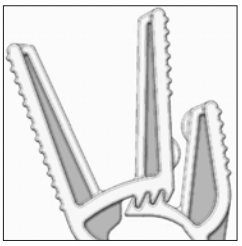


Figure 5.27 Correct Positioning If Second Graft Lock Required

5. Secure the graft lock by pressing both the outside tabs together. When fully closed, the graft lock provides hemostasis. If hemostasis is not achieved, make sure to press the two tabs together to fully close the graft lock as shown in Figure 5.28. The graft lock cannot be damaged by over closing. NOTE: The graft may also be secured over the introducer using heavy sutures or umbilical tape.

Press the two indicated tabs together to close the graft lock



Graft lock in fully closed position

Figure 5.28 Closing the Graft Lock

6. Remove the vascular clamp on the graft and insert a 0.035 inch diagnostic guidewire with a 4–6 Fr diagnostic catheter into the introducer, taking care to center the wire and catheter in the center of the hemostatic valve. Advance the guidewire and catheter into the left ventricle.

7. Remove the diagnostic guidewire and exchange it for a stiff 0.018 inch placement guidewire. With the 0.018 inch placement guidewire properly positioned in the left ventricle, remove the diagnostic catheter.

8. Remove the protective sleeve on the provided 8 Fr silicone-coated lubrication dilator, being careful to avoid getting silicone on your hands. Insert the dilator into the introducer over the 0.018 inch placement guidewire to coat the hemostatic valve with silicone oil to facilitate insertion of the Impella® Catheter through the hemostatic valve assembly. Once fully inserted, remove the dilator, keeping the 0.018 inch placement guidewire in place.

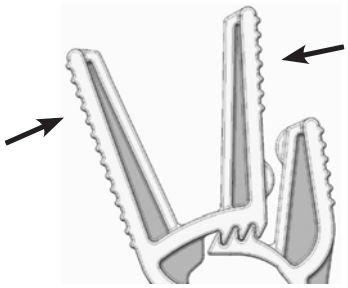
9. Clamp the graft with a vascular clamp just above the anastomosis to avoid blood loss through the pump cannula during insertion through the valve.

10. While maintaining guidewire position, backload the Impella® Catheter onto the 0.018 inch placement guidewire and advance the catheter over the guidewire through the introducer into the graft such that the entire pump cannula and motor housing resides in the graft and only the catheter shaft is seen exiting the valve.

11. Remove the vascular clamp and continue inserting the Impella® Catheter into the aorta. If inserting an Impella® 5.0 Catheter, pause to re-zero the pressure sensor (as described in section 6 of this manual) while the catheter is in the aorta. Continue advancing across the aortic valve using fluoroscopic imaging to properly position the inlet area in the left ventricle no more than 3.5 cm below the aortic valve. Remove the placement guidewire and initiate Impella® Catheter support as described later in this section.

12. Clamp the graft adjacent to the axillary artery with a soft jawed vascular clamp or have an assistant apply digital pressure to control bleeding at the base of the graft so that the introducer can be removed and the graft shortened. NOTE: To ensure the soft jaw vascular clamp is completely sealing over the graft and the 9 Fr catheter, open the sidearm flush valve on the introducer and verify blood is not leaking from the system.

13. To remove the introducer, release the graft lock by pressing the two adjacent long tabs together as shown in Figure 5.29 and remove it from the graft.



To release the graft lock, press the two indicated tabs together

Figure 5.29 Releasing the Graft Lock

14. Slide the introducer fully out of the graft prior to peeling it away. To peel the introducer off the catheter shaft, crack the hub by applying pressure to the thumb tabs and then peel the sheath off the catheter. NOTE: When breaking the hemostatic valve in the sheath hub, the valve may stretch before separating.

15. Trim any excess graft and slide the repositioning sheath into the graft. NOTE: The hub of the repositioning sheath should be at the skin level and the length of the remaining graft material should be just long enough to secure the graft around the repositioning sheath with all of the graft buried beneath the skin.

16. Using heavy silk suture, secure the graft around the hub of the repositioning sheath so that the position of the Impella® Catheter can still be adjusted. Remove the vascular clamp adjacent to the axillary artery.

17. The wound should be closed over the trimmed graft with the end of the repositioning sheath clearly visible. Anchor the repositioning sheath securely to the skin.

18. Remove excess slack from the Impella® Catheter and re-check position. Tighten the Tuohy-Borst valve to prevent catheter migration.

19. Extend the sterile sleeve. Attach one end to the repositioning hub and anchor the other to the catheter.

Use Fluoroscopy for Placement

Impella® 5.0 Catheter performance will be compromised if correct placement cannot be confirmed. While other imaging techniques, such as transesophageal echocardiography (TEE), can help confirm the position of the Impella® 5.0 Catheter after placement, TEE does not allow visualization of the entire catheter assembly and is inadequate for reliably placing the Impella® 5.0 Catheter across the aortic valve.

ALTERNATE INSERTION TECHNIQUE FOR THE IMPELLA® 5.0 CATHETER

NOTE – Proper surgical procedures and techniques are the responsibility of the medical professional. The described procedure is furnished for information purposes only. Each physician must evaluate the appropriateness of the procedure based on his or her medical training and experience, the type of procedure, and the type of systems used.

⚠	Fluoroscopy is required to guide placement of the Impella® 5.0 Catheter. The small placement guidewire must be reliably observed at all times.
⚠	Avoid manual compression of the inlet, outlet, or sensor areas of the cannula assembly.
⚠	Do ***NOT*** kink or clamp the Impella® Catheter with anything other than a soft jaw vascular clamp. Do ***NOT*** kink or clamp the peel-away introducer.
⚠	Handle with care. The Impella® 5.0 Catheter can be damaged during removal from packaging, preparation, insertion, and removal. Do ***NOT*** bend, pull, or place excess pressure on the catheter or mechanical components at any time.

This section describes two alternative techniques for insertion of the Impella® 5.0 Catheter:

- Femoral insertion
- Femoral insertion with sidearm graft

TECHNIQUE FOR FEMORAL ARTERY INSERTION

1. Identify the femoral artery and perform a cut-down of 3 to 5 cm.
2. Expose the femoral artery. Wrap vessel loops, one distal and one proximal to the subsequent point of incision, one and a half times around the artery. Make the vessel loops as far apart as possible (see Figure 5.30).

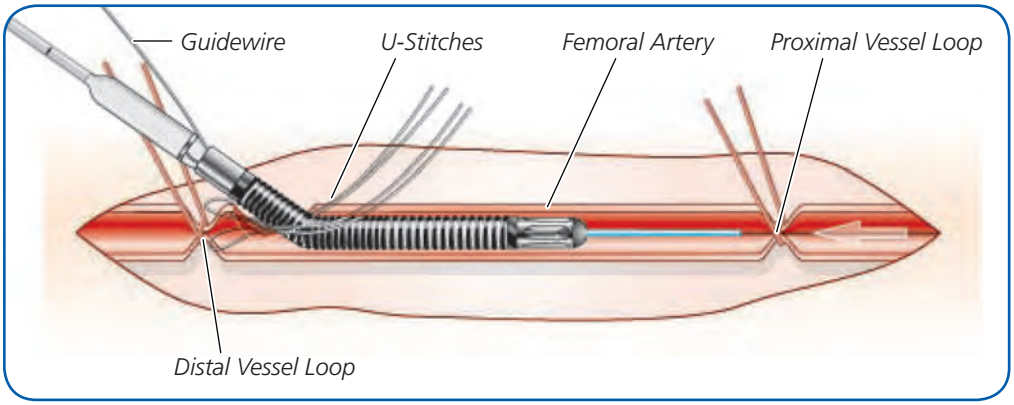


Figure 5.30 Cut-Down Insertion of the Impella® 5.0 Catheter

3. To prepare the repositioning sheath, remove the luer plug at the end of the sidearm tube and flush the tube with 0.9% NaCl solution.

   Place the luer plug back in the sidearm tube and secure the plug.

4. Make the incision as close as possible to the distal loop. Insert a diagnostic catheter (Abiomed recommends a 6 Fr AL1 or Multipurpose without side holes or 4–5 Fr pigtail with or without side holes) over a diagnostic 0.035 inch or 0.038 inch guidewire into the left ventricle.

5. Remove the diagnostic guidewire and exchange it for the supplied 0.018 inch placement guidewire.

6. Hold tension on the proximal vessel loop to prevent bleeding. Straighten the blue pigtail and thread it over the 0.018 inch placement guidewire (see Figure 5.31). Wet the cannula with sterile water and backload the catheter onto the placement guidewire. One or two people can load the catheter on the guidewire.

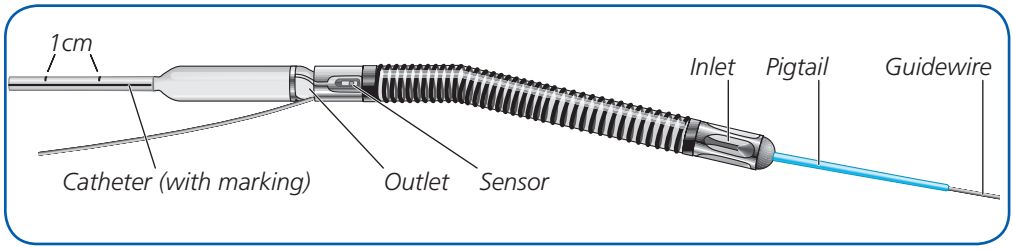


Figure 5.31 Guidewire Placement

One-person technique

a. Advance the placement guidewire into the Impella® 5.0 Catheter and stabilize the cannula between the fingers. This prevents pinching of the inlet area. The placement guidewire must exit the outlet area on the inner radius of the cannula as shown in Figure 5.31, and align with the straight black line on the catheter. The catheter can be hyperextended as necessary to ensure the placement guidewire exits on the inner radius of the cannula.

Two-person technique

b. The scrub assistant can help stabilize the catheter by holding the catheter proximal to the motor. This will allow the implanting physician to visualize the inner radius. The placement guidewire must exit the outlet area on the inner radius of the catheter and align with the straight black line on the catheter. The physician can focus on advancing the placement guidewire and, if the cannula needs to be hyperextended, the scrub assistant is available to assist.

7. Make a transverse incision at the guidewire for the 21 Fr catheter. Use U-stitches (see Figure 5.30) instead of purse string sutures to avoid stenosis of the vessel after explantation.

8. Administer heparin and achieve ACT of at least 250 seconds.

9. Insert the catheter into the vessel and advance along the 0.018 inch placement guidewire until resistance is met at the proximal vessel loop.

Impella® 5.0 Use in Open Heart Surgery

If the Impella® 5.0 Catheter is used in the OR as part of open heart surgery, manipulation may be performed only through the 9 Fr steering catheter. Direct manipulation of the catheter through the aorta or ventricle may result in serious damage to the Impella® 5.0 Catheter and serious injury to the patient.

Using a Pigtail Diagnostic Catheter with Side Holes

When using a pigtail diagnostic catheter with side holes, ensure that the guidewire exits the end of the catheter and not the side hole. To do so, magnify the area one to two times as the guidewire begins to exit the pigtail.

GP IIb-IIIa Inhibitors

If the patient is receiving a GP IIb-IIIa inhibitor, the Impella® 5.0 Catheter can be inserted when ACT is 200 or above.

Do NOT Touch Inlet or Outlet Areas

While feeding the Impella® 5.0 Catheter through the femoral artery, hold the device at the cannula or motor housing. Do NOT touch the inlet area or the outlet area.

10. Loosen the proximal vessel loop and advance the catheter into the vessel. When the motor housing is entirely past the proximal vessel loop, temporarily tighten the loop to control bleeding.

To prevent device failure, do not start the Impella® 5.0 Catheter until the placement guidewire has been removed.

Do ***NOT*** remove the Impella® 5.0 Catheter over the length of the placement guidewire.

11. Advance the repositioning sheath, located on the catheter shaft, through the incision and into the femoral artery until bleeding is controlled. Secure the sheath outside of the vessel using the supplied suture loop.

12. Stabilize the guidewire and repositioning sheath and advance the catheter through the sheath. Follow the catheter under fluoroscopy as it is advanced into the left ventricle. (Refer to the following page and to section 7 of this manual for information about waveforms displayed on the controller during placement.)

13. When the catheter is correctly positioned, slightly loosen the proximal vessel loop and remove the 0.018 inch guidewire. Leave at least 2 to 3 cm of the repositioning sheath inside the vessel.

14. Tighten the prepared U-stitches to seal the sheath.

15. Loosen the distal vessel loop. Then loosen the proximal vessel loop.

INSERTION TECHNIQUE USING A SIDEARM GRAFT

1. After exposing the femoral artery and making the incision as described in the steps above, prepare a Dacron® vascular graft (10 mm x 20 cm) by beveling the end of the graft at a 45 to 60 degree angle.

2. Tighten the distal and proximal vessel loops to control bleeding.

3. Attach the vascular graft using the standard end-to-side anastomosis (Figure 5.32).

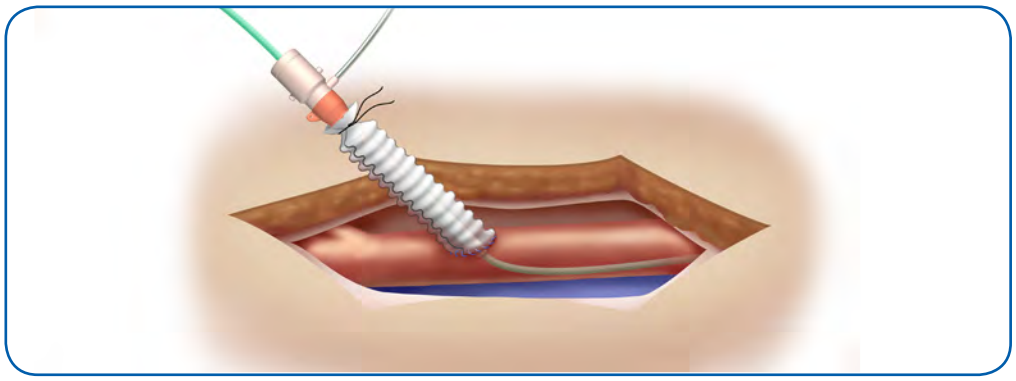


Figure 5.32 Femoral Artery Insertion of the Impella® 5.0 Catheter Using a Sidearm Graft

4. Assess the anastomosis for hemostasis.
5. Attach a standard 6 Fr introducer to the distal end of the graft.
6. Advance a diagnostic catheter (Abiomed recommends a 6 Fr AL1 or Multipurpose without side holes or 4–5 Fr pigtail with or without side holes) over a diagnostic 0.035 inch or 0.038 inch guidewire into the left ventricle.
7. Remove the diagnostic guidewire and exchange it for the supplied 0.018 inch placement guidewire.
8. Tighten the vessel loops to control bleeding and remove the 6 Fr introducer.
9. Moisten the Impella® 5.0 Catheter and push one of the silicone plugs onto the catheter shaft adjacent to the Impella® 5.0 Catheter motor.
10. Backload the Impella® 5.0 Catheter onto the 0.018 inch guidewire (as described in the steps in previous section).
11. With the graft held at the base, place the Impella® 5.0 Catheter into the open end of the graft up to the level of the silicone plug.
12. Secure umbilical tape around the silicone plug.
13. Loosen both vessel loops and advance the Impella® 5.0 Catheter along the guidewire into the left ventricle until it is properly positioned.

⚠ To prevent device failure, do not start the Impella® 5.0 Catheter until the placement guidewire has been removed.

⚠ Do ***NOT*** remove the Impella® 5.0 Catheter over the length of the placement guidewire.

14. Remove the guidewire.
15. Apply digital pressure to control bleeding at the base of the graft and remove the silicone plug.
16. Trim any excess graft and slide the repositioning sheath into position.

17. Using a heavy silk tie or umbilical tape, secure the graft around the yellow hub of the repositioning sheath.

18. Close the wound over the trimmed graft with the end of the repositioning sheath clearly visible. The steering catheter for the Impella® 5.0 can be manipulated if needed by securing the repositioning sheath and moving the catheter in or out.

19. Extend the sterile sleeve. Attach one end to the repositioning hub and anchor the other to the catheter.

Use TEE for Placement

Transesophageal echocardiography (TEE) is required for placement of the Impella® LD Catheter.

Positioning the Aortic Incision

It is important to make the incision in the ascending aorta 7 cm above the aortic valve so that the Impella® LD Catheter can be positioned properly. An incision too close to the aortic valve annulus could result in the catheter outlet area in the graft rather than the aorta.

The incision must be ≤ 6 mm in length to prevent the front silicone plug from advancing into the aorta through the incision.

IMPLANTING AND STARTING THE IMPELLA® LD CATHETER

NOTE – Proper surgical procedures and techniques are the responsibility of the medical professional. The described procedure is furnished for information purposes only. Each physician must evaluate the appropriateness of the procedure based on his or her medical training and experience, the type of procedure, and the type of systems used.

	Avoid manual compression of the inlet, outlet, or sensor areas of the cannula assembly.
	Do ***NOT*** kink or clamp the Impella® Catheter with anything other than a soft jaw vascular clamp. Do ***NOT*** kink or clamp the peel-away introducer.
	Handle with care. The Impella® LD Catheter can be damaged during removal from packaging, preparation, insertion, and removal. Do ***NOT*** bend, pull, or place excess pressure on the catheter or mechanical components at any time.
	An incision larger than 6 mm may allow the front plug to advance into the aorta.

GP IIb-IIIa Inhibitors

If the patient is receiving a GP IIb-IIIa inhibitor, the Impella® LD Catheter can be implanted when ACT is 200 or above.

The Impella® LD Catheter is surgically implanted when there is access to the ascending aorta through a sternotomy or thoracotomy. Transesophageal echocardiography (TEE) is required to guide placement.

IMPLANTATION PREPARATION

Keep ACT ≥250 Seconds

Maintaining ACT at or above 250 seconds will help prevent a thrombus from entering the catheter and causing a sudden stop on startup.

1. Using the supplied sterile incision template for positioning (see sidebar), place a sidebiter clamp on the aorta at least 7 cm above the valve plane.
2. Make an incision (or punch) no larger than 6 mm at the insertion site on the ascending aorta.
3. Attach the Dacron® vascular graft (10 mm x 15 cm) to the aorta using the standard end-to-side anastomosis.
4. Administer heparin and achieve ACT of at least 250 seconds.

5. When the anastomosis is complete, place a clamp at the distal end of the graft and then release the proximal clamp at the base of the graft. Examine the suture line for leaks and reclamp the graft at the base.

6. Moisten the Impella® LD Catheter and push both silicone plugs up against the motor housing as shown in Figure 5.33.

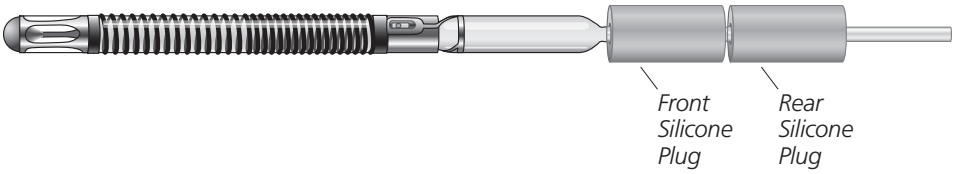


Figure 5.33 Impella® LD Catheter with Silicone Plugs

7. Confirm purge fluid is exiting the Impella® LD Catheter.

8. With the graft clamped at the base, place the Impella® LD Catheter into the open end of the graft up to the level of the rear plug.

9. When the catheter is in position, secure a tourniquet around the rear silicone plug. Tighten the tourniquet sufficiently to control bleeding around the rear plug while still allowing the catheter to slide through the plug.

10. Release the clamp and advance the Impella® LD Catheter into the aorta.

11. If the patient is on cardiopulmonary bypass (CPB), allow the heart to fill by restricting the return flow to the bypass machine and reducing CPB flow to a minimum setting, as long as acceptable physiologic systemic flow is maintained.

12. As soon as the motor housing has passed into the aorta, use a ligature to loosely secure the front silicone plug flush to the graft. The silicone plug should be in the most proximal portion of the graft.

13. While the catheter is being advanced in the aorta, the initial placement signal has the characteristics shown in Figure 5.34. The inlet area of the catheter has not passed the aortic valve. Do not allow the front plug to advance beyond the base of the graft.

Securing the Front Silicone Plug

There should be no movement of the front silicone plug within the graft; however, the catheter shaft should move without resistance within the plug.

When securing the front silicone plug to the graft, do not penetrate the silicone plug too deeply as this could cause damage to the Impella® LD Catheter.

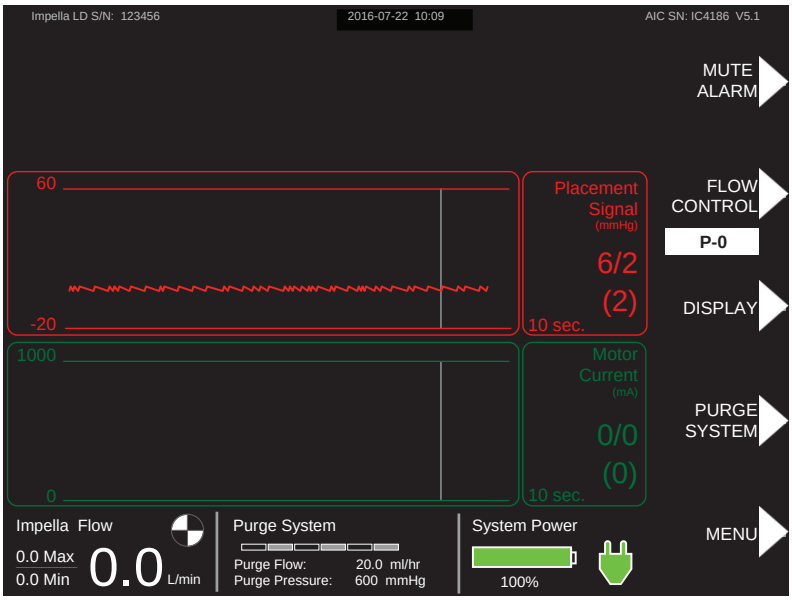


Figure 5.34 Waveform as Catheter is Advanced into the Aorta

14. To aid in passing the catheter through the aortic valve, apply slight pressure to the posterior aspect of the aortic valve to produce temporary aortic insufficiency.

15. Gently advance the catheter forward until a pulsatile waveform is present on the placement screen (see Figure 5.35) This signal is generated when the inlet area of the catheter crosses the aortic valve.

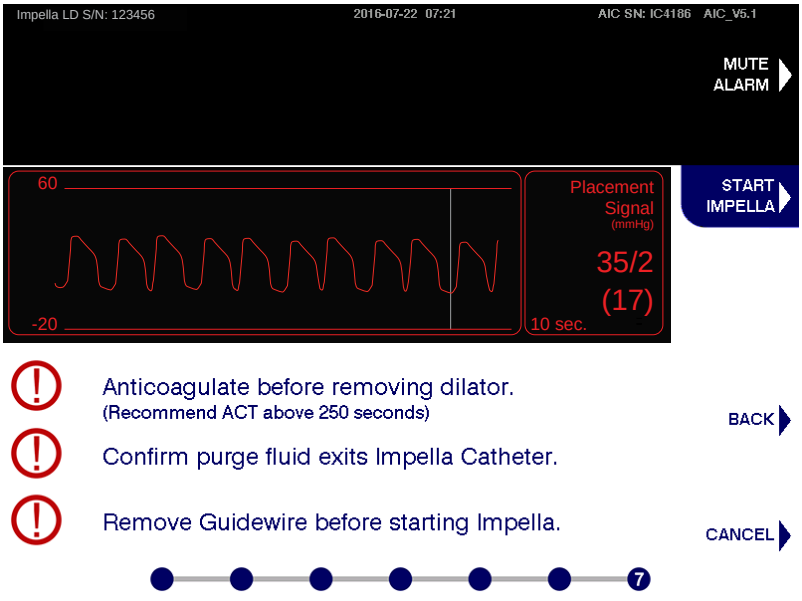


Figure 5.35 Pulsatile Waveform on Final Case StartScreen

16. Confirm that the controller displays a pulsatile waveform and the tip of the inlet area of the Impella® LD Catheter is 3.5 cm below the aortic valve. Confirm catheter position using TEE.

POSITIONING AND STARTING THE IMPELLA® 2.5 AND IMPELLA CP® CATHETERS

Retrograde flow will occur across the aortic valve if the flow rate of the Impella® Catheter is less than 0.5 L/min.

1. Place the catheter plug at the same level as the patient's heart.
2. Reconfirm that the placement guidewire has been removed. Also reconfirm that the controller displays an aortic waveform and the radiopaque marker band is located at the aortic valve. (See step 7 if the controller displays a ventricular waveform.)
3. Press the **START IMPELLA** soft button. The Impella® CP or Impella® 2.5 will start in **AUTO** and automatically increase the flow rate over 30 seconds.

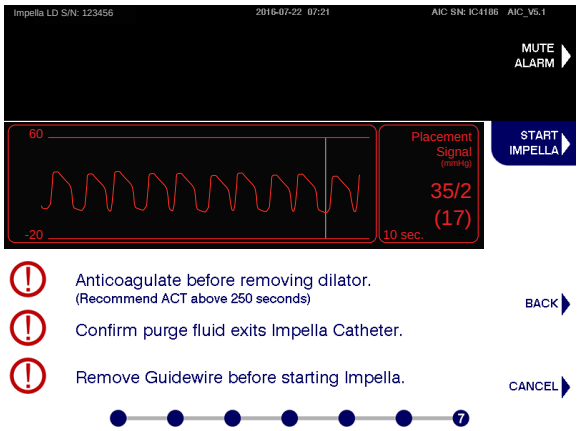


Figure 5.36 Starting the Impella® 2.5 and Impella CP® Catheter

4. Once the controller has begun to run in AUTO, pressing the **FLOW CONTROL** soft button again opens the FLOW CONTROL menu with options for **BOOST, AUTO**, and P-levels ranging from P-0 to P-8 as shown in Figure 5.37 and described in the "Modes of Operation" discussion that follows.

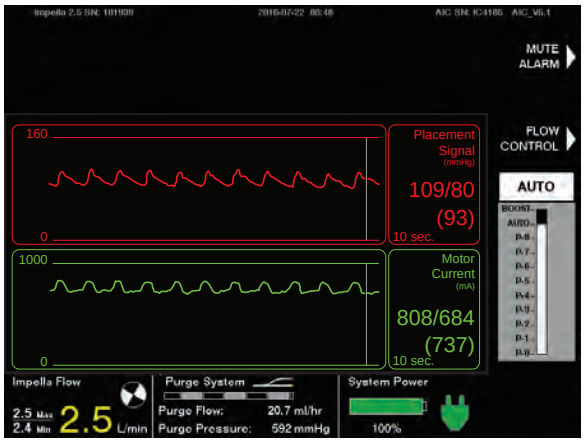


Figure 5.37 FLOW CONTROL Options for the Impella® 2.5 and Impella CP® Catheter

BOOST

The "BOOST" FLOW CONTROL setting maximizes the Impella® Catheter flow for 5 minutes. At the end of 5 minutes, the controller returns to the AUTO setting (or P-8 if previously running in P-level mode).

Importance of Proper Impella® Catheter Placement

When the Impella® Catheter is not correctly placed, there is no effective unloading of the ventricle. The patient may not be benefiting from the flow rate shown on the controller.

Placement Monitoring Suspended

When the Impella® Catheter is operating in a low flow range, placement monitoring may be suspended and the flow rate in the lower left corner of the controller display screen will turn yellow to indicate that Impella position is unknown.

Retrograde Flow

If the Impella® Catheter minimum flow is below 0.1 L/min then the controller will increase the motor speed to prevent retrograde flow.

5. Wait 30 seconds for flow to reach its maximum value, then confirm correct and stable placement. Evaluate the catheter position in the aortic arch and remove any excess slack. The catheter should align against the lesser curvature of the aorta rather than the greater curvature. Verify placement with fluoroscopy and with the placement signal screen.
6. Reposition the catheter as necessary.
7. If the Impella® Catheter advances too far into the left ventricle and the controller displays a ventricular waveform (see Figure 5.38) rather than an aortic waveform, follow these steps to reposition the catheter.
   a. Pull the catheter back until an aortic waveform is present on the placement screen.
   b. When the aortic waveform is present, pull the catheter back an additional 4 cm. (The distance between adjacent markings on the catheter is 1 cm.) The catheter should now be positioned correctly.

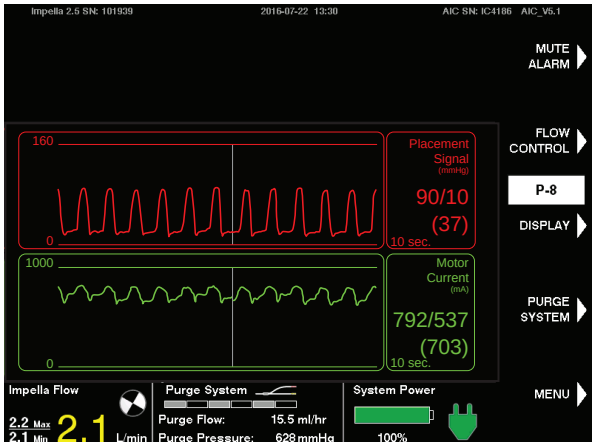


Figure 5.38 Ventricular Waveform on Placement Signal Screen

MODES OF OPERATION

AUTO

In **AUTO**, the Automated Impella® Controller sets the motor speed of the Impella® Catheter to achieve the maximum possible flow without causing suction. After 3 hours of operation, if you have not transferred to the standard configuration, the controller automatically switches to P-level mode. Upon transfer from AUTO mode to P-level mode, the controller displays the message shown in Figure 5.39 and the AUTO setting is no longer an option.

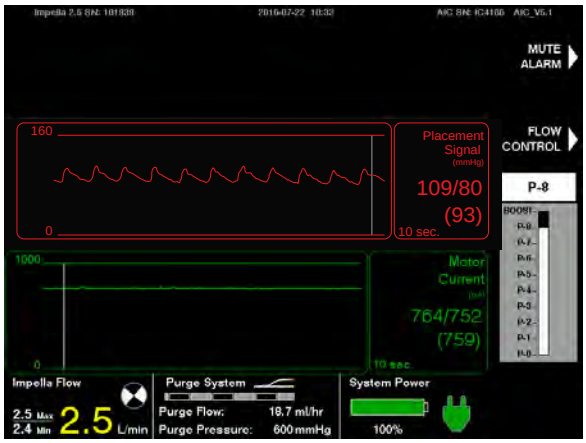


Figure 5.39 Transfer to P-level Mode

BOOST

If you select **BOOST**, the Automated Impella® Controller maximizes the Impella® Catheter flow for 5 minutes. At the end of 5 minutes, the controller returns to the AUTO setting (or P-8 if previously running in P-level mode).

P-LEVEL

In **P-LEVEL** mode you can select one of nine P-levels (P-0 to P-8) for the Impella® Catheter (see Table 5.3 for the Impella® 2.5 and Table 5.4 for the Impella CP®). Select the lowest P-level (P-2 or higher) that will enable you to achieve the flow rate necessary for patient support.

Table 5.3 P-level Flow Rates for the Impella® 2.5 Catheter

P-level		*Flow Rate (L/min)	Revolutions Per Minute (rpm)
P-0	Impella® 2.5 Catheter motor is stopped	0.0	0
P-1	Flow rate increases as the P-level increases	0.0 – 1.1	25,000
P-2		0.8 – 1.5	35,000
P-3		1.1 – 1.7	38,000
P-4		1.3 – 1.8	40,000
P-5		1.5 – 1.9	43,000
P-6		1.7 – 2.1	45,000
P-7		1.8 – 2.2	47,000
P-8	Recommended maximum P-level for continuous use	2.1 – 2.4	50,000
BOOST	Used to confirm stable position after placement; can be used to provide maximum flow for up to 5 minutes. After 5 minutes, the Automated Impella® Controller will automatically default to AUTO or P-8.	2.1 – 2.5	51,000

**Flow rate can vary due to suction or incorrect positioning.*

Table 5.4 P-level Flow Rates for the Impella CP® Catheter

P-level		*Flow Rate (L/min)	Revolutions Per Minute (rpm)
P-0	Impella CP® Catheter motor is stopped	0.0	0
P-1	Flow rate increases as the P-level increases	0.0 – 1.7	23,000
P-2		1.0 – 2.1	31,000
P-3		1.7 – 2.3	33,000
P-4		2.0 – 2.5	35,000
P-5		2.3 – 2.7	37,000
P-6		2.5 – 2.9	39,000
P-7		2.8 – 3.2	42,000
P-8	Recommended maximum P-level for continuous use	3.0 – 3.3	44,000
BOOST	Used to confirm stable position after placement; can be used to provide maximum flow for up to 5 minutes. After 5 minutes, the Automated Impella® Controller will automatically default to AUTO or P-8.	3.3 – 3.5	46,000

**Flow rate can vary due to suction or incorrect positioning.*

To operate the Impella® Catheter in P-level mode:

1. Press the **FLOW CONTROL** soft button to open the FLOW CONTROL menu.
2. Turn the selector knob to increase or decrease the flow rate.
3. Press the selector knob to select the new flow rate.

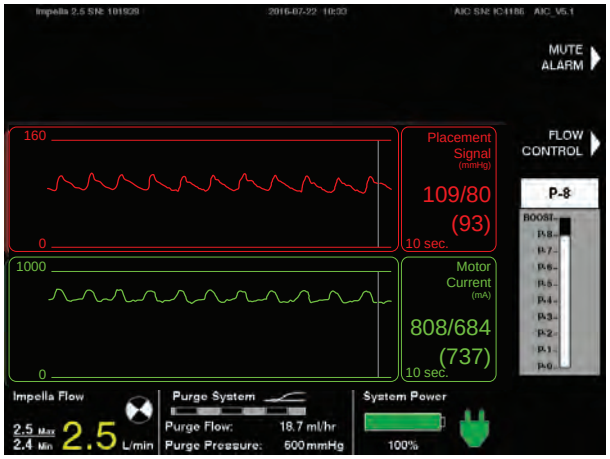


Figure 5.40 Adjusting P-level

USE OF THE REPOSITIONING SHEATH AND PEEL-AWAY INTRODUCER

To prevent failure of the peel-away introducer, remove the peel-away introducer prior to transport when activated clotting time (ACT) is less than 150 seconds.

Be sure that the stopcock on the peel-away introducer or repositioning sheath is always kept in the closed position. Significant bleed back can result if the stopcock is open.

1. Flush the sidearm of the repositioning sheath located on the catheter shaft.
2. **Remove the peel-away introducer completely from the artery** over the catheter shaft to prevent trauma and significant bleeding and apply manual pressure above the puncture site.
3. Grasp the two "wings" and bend back until the valve assembly comes apart. Continue to peel the two wings until the introducer is completely separated from the catheter shaft (see Figure 5.41).

Figure 5.41 Removing the Peel-Away Introducer (14 Fr Introducer shown)

4. Flush the sidearm of the repositioning sheath prior to advancing the sheath.
5. For the Impella® 2.5 Catheter, place a deadend cap on the sidearm of the repositioning sheath to prevent further usage. The sideport should not be used to give medication or draw blood because the blood could potentially clot. Pressure bags should not be connected to the sideport of the repositioning sheath. If a pressure bag is connected, the sideport must have an infusion pump or flow limiting valve in place to control the amount of fluid administered to the patient.

Maintaining ACT

After insertion of the catheter (and until explant), ACT should be maintained at 160 to 180 seconds.

Addition of Heparin to the Purge Solution

As soon as practical after catheter placement, change the purge fluid to include heparin. The recommended heparin concentration is 50 IU/mL in 5% dextrose solution. (Follow the Change Purge Fluid procedure described later in this section to change the purge fluid.)

6. Slide the repositioning sheath over the catheter shaft and advance it into the artery to the blue suture pads. For the Impella CP® Catheter, do ***NOT*** remove the stylet in the guidewire access port.
7. Secure the repositioning unit to the patient with the blue suture pads or a StatLock® stabilization device.
8. Evaluate the catheter position in the aortic arch and remove any excess slack. The catheter should align against the lesser curvature of the aorta rather than the greater curvature. Verify placement with fluoroscopy and with the placement signal.
9. Attach the anticontamination sleeve to the blue section of the repositioning sheath. Lock the anchoring ring in place by turning it clockwise. Secure the catheter shaft in place by tightening the connected anchoring ring.
10. Carefully extend the anticontamination sleeve to maximum length and secure the end closest to the red Impella® plug by tightening the anchoring ring.

Purge Pressure

When you transfer to the standard configuration, the purge pressure is no longer regulated at 600 mmHg. In the standard configuration, purge flow can range from 2 to 30 mL/hr and purge pressure can range from 300 to 1100 mmHg.

Handling Precaution

When connecting or disconnecting the red luer on the Y connector, do NOT grasp the white flush valve or apply force. Grasp the luer on both sides beneath the white flush valve while connecting or disconnecting lines from the red pressure sidearm.

TRANSFER TO STANDARD CONFIGURATION

Abiomed recommends transitioning from the initial set-up configuration to the standard configuration as soon as practical. The standard configuration ensures that purge solution is delivered through the catheter to prevent blood from entering the motor. After 2 hours of operation, if the system is still in the set-up configuration, a white, advisory alarm notifies the operator to transfer to the standard configuration. Press **MUTE ALARM** to silence the alarm for 30 minutes.

To transfer to the standard configuration, follow these steps.

1. Press **PURGE SYSTEM** and select "Transfer to Standard Configuration" from the menu.
2. Set up a standard sodium chloride solution with pressure bag (pressurized to 300–350 mmHg) using straight tubing without injection ports.
3. Clamp the red luer on the Y connector from the red pressure sidearm. Disconnect and end cap the red luer.
4. Create a slow drip from the NaCl pressure bag to flood the luer connector of the red pressure sidearm and make a wet-to-wet connection. Fully open the roller clamp. The controller may alarm during this step.
5. Select **OK** to confirm the transfer. You will no longer see the set-up icon on the bottom of the screen. The advisory alarm message will be gray.

Figure 5.42 illustrates the correct configuration of the Impella Ventricular Support Systems components after transitioning to the standard configuration from the set-up configuration.

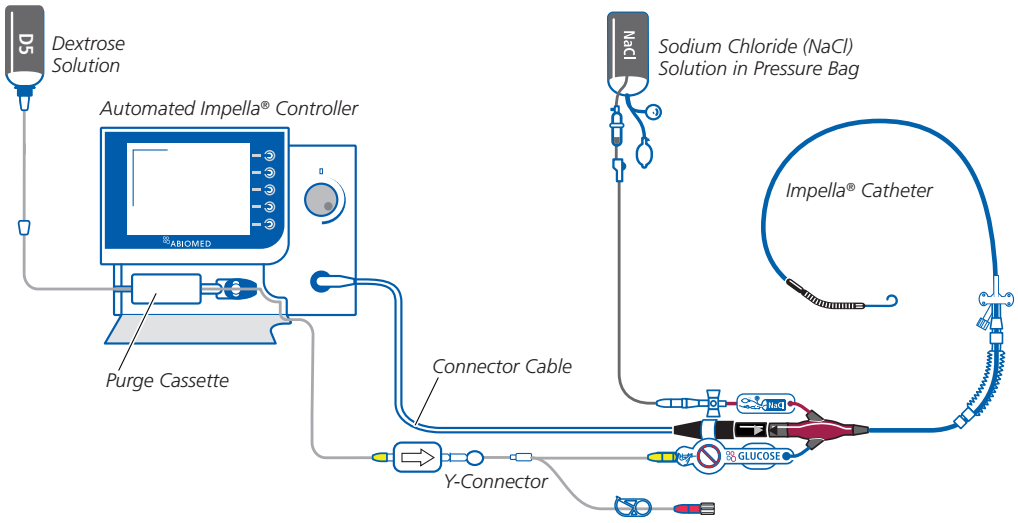


Figure 5.42 Standard Configuration for Impella Ventricular Support Systems after Transfer from the Set-up Configuration

Disconnecting the Y Connector

When you switch to the standard configuration, you can simply clamp, disconnect, and cap the red luer on the Y connector (as shown in Figure 5.25) or you can disconnect the Y connector entirely and connect the yellow luer on the purge tubing directly to the yellow check valve on the Impella® Catheter.

POSITIONING AND STARTING THE IMPELLA® 5.0 CATHETER

Retrograde flow will occur across the aortic valve if the Impella® 5.0 Catheter is set at P-0.

1. Confirm purge fluid is exiting the Impella Catheter.
2. While the catheter is being advanced in the aorta, the initial placement signal has the characteristics shown in Figure 5.43. The inlet area of the catheter has not passed the aortic valve.

Importance of Proper Impella® 5.0 Catheter Placement

When the Impella® 5.0 Catheter is not correctly placed, there is no effective unloading of the ventricle (hydraulic short circuit). The patient may not be benefiting from the flow rate shown on the controller.

Addition of Heparin to the Purge Solution

As soon as practical after placement, change the purge fluid to include heparin. The recommended heparin concentration is 50 IU/mL in 20% dextrose solution. (Follow the Change Purge Fluid procedure described later in this section to change the purge fluid.)

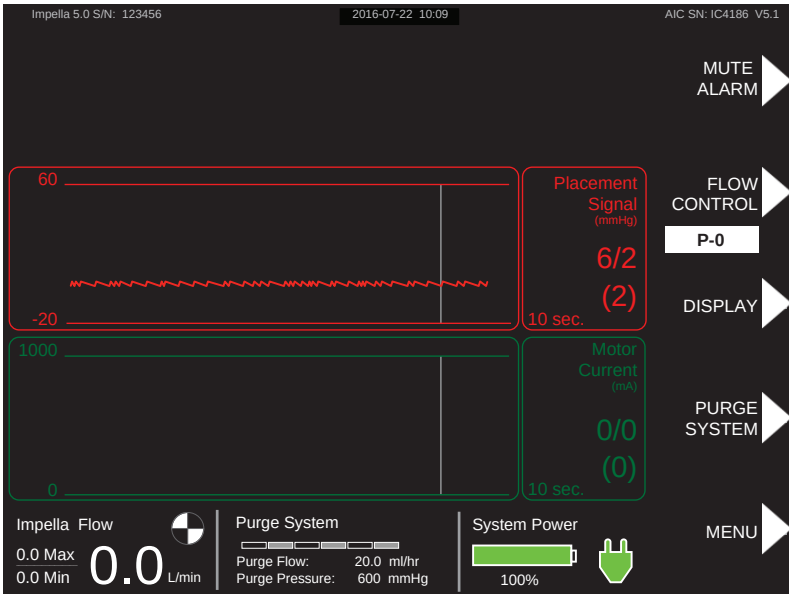


Figure 5.43 Waveform as Catheter is Advanced into the Aorta

3. Gently advance the catheter forward until a pulsatile waveform is present on the placement signal screen (see Figure 5.44) This signal is generated when the inlet area of the catheter crosses the aortic valve.

4. Confirm that the controller displays a pulsatile waveform and the inlet area of the Impella® 5.0 Catheter is 3.5 cm below the aortic valve.

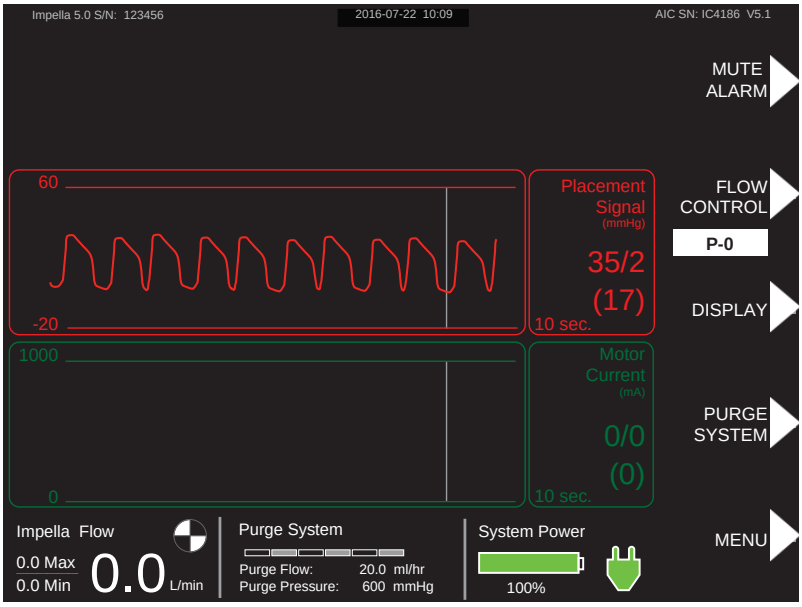


Figure 5.44 Pulsatile Waveform on Placement Screen

5. Press the **START IMPELLA** soft button.
6. Press the **FLOW CONTROL** soft button to open the P-level menu (see Figure 5.45).
7. Turn the selector knob to increase the P-level from P-0 to P-2.
8. Press the selector knob to select the new P-level.

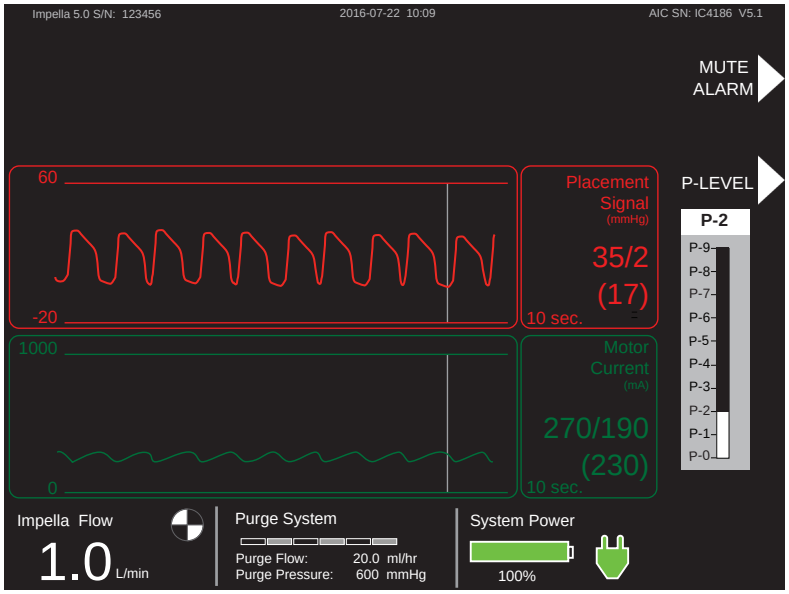


Figure 5.45 Selecting P-level

9. The catheter operation icon in the lower left corner of the screen begins rotating when the Impella® 5.0 Catheter beings to operate.

Positioning in Small Hearts

If a patient has a smaller than normal ventricular cavity, the proper placement of the inlet area of the catheter may be 3 cm (rather than 3.5 cm) from the aortic valve.

Check Positioning at P-9

When the P-level is increased to P-9, the Impella® 5.0 Catheter has a tendency to be drawn into the ventricle. Check positioning at P-9 to ensure proper placement throughout the P-level setting range.

Addition of Heparin to the Purge Solution

As soon as practical after placement, change the purge fluid to include heparin. The recommended heparin concentration is 50 IU/mL in 5% dextrose solution. (Follow the Change Purge Fluid procedure described later in this section to change the purge fluid.)

Vascular Closure

When securing the repositioning sheath, vascular closure may be difficult in obese patients with extensive adipose tissue.

Retrograde Flow

A setting of P-0 will result in retrograde flow when the Impella® 5.0 Catheter is placed across the aortic valve. Retrograde flow may also occur at P-1.

Placement Monitoring Suspended

When the Impella® Catheter is operating in a low flow range, placement monitoring may be suspended and the flow rate in the lower left corner of the controller display screen will turn yellow to indicate that Impella® position is unknown.

10. Increase the P-level to P-9 to confirm correct and stable placement. Evaluate the catheter position in the aortic arch and remove any excess slack. The catheter should align against the lesser curvature of the aorta rather than the greater curvature. Verify placement with fluoroscopy and with the placement screen (see Figure 5.46).

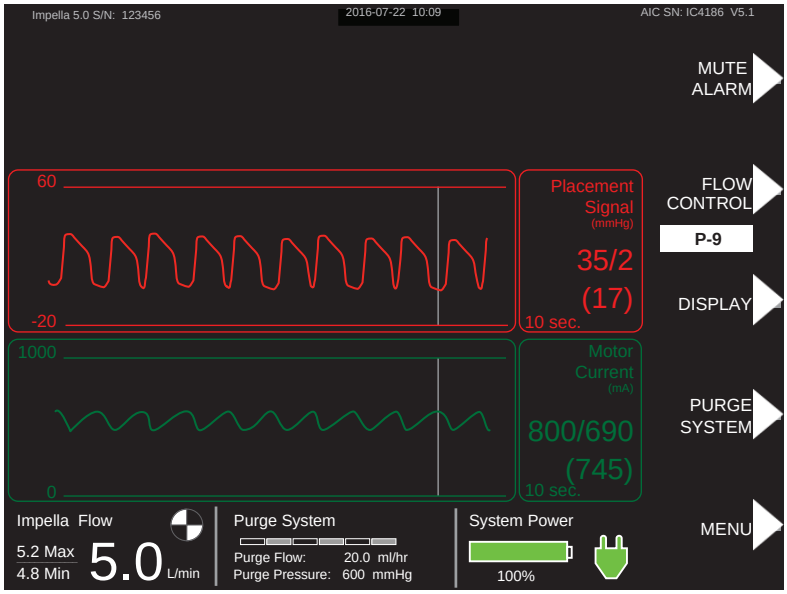


Figure 5.46 Confirming Placement on the Placement Signal Screen

11. Make sure there is no bleeding at the transition from the repositioning sheath to the artery. Close and dress the wound. Secure the repositioning sheath to the patient with the blue suture pads or a StatLock® device.

12. Attach the anticontamination sleeve to the sheath. Lock it in place by turning clockwise. Secure the catheter by tightening the connected anchoring ring.

13. Carefully extend the anticontamination sleeve to maximum length and secure the end closest to the red Impella® plug by tightening the anchoring ring.

14. Reposition the catheter as necessary.

15. Select the lowest P-level that will enable you to achieve the flow rate necessary for patient support. You can select one of ten P-levels (P-0 to P-9) for the Impella® 5.0 Catheter (see Table 5.5).

Table 5.5 P-Level Flow Rates for the Impella® 5.0 Catheter

P-Level	*Flow Rate (L/min)	Revolutions Per Minute (rpm)
P-0	0.0	0
P-1	0.0 – 1.4	10,000
P-2	0.5 – 2.6	17,000
P-3	0.5 – 3.1	20,000
P-4	0.9 – 3.4	22,000
P-5	1.4 – 3.7	24,000
P-6	1.8 – 4.0	26,000
P-7	2.6 – 4.4	28,000
P-8	3.4 – 4.7	30,000
P-9	4.2 – 5.3	33,000

**Flow rate can vary due to suction or incorrect positioning.*

POSITIONING AND STARTING THE IMPELLA® LD CATHETER

Retrograde flow will occur across the aortic valve if the Impella® LD Catheter is set at P-0.

1. Press the **START IMPELLA** soft button.
2. Press the **FLOW CONTROL** soft button to open the P-level menu (see Figure 5.47).
3. Turn the selector knob to increase the P-level from P-0 to P-2.
4. Press the selector knob to select the new P-level.

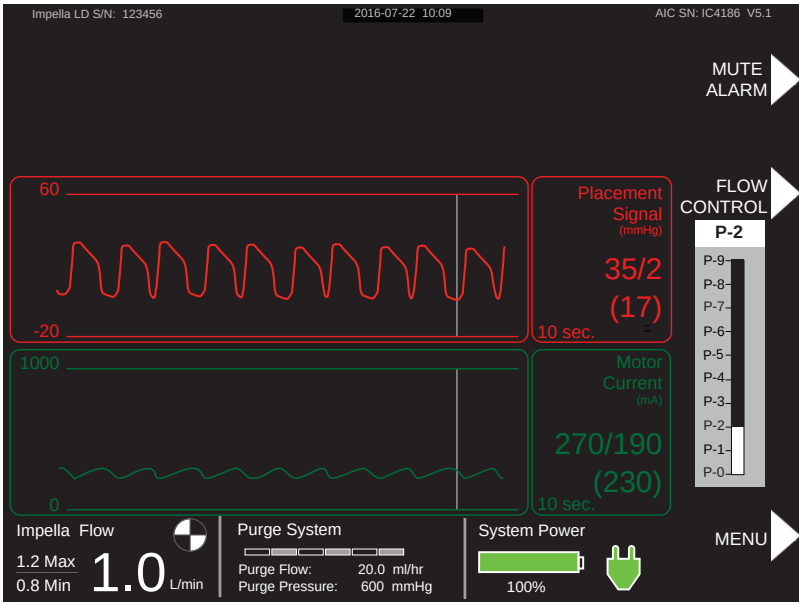


Figure 5.47 Selecting P-Level

Check Positioning at Maximum Flow

When the flow rate is increased to maximum flow, the Impella® LD Catheter has a tendency to be drawn into the ventricle. Check positioning at maximum flow to ensure proper placement throughout the P-level setting range.

5. The catheter operation icon in the lower left corner of the screen begins rotating when the Impella® LD Catheter begins to operate.
6. Increase P-level to P-9 to confirm correct and stable placement. Verify placement with TEE and the placement screen (see Figure 5.48). Reposition the catheter as necessary.

Addition of Heparin to the Purge Solution

As soon as practical after placement, change the purge fluid to include heparin. The recommended heparin concentration is 50 IU/mL in 5% dextrose solution. (Follow the Change Purge Fluid procedure described later in this section to change the purge fluid.)

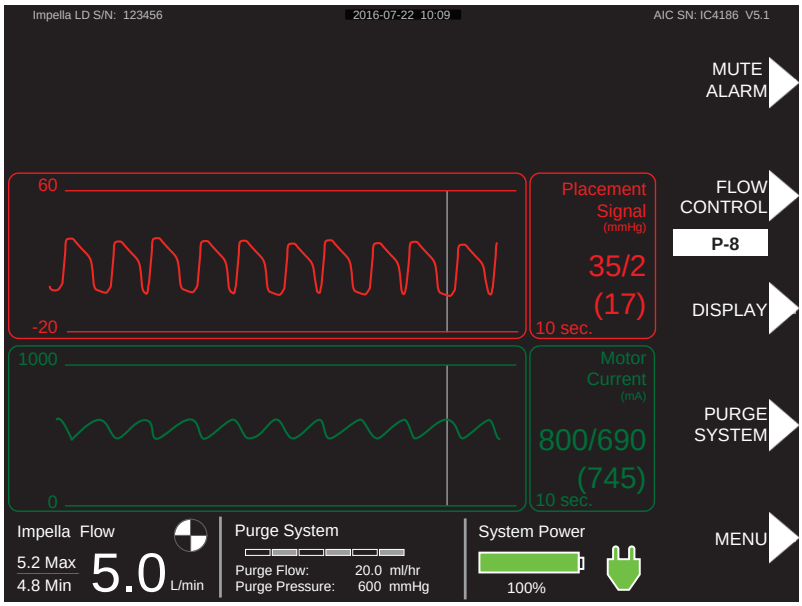
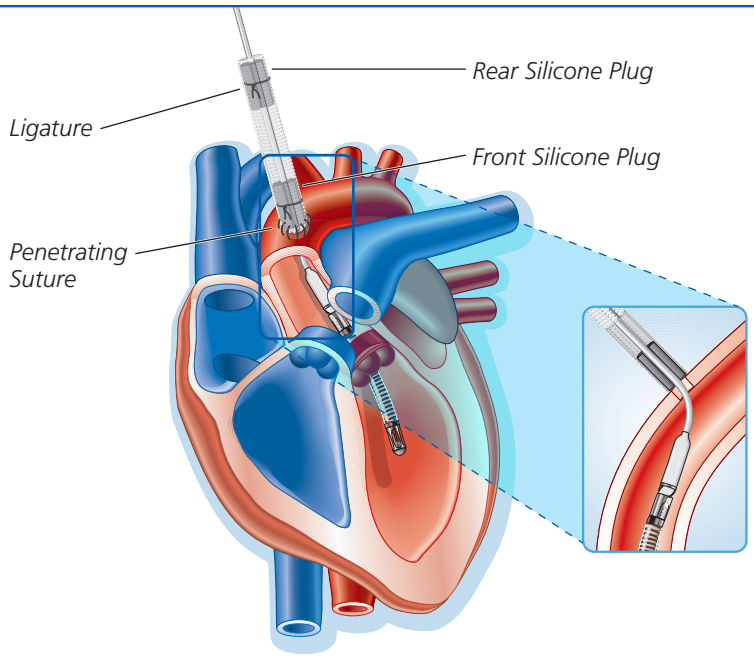


Figure 5.48 Confirming Placement on the Placement Signal Screen

7. Position the front silicone plug as close as possible above the aorta. Secure the silicone plug to the graft using a penetrating suture ligature as shown in Figure 5.49.



Transesophageal echocardiogram (TEE) illustration showing correct Impella® LD Catheter position

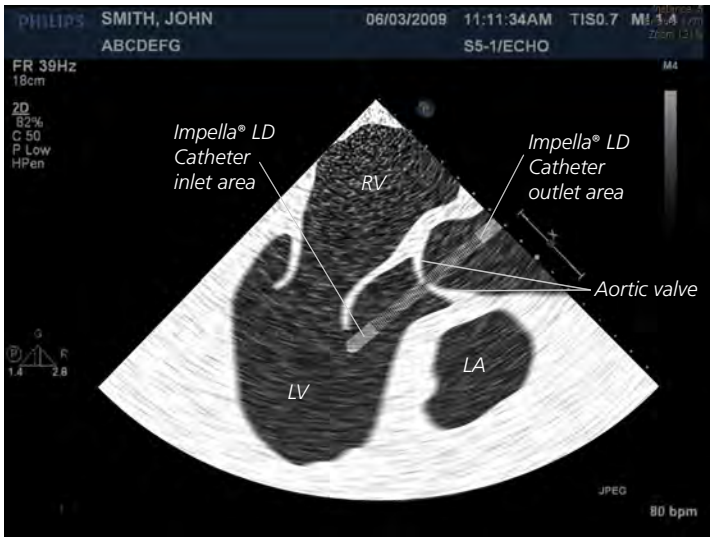


Figure 5.49 Impella® LD Catheter After Implantation

8. Clear the vascular graft of excess blood and resecure the rear silicone plug to the end of the graft.

9. After achieving correct and stable placement, decrease the P-level to the desired level for support.

10. Select the lowest P-level that will enable you to achieve the flow rate necessary for patient support. You can select one of ten P-levels (P-0 to P-9) for the Impella® LD Catheter (see Table 5.6).

Suture Depth

When securing the silicone plug to the graft, ensure that the penetrating suture does NOT go all the way through the silicone plug and damage the Impella® LD Catheter inside the plug.

Cardiopulmonary Bypass and Low Pulsatility

Low pulsatility may lead to catheter position unknown alarms in conjunction with CPB.

Maintaining ACT

After implantation of the catheter (and until explant), ACT should be maintained at 160 to 180 seconds.

Retrograde Flow

A setting of P-0 will result in retrograde flow when the Impella® LD Catheter is placed across the aortic valve. Retrograde flow may also occur at P-1.

Placement Monitoring Suspended

When the Impella® Catheter is operating in a low flow range, placement monitoring may be suspended and the flow rate in the lower left corner of the controller display screen will turn yellow to indicate that Impella® position is unknown.

Replacement Time

If the purge flow is more than 7 mL/hr or the dextrose concentration is less than 20%, replacement time will be less than 2 minutes. Replacement should always be performed as quickly as possible.

Table 5.6 P-Level Flow Rates for the Impella® LD Catheter

P-Level	*Flow Rate (L/min)	Revolutions Per Minute (rpm)
P-0	0.0 – 0.0	0
P-1	0.0 – 1.4	10,000
P-2	0.5 – 2.6	17,000
P-3	0.5 – 3.1	20,000
P-4	0.9 – 3.4	22,000
P-5	1.4 – 3.7	24,000
P-6	1.8 – 4.0	26,000
P-7	2.6 – 4.4	28,000
P-8	3.4 – 4.7	30,000
P-9	4.2 – 5.3	33,000

**Flow rate can vary due to suction or incorrect positioning.*

PURGE CASSETTE PROCEDURES

When replacing the purge cassette, the replacement process must be completed within 2 minutes. The Impella® Catheter may be damaged if replacement takes longer than 2 minutes.

There are five procedures for maintaining the Impella® Catheter purge system:

- Change purge system (changing cassette and purge fluid)
- Change purge fluid
- Change purge cassette
- De-air purge system
- Transfer to standard configuration

Each procedure can be accessed using the **PURGE SYSTEM** soft button. Transferring to the standard configuration was discussed above. The other four purge cassette procedures are discussed below.

CHANGE PURGE SYSTEM

Purge cassette change out may be required if extended use of the Impella® Catheter and purge cassette is required. Follow these steps to change both the purge cassette and purge fluid:

1. Press **PURGE SYSTEM** and select "Change Purge System" from the menu.
2. Open the purge cassette package. If the system is in the standard configuration, disconnect the Y connector from the purge cassette tubing as shown in Figure 5.50.

Figure 5.50 Disconnecting the Y Connector from the Purge Cassette Tubing

3. Spike the new fluid bag/bottle.
4. Select **OK** to deliver a bolus to the pressure reservoir so that the reservoir can maintain purge pressure during the change. A progress bar shows the progress of the bolus. After the bolus is delivered, the controller automatically proceeds to the next screen.
5. Disconnect the luer(s) from the Impella® Catheter and remove the used purge cassette.
6. Insert the new purge cassette into the controller. Be sure to slide the purge disc into place and extend the purge tubing through the gap in the purge cassette door when you close the door.
7. The system automatically primes the purge cassette. A progress bar shows the progress of the priming. Once the priming is complete, you are prompted to connect the purge tubing to the Impella® Catheter.
8. Connect the luer(s) on the end of the purge tubing to the luer(s) on the Impella® Catheter.
9. Purge system change is complete. Enter the purge fluid information and select **OK**.
   a. To select the default purge fluid values displayed on the screen, scroll to and select **OK**. This will select those values and automatically advance to the next screen.
   b. To change the purge fluid information, scroll to the appropriate item and push the selector knob to select it. Then scroll through the values and push the selector knob to make a new selection. (Refer to "Entering Purge Fluid Data" in the Case Start discussion at the beginning of this section for a listing of purge fluid, dextrose concentration, and heparin concentration options.) The controller will use the default values if no other selections are made.

Connecting the Purge Tubing to the Catheter

If you have NOT switched to the standard configuration, be sure to connect both the red and yellow luers on the Y connector to the Impella® Catheter.

If you have switched to the standard configuration, connect the yellow luer on the purge tubing directly to the yellow check valve on the Impella® Catheter.

Purge Solution Bottles

If the purge solution is supplied in bottles, open the vent on the purge fluid spike and follow the same procedure as if supplied in bags.

CHANGE PURGE FLUID

These are the steps you will follow to change only the purge fluid.

1. Press **PURGE SYSTEM** and select "Change Purge Fluid."
2. Select **OK** to deliver a bolus to the pressure reservoir so that the reservoir can maintain purge pressure during the change. A progress bar shows the progress of the bolus. After the bolus is delivered, the controller automatically proceeds to the next screen.
3. Clamp the supply line before removing the purge fluid bag.
4. Replace the purge fluid bag and unclamp the supply line.
5. Select **OK** to complete bag change and start purge system again.
6. Enter the purge fluid information and select **OK**.
   a. To select the default purge fluid values displayed on the screen, scroll to and select **OK**. This will select those values and automatically advance to the next screen.
   b. To change the purge fluid information, scroll to the appropriate item and push the selector knob to select it. Then scroll through the values and push the selector knob to make a new selection. (Refer to "Entering Purge Fluid Data" in the Case Start discussion at the beginning of this section for a listing of purge fluid, dextrose concentration, and heparin concentration options.) The controller will use the default values if no other selections are made.
7. The next screen asks whether you want to flush the fluid from the purge cassette.
   a. To proceed with the flush, scroll to and select **OK**.
   b. To skip the flush, press **EXIT** to complete the Change Purge Fluid procedure.
8. If you are proceeding to flush the purge fluid from the cassette, select **OK** to deliver a bolus to the system. A progress bar shows the progress of the bolus. After the bolus is delivered, the controller automatically proceeds to the next screen.
9. Disconnect the luer(s) from the Impella® Catheter and select **OK** to flush the purge cassette. A progress bar shows the progress of the flush. When complete, the controller proceeds to the next screen.
10. When the purge cassette flush is complete you can connect the luer(s) to the Impella® Catheter to complete the procedure or press **BACK** to repeat the flush.

Flushing Purge Cassette Fluid

It may be helpful to flush the fluid from the purge cassette when you are changing dextrose concentration.

CHANGE PURGE CASSETTE

Changing the Purge Cassette

The Change Purge Cassette procedure will only be available if the Automated Impella® Controller detects that the cassette is defective, purge pressure is low, or the purge system is open.

These are the steps you will follow to replace only the purge cassette.

1. Press **PURGE SYSTEM** and select "Change Purge Cassette."
2. Open the purge cassette package.
3. Disconnect the luer(s) from the Impella® Catheter and remove the used purge cassette.
4. Spike the fluid bag.
5. Insert a new purge cassette into the controller. Be sure to slide the purge disc into place and extend the purge tubing through the gap in the purge cassette door when you close the door.
6. The system automatically primes the purge cassette. A progress bar shows the progress of the priming. Once the priming is complete, you are prompted to connect the purge cassette to the Impella® Catheter.

7. Connect the luer(s) on the end of the purge tubing to the luer(s) on the Impella® Catheter.
8. When the purge cassette change is complete, press **OK** to exit.

DE-AIR PURGE SYSTEM

These are the steps you will follow to de-air the purge system.

1. Press **PURGE SYSTEM** and select "De-air Purge System."
2. Make sure that the purge fluid bag is NOT empty or inverted and that the tubing is NOT clamped.
3. Disconnect the purge tubing from the Impella® Catheter.
4. Press **OK** to initiate the de-air function. A progress bar shows the progress of the de-air procedure. Once complete, the system advances to the next screen.
5. Confirm that no air remains in the purge tubing. If air remains, press **BACK** to repeat the air removal process.
6. Connect the purge tubing to the luer(s) on the Impella® Catheter to complete the de-air procedure.

TROUBLESHOOTING THE PURGE SYSTEM

LOW PURGE PRESSURE

If at any time during the course of support with the Impella® Catheter, the Automated Impella® Controller alarms "Purge Pressure Low," follow the instructions below.

1. Inspect the purge system for leaks.
2. If there are no leaks, change to a purge fluid with a higher dextrose concentration. To do this, open the **PURGE SYSTEM** menu and select "Change Purge Fluid." Follow the instructions on the screen. (Refer to "Purge Cassette Procedures" earlier in this section of the manual.) When given the option to flush the fluid from the purge cassette, select **OK**.
3. If the pressure stabilizes, no other action is required.
   If the purge pressure is not stable, proceed to Step 4.
4. If the low purge pressure alarm remains unresolved for more than 20 minutes, there may be a problem with the purge cassette. Replace the purge cassette. (Refer to "Change Purge Cassette" instructions earlier in this section.)
5. If the low purge pressure alarm still remains unresolved for more than 20 minutes, this may be a sign of Impella® Catheter damage. Complete the following steps immediately:
   a. Open the **FLOW CONTROL** meter and reduce the P-level to P-2.

Purge Pressure

In the initial set-up configuration, the purge pressure is set to 600 mmHg, although it may not reach 600 mmHg in low resistance catheters in this configuration.

In the standard configuration, optimal purge pressure is different for every Impella® Catheter. Purge pressure can range from 300 mmHg to 1100 mmHg. While purge pressure varies during operation, the Automated Impella® Controller automatically maintains purge pressure within an acceptable range for each Impella® Catheter.

b. Slowly pull back on the Impella® Catheter until it is in the descending aorta (approximately 20 cm for an average size patient; 1 cm marks are available on the catheter).

c. Turn off the Impella® Catheter by opening the **FLOW CONTROL** meter and reducing the P-level to P-0.

d. Disconnect the catheter from the Automated Impella® Controller.

e. Remove the Impella® Catheter with the use of fluoroscopic imaging. If no fluoroscopy is available, leave the catheter in the descending aorta until fluoroscopy is available for visual assistance during removal of the Impella® Catheter.

PURGE SYSTEM OPEN

If at any time during the course of support with the Impella® Catheter, the Automated Impella® Controller alarms "Purge System Open," follow the instructions below.

Purge System Open Alarm

This alarm may occur if purge pressure is less than 100 mmHg.

1. Inspect the purge system for leaks.
2. If no leaks are visible, there may be a problem with the purge cassette. Replace the purge cassette. (Refer to instructions earlier in this section of the manual.)
3. If the Purge System Open alarm remains unresolved, this may be a sign of Impella® Catheter damage. Complete the following steps immediately:
   a. Open the **FLOW CONTROL** meter and reduce the P-level to P-2.
   b. Slowly pull back on the Impella® Catheter until it is in the descending aorta (approximately 20 cm for an average size patient; 1 cm marks are available on the catheter).
   c. Turn off the Impella® Catheter by opening the **FLOW CONTROL** meter and reducing the P-level to P-0.
   d. Disconnect the catheter from the Automated Impella® Controller.
   e. Remove the Impella® Catheter with the use of fluoroscopic imaging. If no fluoroscopy is available, leave the catheter in the descending aorta until fluoroscopy is available for visual assistance during removal of the Impella® Catheter.

De-air Procedure

You may run the de-air procedure (described earlier in this section) after changing the dextrose concentration to decrease the amount of time it takes for a change to occur.

HIGH PURGE PRESSURE

Unresolved Purge Pressure High Alarm

If not resolved by the recommendations provided, high purge pressure—which triggers the "Purge Pressure High" alarm message—could be an indication of a kink in the Impella® Catheter. In this case, the motor is no longer being purged and may eventually stop. Clinicians should monitor motor current and consider replacing the Impella® Catheter whenever a rise in motor current is seen.

If the purge pressure exceeds 1100 mmHg, the Automated Impella® Controller displays the "Purge Pressure High" alarm message.

1. Inspect the purge system and check the Impella® Catheter for kinks in the tubing.
2. If pressure remains high, decrease the concentration of dextrose in the purge solution.

PURGE SYSTEM BLOCKED

If a "Purge System Blocked" alarm occurs, the purge fluid flow stops.

1. Check the purge system tubing and the Impella® Catheter for kinks or blockages.
2. Decrease the concentration of dextrose in the purge solution.

3. Replace the purge cassette.

PATIENT WEANING

Weaning the patient from the Impella® Catheter is at the discretion of the physician. The Impella 2.5 and CP Systems have been approved for ≤ 4 days and the Impella 5.0 and LD Systems have been approved for ≤ 6 days of use. However, weaning could be delayed beyond the normal use for temporary support as an unintended consequence of continued instability of the patient's hemodynamics. Inability to wean the patient from the device within a reasonable time frame should result in consideration of a more durable form of left ventricular support.

The following weaning instructions are provided as guidance only.

1. To initiate weaning, press **FLOW CONTROL** and reduce P-level by 2 level increments over time intervals as cardiac function allows.
2. Keep Impella® Catheter P-level at P-2 or above until the catheter is ready to be explanted from the left ventricle.
3. When the patient's hemodynamics are stable, reduce the P-level to P-2 and pull the Impella® Catheter back across the aortic valve into the aorta.
4. If the patient's hemodynamics remain stable, follow instructions in the next section for removing the Impella® Catheter.

REMOVING THE IMPELLA® 2.5, 5.0, OR IMPELLA CP® CATHETER

Remove the Impella® Catheter With Care

Removal of the Impella® Catheter must be completed with care to avoid damage to the catheter assembly.

The Impella® Catheter can be removed after weaning when the introducer is still in place or when the catheter is secured with the repositioning sheath.

REMOVING THE IMPELLA® WITH THE INTRODUCER IN PLACE

1. Reduce the P-level to P-0.
2. Remove the Impella® Catheter through the introducer.
3. Wait until ACT drops below 150 seconds.

4. When ACT is below 150 seconds, remove the introducer.
5. Disconnect the connector cable from the Automated Impella® Controller and turn the controller off by pressing the power switch on the side of the controller for 3 seconds.
6. Apply manual compression for 40 minutes or per hospital protocol.

REMOVING THE IMPELLA® SECURED WITH THE REPOSITIONING SHEATH

1. When ACT is below 150 seconds, press FLOW CONTROL and reduce the P-level to P-0.
2. Remove the Impella® Catheter and repositioning sheath together (the catheter will not come through the repositioning sheath).
3. Disconnect the connector cable from the Automated Impella® Controller and turn the controller off by pressing the power switch on the side of the controller for 3 seconds.
4. Apply manual compression for 40 minutes or per hospital protocol.

REMOVING THE IMPELLA CP® WHILE MAINTAINING GUIDEWIRE ACCESS (FOR PUMPS THAT HAVE THE REPOSITIONING SHEATH WITH GUIDEWIRE ACCESS)

1. Remove the stylet from the guidewire access port.

Figure 5.51 Removing the Stylet

2. Aspirate using a syringe to ensure that the line is patent; confirm pulsatile blood flow from entrance port.
3. Advance the 0.035"(or smaller) guidewire with an atraumatic tip through the guidewire access port using the supplied cheater.

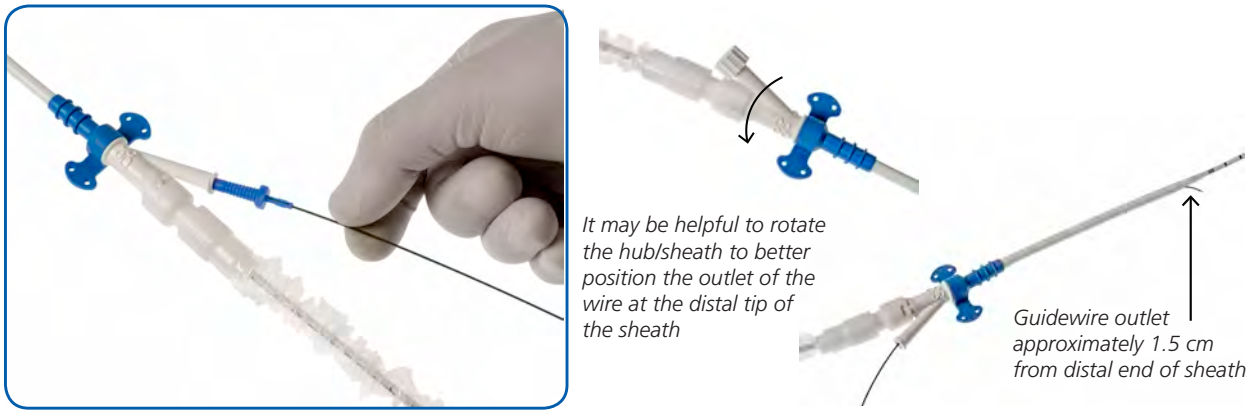


Figure 5.52 Inserting the Guidewire with the Cheater

4. Advance the guidewire tip into the descending aorta under fluoroscopic guidance.
5. Loosen the anticontamination sleeve by rotating the Tuohy-Borst valve counterclockwise.

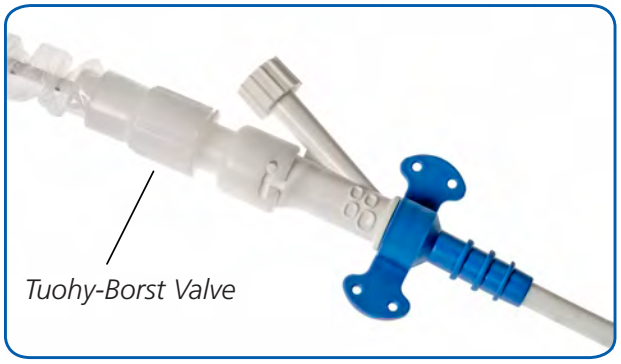


Figure 5.53 Loosening the Tuohy-Borst Valve

6. Anchor the guidewire and repositioning unit and withdraw the catheter until the distal end of the catheter reaches the distal tip of the repositioning unit.
7. With the guidewire anchored and pressure applied to the access site, completely remove the Impella® Catheter and repositioning sheath together.

EXPLANTING THE IMPELLA® LD CATHETER

PREPARATION FOR EXPLANT

1. Gain exposure and clear access to the ascending aorta insertion site, the Dacron® vascular graft, and the sites at which the silicone plugs are secured to the graft.
2. Complete the weaning procedure at P-2 as described previously.
3. Undo the penetrating suture from the *front* silicone plug and remove the suture entirely.
4. Remove the ligature from the *rear* silicone plug and remove the plug from the end of the vascular graft.
5. Maintaining distal control digitally, remove the final circumferential ligature from the *front* silicone plug.

6. Allow controlled bleed-back through the graft to clear any residual thrombus from the lumen of the graft.

Retrograde Flow

*To avoid retrograde flow, do **NOT** reduce the P-level below P-2 while the Impella® LD Catheter is in the left ventricle.*

Catheter Removal

The Impella® LD Catheter should only be removed when the P-level is set to P-0.

PULLING THE IMPELLA® LD CATHETER INTO THE ASCENDING AORTA

Perform the following steps under the guidance of transesophageal echocardiography (TEE).

1. Immediately prior to pulling the Impella® LD Catheter across the aortic valve, reduce the P-level to P-1.
2. Carefully pull the Impella® LD Catheter back through the aortic valve and into the ascending aorta. Depending on the level of the insertion site, a portion of the catheter may be pulled through the aortotomy and into the vascular graft.
3. Immediately reduce the P-level to P-0 after the Impella® LD Catheter crosses the aortic valve and enters the ascending aorta.
4. Gently pull the Impella® LD Catheter completely through the aortotomy and into the vascular graft.
5. Close the graft.

VASCULAR GRAFT CLOSURE

When closing the vascular graft, consider individual patient characteristics and select the strategy most consistent with an optimal clinical result. The entire vascular graft can be removed if indicated, but it is not mandatory to do so. Graft closure options include:

- Amputating the vascular graft and sewing the small end-to-side remnant closed by hand
- Using a vascular stapler to close the graft near the surface of the aorta
- Removing the complete graft with local patch closure, if necessary

6 CLINICAL EXPERIENCE

Clinical Experience (continued)

CLINICAL EXPERIENCE OVERVIEW FOR HRPCI

The indication for use in high risk PCI for the Impella 2.5 and the Impella CP Systems were supported by US human clinical data, which includes an initial safety study (PROTECT I), a multi-center, prospective, randomized controlled clinical trial (PROTECT II) and data from a retrospective registry, USpella, along with literature reviews. Table 6.1 provides a summary of the evidence reviewed by the FDA for the high risk PCI indication, which was the basis for the FDA's approval decision. Additional details for each study are provided below.

Table 6.1 Summary of Primary Clinical Studies Reviewed by the FDA (Prior to Approval)

Clinical Study	Study Design	Objective	Number of Sites	Number of Subjects
PROTECT I	Prospective, multi-center, single arm study	To examine the safety and feasibility of Impella® 2.5 in patients undergoing high risk angioplasty procedures	7	20 patients enrolled and available for 30 day follow up
PROTECT II	Prospective, multi-center, randomized controlled trial	To assess the safety and efficacy of the Impella® 2.5 compared to intra-aortic balloon pump when used in subjects undergoing non-emergent high risk PCI	112	452 patients enrolled; 448 patients in Intent-to-Treat population; 427 patients in Per-Protocol population
USpella Registry	Retrospective, multi-center voluntary registry	To examine the safety and effectiveness of the Impella® 2.5 and the Implella CP when used in routine clinical practice for high risk PCI	46	637 patients in high risk PCI cohort for Impella 2.5
			18	72 patients in high risk PCI cohort for Impella CP

PROTECT I CLINICAL STUDY

PROTECT I was a prospective, single arm, multi-center feasibility study designed under FDA guidance to examine the safety and feasibility of Impella® 2.5 in patients undergoing high risk angioplasty procedures. Patients presenting with a left ventricular ejection fraction (LVEF) ≤35% and scheduled to undergo PCI on an unprotected left main lesion or last patent conduit were considered for enrollment. Safety endpoints included 30 day rate of major cardiac and cerebral events (MACCE) and other vascular, thromboembolic, and hemorrhagic safety endpoints. Efficacy endpoints included hemodynamic benefit and freedom from intra-procedural ischemia driven ventricular fibrillation or tachycardia requiring cardioversion. The study showed an excellent safety profile of the device when used as temporary ventricular support in high risk PCI. The FDA reviewed this data in consideration for approval of the PROTECT II trial based on PROTECT I meeting its primary and secondary endpoints.

PROTECT II PIVOTAL CLINICAL STUDY DESIGN

The main clinical study (PROTECT II) was a prospective, multi-center, randomized, controlled clinical study. The objective of the PROTECT II study was to assess the safety and efficacy of the Impella® 2.5 compared to the intra-aortic balloon pump (IABP) when used in subjects undergoing non-emergent high risk PCI. The hypothesis of the study was to demonstrate that prophylactic use of Impella® 2.5 was superior to IABP in preventing intra- and post-procedural major adverse events (MAE) in this patient population.

The pre-specified primary endpoint was a composite clinical endpoint of major adverse events (10 component major adverse event [MAE] rate) through 30 days or hospital discharge, whichever was longer, following the PCI procedure. The outcomes were to be compared to the control group treated with an intra-aortic balloon pump (IABP). To assess the durability of potential benefit (ie, the primary endpoint), the same 10 component MAE rate was also evaluated at 90 days.

The secondary safety endpoints were the same 10 individual components of the composite primary clinical endpoint. Specifically, these were:

- Death
- Stroke/TIA
- Myocardial infarction
- Repeat revascularization
- Need for cardiac operation or thoracic or abdominal vascular operation or vascular operation for limb ischemia
- Acute renal dysfunction
- Cardiopulmonary resuscitation or ventricular arrhythmia requiring cardioversion
- Increase in aortic insufficiency by more than one grade
- Severe hypotension, defined as: systolic blood pressure or augmented diastolic pressure (whichever is greater) <90 mmHg for ≥5 min requiring inotropic/pressor medications or IV fluid
- Failure to achieve angiographic success defined as residual stenosis <30% after stent implantation.

Follow-up assessments were performed at 30 days or at discharge (whichever was longer), and at 90 days following the PCI procedure.

There were four secondary effectiveness endpoints:

- Maximum cardiac power output (CPO) decrease from baseline. CPO was defined as the product of simultaneously measured cardiac output (CO) and mean arterial pressure (MAP). The hypothesis was that the Impella® 2.5 is superior to IABP in preserving hemodynamic status, defined by a lesser degree of CPO decrease during the high risk PCI procedure.
- Creatinine clearance within 24 hours post procedure.
- Failure of the Impella® 2.5 device to maintain a pump output of >1.0 L/min for more than five minutes while at a P-level P-5 or higher in the Impella® patients during the procedure.

- Failure of the IABP to augment diastolic pressure above the peak systolic pressure for more than five minutes in the IABP patients.

EXTERNAL EVALUATION GROUPS

The study was sponsored by Abiomed. The sponsor contracted with Harvard Clinical Research Institute (HCRI), an academic research organization to provide study management activities including randomization via Interactive Voice Recognition System (IVRS), site management, site monitoring, data management, statistical analysis, and oversight of safety processes including the Data Safety Management Board (DSMB) and the Clinical Events Committee (CEC).

The study included two independent Core Labs: Beth Israel Deaconess Medical Center Angiographic Core Laboratory, Boston, MA for angiographic analyses and Duke Clinical Research Institute, Durham, NC for echocardiographic analyses. The study protocol was approved by the sponsor, HCRI and the FDA. The protocol pre-specified an interim analysis with stopping rules and a Statistical Analysis Plan (SAP).

PRE-SPECIFIED STATISTICAL ANALYSIS PLAN

The pre-specified study hypothesis was that the Impella® 2.5 would be superior to IABP in reducing the composite rate of intra- and post-procedural major adverse events (MAEs) at 30 days or hospital discharge, whichever is longer post index procedure.

The IABP was the *only* 510k cleared FDA device for cardiac support for high risk PCI indication. Therefore, the IABP was chosen as the control device for PROTECT II.

The protocol stipulated that the detailed classification and description of the subgroup variables would be defined in the SAP. The following 4 subgroups were pre-specified in the SAP:

- Assessment of any potential learning curve effect: Evaluate the primary endpoint with and without the first Impella® case at each site in order to assess the impact of the learning curve for the protocol and for use of the device.
- Assessment of the primary endpoint for procedural characteristics or adjunctive therapies not equivalent between the two arms (ie, rotational atherectomy).
- Assessment of the primary endpoint stratified by angioplasty indication (last remaining vessel/left main vs. triple vessel disease).
- Assessment of the primary endpoint stratified by the severity of the patient using the STS mortality risk score.

CLINICAL INCLUSION AND EXCLUSION CRITERIA

Patients enrolled in PROTECT II were considered at high risk for hemodynamic instability during non-emergent percutaneous coronary intervention due to a combination of depressed left ejection fraction and complex coronary lesions and deemed to require prophylactic hemodynamic support by the treating physician. Patients were required to meet all inclusion criteria and none of the exclusion criteria in order to be enrolled in PROTECT II.

Inclusion Criteria

1. Signed Informed Consent
2. Subject is indicated for a non-emergent percutaneous treatment of at least one *de novo* or restenotic lesion in a native coronary vessel or bypass graft
3. Age eligible (18 ≤ Age ≤ 90)
4. Subject presents with:
   a. Ejection Fraction ≤ 35% AND at least one of the following criteria:
      - Intervention on the last patent coronary conduit, or
      - Intervention on an unprotected left main coronary artery

   Or

   b. Ejection Fraction ≤ 30% and intervention in patient presenting with triple vessel disease

Three-vessel or triple vessel disease was defined as at least one significant stenosis (ie, ≥ 50% stenosis by diameter) in all three major epicardial territories: left anterior descending artery (LAD) and/or side branch, left circumflex artery (LCX) and/or side branch, and right coronary artery (RCA) and/or side branch. In the case of left coronary artery dominance, a lesion in the LAD and the proximal LCX qualified as three-vessel disease.

Exclusion Criteria

1. ST Myocardial Infarction within 24 hours or CK-MB that have not normalized
2. Pre-procedure cardiac arrest within 24 hours of enrollment requiring CPR
3. Subject is in cardiogenic shock defined as:
   - CI < 2.2 L/min/m^2 and PCWP > 15 mmHg
   - Hypotension (systolic BP < 90 mmHg for >30 minutes or the need for supportive measures to maintain a systolic BP of greater than or equal to 90 mmHg) AND end organ hypoperfusion (cool extremities OR [a urine output of < 30 mL/hour AND a HR > 60 BPM])
4. Mural thrombus in the left ventricle
5. The presence of a mechanical aortic valve or heart constrictive device
6. Documented presence of aortic stenosis (aortic stenosis graded as ≥ +2 equivalent to an orifice area of 1.5 cm^2 or less)
7. Documented presence of moderate to severe aortic insufficiency (echocardiographic assessment of aortic insufficiency graded as ≥ +2)
8. Severe peripheral arterial obstructive disease that would preclude the placement of the Impella® System or IABP device placement
9. Abnormalities of the aorta that would preclude surgery, including aneurysms and extreme tortuosity or calcifications
10. Subject with renal failure (creatinine ≥ 4 mg/dL)
11. Subject has history of debilitating liver dysfunction with elevation of liver enzymes and bilirubin levels to ≥ 3x ULN or Internationalized Normalized Ratio (INR) ≥ 2

12. Subject has uncorrectable abnormal coagulation parameters (defined as platelet count ≤ 75,000/mm^3 or INR ≥ 2.0 or fibrinogen ≤ 1.50 g/L)

13. History of recent (within 1 month) stroke or TIA

14. Allergy or intolerance to heparin, aspirin, ADP receptor inhibitors (clopidogrel and ticlopidine) or contrast media

15. Subject with documented heparin induced thrombocytopenia

16. Participation in the active follow-up phase of another clinical study of an investigational drug or device

The study design is illustrated in Figure 6.1.

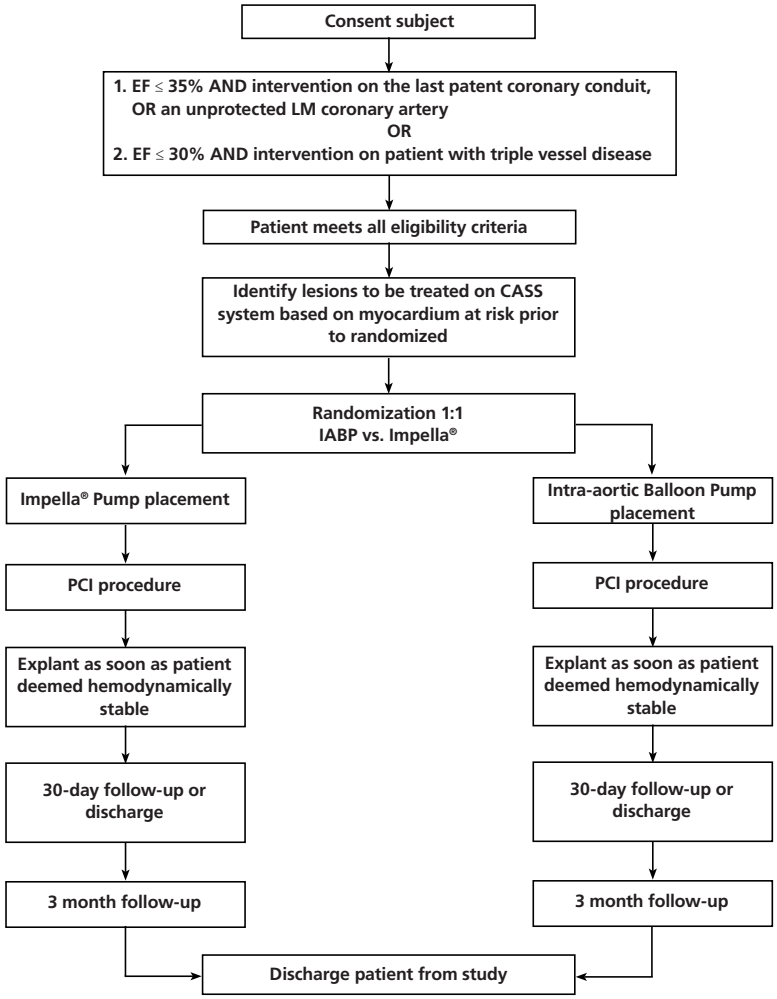


Figure 6.1 PROTECT II Study Schematic

ACCOUNTABILITY OF PROTECT II COHORT

A total of 452 subjects were enrolled into the trial: 226 subjects enrolled in the Impella® arm and 226 subjects enrolled in the IABP arm. This number represents 69% of the original planned enrollment (654 subjects). The PROTECT II trial was stopped prematurely by the company due to the Data Safety and Monitoring Board (DSMB) recommendation for futility after completing its pre-specified interim analysis at 50% enrollment for each group. More details are below.

INTENT-TO-TREAT POPULATION

Out of the 452 patients enrolled into the study, three subjects (all in IABP arm) withdrew consent before PCI and device insertion. One patient expired in the Impella® arm prior to undergoing PCI treatment and device insertion. Thus, the primary analysis includes 448 Intent-to-Treat (ITT) patients randomized to either Impella® 2.5 (n=225) or IABP (n=223), regardless of whether or not they received the device and the duration of follow-up.

PER-PROTOCOL ANALYSIS POPULATION

Prior to accessing the data, the monitoring of the patient eligibility criteria by HCRI identified a total of twenty-one (21) subjects who did not meet the study inclusion or exclusion criteria. These cases were to be excluded from the ITT. The remainder formed the Per-Protocol (PP) population. Nine of the subjects excluded from the ITT population were in the Impella® arm and twelve subjects excluded from the ITT population were in the IABP arm. The PP analysis population consists then of 427 subjects, of which 216 subjects were randomized to the Impella® arm and 211 subjects were randomized to the IABP arm.

The study flow is represented in Figure 6.2 below, showing the ITT and PP populations and the sample sizes of each population at 30 day and 90 day follow-up.

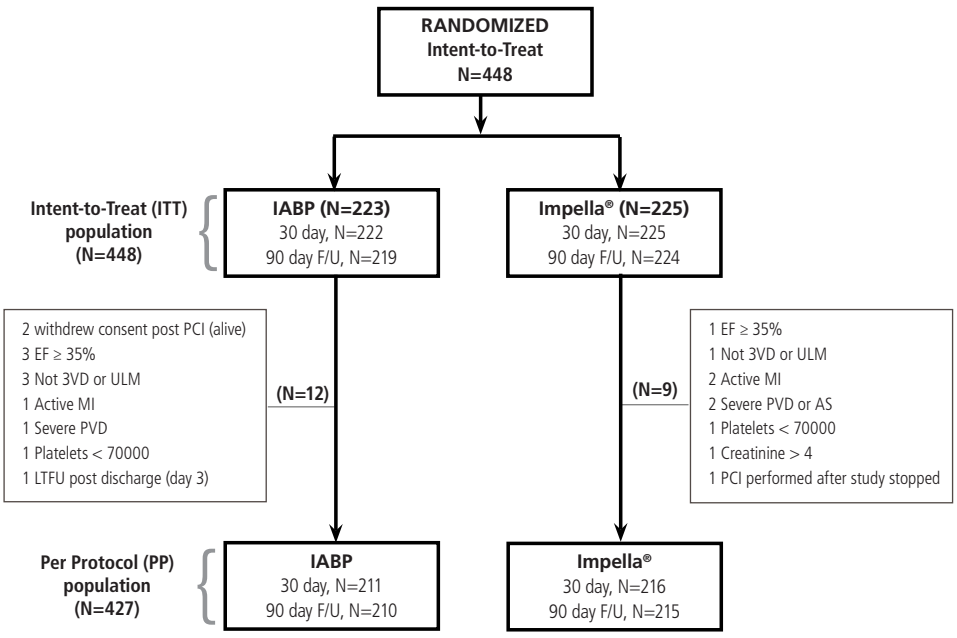


Figure 6.2 Study Flow Schematic

LIMITATIONS OF INTERPRETATION OF STUDY RESULTS

Fifty percent (50%) enrollment was achieved on February 26, 2010 with the enrollment of the 327th subject. This subject completed the study (3 month visit) on May 27, 2010. Approximately 7 months later, HCRI completed the study activities necessary to lock the database for the interim analysis and prepare an interim analysis report for the DSMB. In these 7 months of intervening time, 125 additional subjects were enrolled into the study (n=452). The results from the additional patients were excluded from the interim analysis.

The DSMB met on November 22, 2010 and recommended that the trial be halted due to a futility determination based on the pre-specified primary endpoint (composite MAE at 30 days), which was calculated on the first 327 patients enrolled in the study. The DSMB also expressed concern regarding safety trends identified in 3 of the pre-specified patient cohorts:

1. Patients receiving rotational atherectomy;
2. Patients undergoing PCI on an unprotected left main/last patent conduit; and
3. Patients judged to be in the highest risk based on STS score

The study was formally ended on December 6, 2010, at which time the data were then unlocked.

STUDY POPULATION DEMOGRAPHICS AND BASELINE CHARACTERISTICS

Patient baseline characteristics for all enrolled patients (ITT N=448, 69% of planned cohort) are summarized in Table 6.2. Overall, patients had depressed ventricular function, multi-vessel disease (76% of patients), unprotected left main disease (24% of patients), and at least one of the following additional risk factors: advanced age, female, diabetes, peripheral vascular disease, history of angina, heart failure, or complex lesion anatomy (type B or C lesions).

Two thirds of the patients were deemed inoperable. Subjects presented with an average LVEF of 24%±6%, a SYNTAX score of 30±13, an STS mortality score of 6%±6% and an STS combined mortality and morbidity score of 30%±15%. Only one third of this population had received implantable defibrillators despite the low LVEF.

Of note, Impella® patients presented more frequently with chronic heart failure (91.1% vs. 83.4%,) and had more often prior CABG (38.2% vs. 28.7%,) compared to IABP patients, respectively.

Table 6.2 Patient Baseline Characteristics (ITT Population)

Patient Characteristics	All Patients (N=448)	Impella® Patients (N=225)	IABP Patients (N=223)
Age			
Mean±SD (N)	67.3±10.8 (448)	67.7±10.8 (225)	67.0±10.7 (223)
Range (Min, Max)	(37,90)	(40,90)	(37,90)
Gender - Male	80.4% (360/448)	79.6% (179/225)	81.2% (181/223)
Ethnicity and Race			
Hispanic/Latino	7.6% (34/448)	8.4% (19/225)	6.7% (15/223)
American Indian	0.4% (2/448)	0.9% (2/225)	0.0% (0/223)
Asian	2.7% (12/448)	1.3% (3/225)	4.0% (9/223)
African American	13.4% (60/448)	10.7% (24/225)	16.1% (36/223)
Hawaiian; Pacific Islander	0.7% (3/448)	0.4% (1/225)	0.9% (2/223)
Caucasian	78.8% (353/448)	83.1% (187/225)	74.4% (166/223)
Other	4.0% (18/448)	3.6% (8/225)	4.5% (10/223)
Weight (lbs)			
Mean±SD (N)	183.8±44.1 (448)	183.2±41.3 (225)	184.3±46.7 (223)
Range (Min, Max)	(99.0,417.0)	(100.0,320.0)	(99.0,417.0)
Height (in)			
Mean±SD (N)	67.7±3.7 (448)	67.8±3.7 (225)	67.6±3.7 (223)
Range (Min, Max)	(58.0,78.0)	(59.0,76.2)	(58.0,78.0)
Cardiac History			
CAD in a first degree relative	58.7% (237/404)	59.5% (119/200)	57.8% (118/204)
Prior Myocardial Infarction	67.6% (302/447)	69.2% (155/224)	65.9% (147/223)
History of Angina	66.3% (295/445)	69.5% (155/223)	63.1% (140/222)
CHF	87.3% (391/448)	91.1% (205/225)	83.4% (186/223)
NYHA Class III or IV	66.1% (222/336)	67.4% (120/178)	64.6% (102/158)
Pacemaker/AICD	32.9% (147/447)	34.7% (78/225)	31.1% (69/222)
Cardiomyopathy	69.2% (310/448)	69.3% (156/225)	69.1% (154/223)
Arrhythmia	48.9% (218/446)	50.9% (114/224)	46.8% (104/222)
Prior Cardiac Procedures			
Thrombolytic Therapy	5.7% (25/442)	4.9% (11/223)	6.4% (14/219)
PCI	39.2% (175/446)	41.5% (93/224)	36.9% (82/222)
CABG	33.5% (150/448)	38.2% (86/225)	28.7% (64/223)
Valve Surgery	3.3% (15/448)	3.1% (7/225)	3.6% (8/223)
Other Cardiac Surgery	7.2% (32/446)	6.3% (14/224)	8.1% (18/222)
Other Cardiac Intervention	14.8% (66/446)	14.3% (32/224)	15.3% (34/222)
CABG Evaluation:			
Subject was evaluated for CABG as treatment	64.1% (287/448)	63.6% (143/225)	64.6% (144/223)

Table 6.2 Patient Baseline Characteristics (ITT Population) (continued)

Patient Characteristics	All Patients (N=448)	Impella® Patients (N=225)	IABP Patients (N=223)
The reason for not performing CABG:			
Subject refused surgery	19.2% (55/287)	22.4% (32/143)	16.0% (23/144)
Subject not a candidate for CABG based on medical condition	80.8% (232/287)	77.6% (111/143)	84.0% (121/144)
Other Medical History:			
Peripheral Vascular Disease	26.1% (116/445)	25.7% (57/222)	26.5% (59/223)
Prior Stroke	14.7% (66/448)	12.9% (29/225)	16.6% (37/223)
Diabetes Mellitus	51.3% (230/448)	52.0% (117/225)	50.7% (113/223)
Hypertension	86.4% (387/448)	87.6% (197/225)	85.2% (190/223)
COPD	27.6% (123/445)	25.9% (58/224)	29.4% (65/221)
Renal Insufficiency	26.6% (119/447)	23.1% (52/225)	30.2% (67/222)
History of Tobacco Use	69.6% (307/441)	71.5% (158/221)	67.7% (149/220)
LVEF			
Mean±SD (N) Range (Min, Max)	23.79±6.32 (445) (10.00,35.00)	23.45±6.31 (224) (10.00,35.00)	24.14±6.33 (221) (10.00,35.00)
Mean±SD (N) Range (Min, Max) median (IQ Range)	30.32±13.13 (144) (5.00,68.50) 30.50 (19.75-38.25)	29.31±13.50 (157) (3.00,85.50) 28.00 (19.00-36.50)	29.79±13.31 (301) (3.00,85.50) 29.00 (19.50-37.50)
STS Mortality Score			
Mean±SD (N)	5.93±6.48 (448)	5.86±5.98 (225)	6.01±6.97 (223)
Range (Min, Max)	(0.40,60.00)	(0.40,41.20)	(0.40,60.00)
STS Mortality and Morbidity Score			
Mean±SD (N)	29.52±15.34 (448)	28.80±14.97 (225)	30.24±15.71 (223)
Range (Min, Max)	(1.60,74.70)	(1.60,74.50)	(6.90,74.70)
Logistic EuroScore			
Mean±SD (N)	18.39±17.44 (448)	18.76±17.41 (225)	18.03±17.49 (223)
Range (Min, Max)	(0.82,94.53)	(0.82,94.53)	(1.33,91.15)

PROCEDURAL CHARACTERISTICS

In both study arms, more lesions were attempted than originally anticipated, as 27% of all patients had a lesion treated that was not identified as a target lesion in the pre-PCI revascularization treatment plan. The number of attempted lesions and deployed stents were similar between the two groups (Table 6.3).

Differences were observed between the two study arms with respect to the use of adjunctive therapies. In the Impella® 2.5 arm, glycoprotein IIb/IIIa receptor antagonists were used less frequently, in 13.8% of Impella® patients vs. 26% of IABP patients. Rotational atherectomy was used more frequently in Impella® patients (14%) vs. IABP patients (9%). The use of rotational atherectomy was also more vigorous in the Impella® arm with more runs per patient (p=0.003), more passes per lesion (p=0.001), longer treatment durations (p=0.004) and more frequently performed in unprotected left main lesions. More stents were deployed in the Impella® arm compared to the IABP in patients that had atherectomy. Finally, the volume of contrast used was significantly greater in the Impella® 2.5 arm. Patients randomized to IABP had longer duration of support compared with those on Impella® 2.5 (8.4 hours vs. 1.9 hours). Instructions in the protocol called for device support to be discontinued after the PCI procedure if the patient was determined to be hemodynamically stable. In total, 36.7% of patients in the IABP arm required additional support post-PCI and were discharged from the catheterization laboratory (cath lab) on IABP support compared to 5.9% of patients in the Impella® arm, who were discharged from the cath lab on Impella® support.

Table 6.3 Procedural Characteristics

	All Patients (N=448)	Impella® Patients (N=225)	IABP Patients (N=223)
Lesion and Rotational Atherectomy Characteristic			
Number of lesions treated			
Mean±SD (N)	2.88±1.48 (448)	2.86±1.43 (225)	2.90±1.53 (223)
Range (Min, Max)	(1.00,8.00)	(1.00,8.00)	(1.00,8.00)
% Patients with at least one lesion treated that was not a target lesion for the procedure			
Percent	26.7% (119/446)	27.7% (62/224)	25.7% (57/222)
Number of stents placed			
Mean±SD (N)	3.01±1.83 (444)	3.07±1.77 (222)	2.94±1.90 (222)
Range (Min, Max)	(0.00,12.00)	(0.00,10.00)	(0.00,12.00)
Total of longest duration of coronary balloon inflation (second)			
Mean±SD (N)	58.23±93.67 (399)	63.86±125.69 (200)	52.58±41.17 (199)
Range (Min, Max)	(0.00,1500.00)	(0.00,1500.00)	(0.00,252.00)
% Patients with chronic total occlusion (CTO) lesions treated			
Percent	9.6% (43/448)	9.3% (21/225)	9.9% (22/223)
Use of atherectomy rotablation during index procedure			
Percent	11.6% (52/448)	14.2% (32/225)	9.0% (20/223)
Total number of passes when atherectomy was used			
Median (IQ Range)	4.00 (2.00 - 8.00)	5.00 (3.50 - 9.50)	2.00 (2.00 - 4.00)
Average number of passes per lesion when atherectomy was used			
Median (IQ Range)	2 (1 - 4)	3 (2 - 5)	1 (1 - 2)

Table 6.3 Procedural Characteristics (continued)

	All Patients (N=448)	Impella® Patients (N=225)	IABP Patients (N=223)
Average duration/run time per lesion when atherectomy was used (second)			
Median (IQ Range)	47.50 (32.50 - 85.00)	60.00 (40.00 - 118.00)	40.00 (20.00 - 47.00)
Average number of stents placed when atherectomy was used			
Mean±SD (N)		3.44±1.61 (32) (1.00 – 8.0)	2.50±1.40 (20) (0.0 – 6.0)
Procedural Characteristics			
Volume for contrast administered during the index procedure (cc)			
Mean±SD (N)	253.86±129.26 (443)	266.73±141.80 (222)	240.94±114.17 (221)
Range (Min, Max)	(40.00,970.00)	(40.00,970.00)	(50.00,700.00)
Duration of device support (hour)			
Mean±SD (N)	5.12±15.81 (439)	1.87±2.69 (221)	8.41±21.81 (218)
Range (Min, Max)	(0.20,199.32)	(0.28,26.38)	(0.20,199.32)
Device support continued more than 3 hours post index procedure			
Percent	16.6% (73/440)	4.5% (10/221)	28.8% (63/219)
Patients discharged from cath lab on device support			
Percent	21.2% (93/438)	5.9% (13/220)	36.7% (80/218)
IV fluid volume subject received during procedure (cc)			
Mean±SD (N)	486.10±518.26 (338)	555.65±623.07 (168)	417.38±377.38 (170)
Range (Min, Max)	(0,5000)	(0,5000)	(0,2250)
Heparin administered during procedure			
Percent	88.4% (395/447)	93.3% (210/225)	83.3% (185/222)
IIb/IIIa inhibitors used at baseline			
Percent	19.9% (89/448)	13.8% (31/225)	26.0% (58/223)
Periprocedural transfusion required			
Percent	2.7% (12/447)	3.6% (8/224)	1.8% (4/223)
Number of units transfused during the procedure or at pump removal combined			
Mean±SD (N)	2.42±1.44 (12)	2.25±1.49 (8)	2.75±1.50 (4)
Range (Min, Max)	(1.00,5.00)	(1.00,5.00)	(2.00,5.00)
Impella® Pump flow during procedure (L/min)			
Mean±SD (N)	1.90±0.27 (217)	1.90±0.27 (217)	N/A
Range (Min, Max)	(1.10,2.50)	(1.10,2.50)	

SAFETY AND EFFECTIVENESS RESULTS

As discussed above, the pre-specified primary endpoint for the PROTECT II study was a 30-day composite MAE rate (10 components), where the study hypothesis was to demonstrate that prophylactic use of Impella® 2.5 was superior to IABP in preventing intra- and post-procedural MAEs in this patient population. A pre-specified interim look by the Data Safety Monitoring Board (DSMB) at 50% enrollment (327 patients) concluded in a recommendation for early discontinuation of the study for futility as the "Board found no statistically significant differences in major adverse events" between the Impella® and IABP arms, with some identified safety concerns as well.

Abiomed formally terminated the study on December 6, 2010, at which point they unlocked all of the data (n=452) and performed additional analyses on the total cohort of patients enrolled into the PROTECT II study and available for analysis (n=448; 225 Impella® subjects and 223 IABP subjects). These analyses concluded the following:

1. There was an imbalance between the two groups in the use of rotational atherectomy—more frequent and more vigorous in the Impella® arm as compared to IABP.
2. The analysis of the data available for the 448 patient cohort (69% of planned enrollment) did not appear consistent with the futility statements made by the DSMB which were based on a review of 327 patients (50% enrollment).
3. Some of the negative trends in outcomes for the Impella® arm observed at interim appear to be attenuated when the totality of the data was reviewed.
4. Contrary to the interim assumption, the analysis that includes the full patient cohort suggests that Impella® 2.5 outcomes improved over the course of the trial (ie, from 30-day follow-up to 90-day follow-up), while the outcomes for the IABP arm appear to remain about the same between the two follow-up periods.

These findings, in addition to the possibility that a learning curve was present and may have skewed the results of early interventions, led FDA to consider the possibility that the treatment effect may simply not have been realized in this terminated study. As such, the FDA review of PMA P140003 included the totality of all data available (descriptive only) for the Impella® 2.5 System (when used in HRPCI patients) in its evaluation of the safety and effectiveness of the Impella® 2.5 System when used as intended. The primary data set utilized for this evaluation came from the 452 patients enrolled into the PROTECT II study (30-day and 90-day data), as well as supporting/supplemental evidence from the literature and data from the USpella Registry.

The 10 component composite MAE rate (summarized in Table 6.4a and 6.4b) showed a numerical difference at 30 days in both the ITT and PP populations at 69% of the planned enrollment in favor of Impella®. The numerical difference in MAE rates between the two groups, increases at 90 days for the PP population (the longest study follow-up).

INTENT-TO-TREAT POPULATION

At 69% of the planned enrollment, the 30 day MAE rate was 35.1% in the Impella® arm compared to 40.1% in the IABP arm (Table 6.4a and Figure 6.3a). The 90 day MAE rate showed trends in favor of Impella® (40.6% vs. 49.3%, Table 6.4a, see Figure 6.3a).

PER-PROTOCOL ANALYSIS POPULATION

At 69% enrollment, 30 day MAE rate was 34.3% in the Impella® arm compared to 42.2% in the IABP arm. Compared with IABP, the 90 day MAE rate was lower in the Impella® arm (40.0% vs. 51.0%) yielding a relative risk reduction of 22% (Table 6.4b and Figure 6.4). The Kaplan-Meier analysis (Figure 6.4) and the log-rank test through 90 days supports this result.

Table 6.4a Composite MAE at 30 Days and 90 Days (Intent-to-Treat Population)

Composite MAE (ITT Population)	Impella® Patients	IABP Patients	Difference	Relative Reduction or Increase
30 days or Discharge	35.1% (79/225)	40.1% (89/222)	- 5.0%	- 12.5%
90 day follow-up	40.6% (91/224)	49.3% (108/219)	- 8.7%	- 17.6%

Table 6.4b Composite MAE at 30 Days and 90 Days (Per-Protocol Population)

Composite MAE (PP Population)	Impella® Patients	IABP Patients	Difference	Relative Reduction or Increase
30 days or Discharge	34.3% (74/216)	42.2% (89/211)	- 7.9%	- 18.7%
90 day follow-up	40.0% (86/215)	51.0% (107/210)	- 11.0%	- 21.6%

ITT	Time after Initial Procedure (days)			
	0	30	60	90
Impella® Patients At Risk	225	168	145	120
IABP Patients At Risk	223	171	133	107

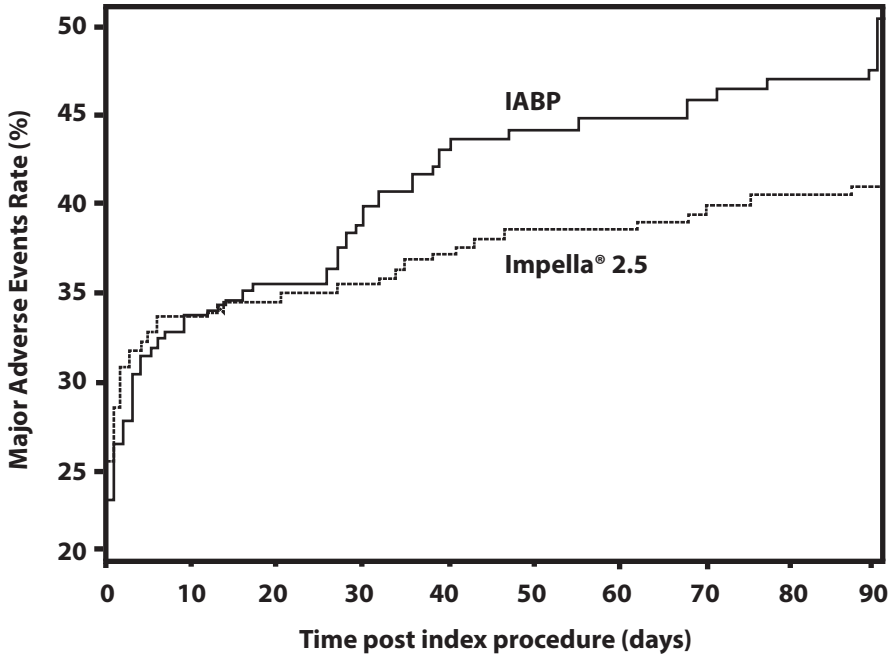


Figure 6.3 Kaplan-Meier Curves for Major Adverse Events (Intent-to-Treat Population)

PP	Time after Initial Procedure (days)			
	0	30	60	90
Impella® Patients At Risk	216	163	141	116
IABP Patients At Risk	211	160	124	99

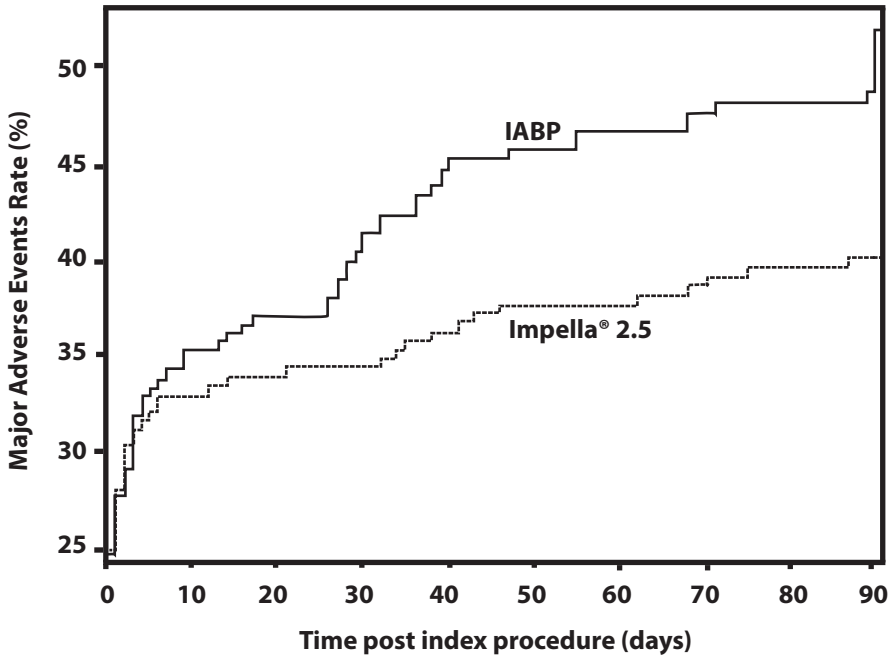


Figure 6.4 Kaplan-Meier Curves for Major Adverse Events (Per-Protocol Population)

PRE-SPECIFIED SUBGROUP ANALYSIS ON THE PRIMARY ENDPOINT

Learning Curve

The results of the pre-specified analysis without the Impella® roll-in subject suggested the presence of a learning curve in the trial. Patients in the Impella® arm, with the first subject excluded, had fewer MAEs at 30 days compared to the 30 day rate that was observed for all Impella® patients (Tables 6.4a and 6.4b). This had the effect of enlarging the observed differences in MAE rates at 30 and 90 days when comparing the adjusted Impella® cohort to IABP (Tables 6.5a and 6.5b).

Table 6.5a Subgroup Without Impella® Roll-In Subject (Intent-to-Treat Population)

Subgroup Analysis– Without Impella® Roll-In Subject (ITT)	Impella® Patients (N=167)	IABP Patients (N=223)	Difference	Relative Reduction or Increase
30 days or Discharge	31.7%	40.1%	- 8.4%	- 20.9%
90 day follow-up	38.0%	49.3%	- 11.3%	- 22.9%

Table 6.5b Subgroup Without Impella® Roll-In Subject (Per-Protocol Population)

Subgroup Analysis– Without Impella® Roll-In Subject (PP)	Impella® Patients (N=162)	IABP Patients (N=211)	Difference	Relative Reduction or Increase
30 days or Discharge	32.1%	42.2%	- 10.1%	- 23.9%
90 day follow-up	38.5%	51.0%	- 12.5%	- 24.5%

Atherectomy / Non-atherectomy

Atherectomy was not used as a part of the PCI procedure in 88% of the enrolled patients. In this subgroup, a relative reduction of MAE risk for ITT patients at 30 days favoring Impella® 2.5 that was similar in magnitude to the reduction observed when the first Impella® patient was removed was observed at 30 days. Relative reductions in the MAE rate for PP treated patients were observed at 30 and 90 days (Tables 6.6a and 6.6b).

Table 6.6a Subgroup Without Rotational Atherectomy (Intent-to-Treat Population)

Subgroup Analysis– No Rotational Atherectomy (ITT)	Impella® Patients (N=193)	IABP Patients (N=203)	Difference	Relative Reduction or Increase
30 days or Discharge	30.6%	39.6%	- 9.0%	- 22.7%
90 day follow-up	38.5%	48.7%	- 10.2%	- 20.9%

Table 6.6b Subgroup Without Rotational Atherectomy (Per-Protocol Population)

Subgroup Analysis– No Rotational Atherectomy (PP)	Impella® Patients (N=184)	IABP Patients (N=191)	Difference	Relative Reduction or Increase
30 days or Discharge	29.3%	41.9%	- 12.6%	- 30.1%
90 day follow-up	35.5%	50.5%	- 15.0%	- 29.7%

An analysis of the composite MAE for the subjects treated with rotational atherectomy is summarized in Tables 6.7a (ITT population) and 6.7b (PP population). This was a small subgroup consisting of 32 Impella® subjects and 20 IABP subjects in the ITT and PP groups. There was a numerically higher observed rate of MAE in Impella® subjects compared to IABP treated with rotational atherectomy for both the ITT and PP populations.

Table 6.7a Subgroup With Rotational Atherectomy (Intent-to-Treat Population)

Subgroup Analysis– With Rotational Atherectomy (ITT)	Impella® Patients (N=32)	IABP Patients (N=20)	Difference	Relative Reduction or Increase
30 days or Discharge	62.5%	45.0%	+ 17.5%	+ 38.9%
90 day follow-up	65.6%	55.0%	+ 10.6%	+ 19.3%

Table 6.7b Subgroup With Rotational Atherectomy (Per-Protocol Population)

Subgroup Analysis– With Rotational Atherectomy (PP)	Impella® Patients (N=32)	IABP Patients (N=20)	Difference	Relative Reduction or Increase
30 days or Discharge	62.5%	45.0%	+ 17.5%	+ 38.9%
90 day follow-up	65.6%	55.0%	+ 10.6%	+ 19.3%

Angioplasty Indication

An analysis of the composite MAE for the subgroup whose indication for angioplasty was unprotected left main or last patent coronary conduit (24% of the entire PROTECT II cohort) is summarized in Tables 6.8a and 6.8b (ITT and PP populations respectively).

The composite MAE rate was similar between the study arms at 30 days in the ITT group (41.5% for Impella® vs. 40.7% for IABP). There were numerically fewer MAEs in the Impella® arm compared to the IABP arm in the ITT population (44.2% vs. 50.0%) and PP population (41.7% vs. 50.9%) at 90 days.

Table 6.8a Subgroup of Unprotected Left Main / Last Patent Conduit (Intent-to-Treat Population)

Subgroup Analysis– Unprotected Left Main (ITT)	Impella® Patients (N=53)	IABP Patients (N=54)	Difference	Relative Reduction or Increase
30 days or Discharge	41.5%	40.7%	+0.8%	+2.0%
90 day follow-up	44.2%	50.0%	- 5.8%	- 11.6%

Table 6.8b Subgroup of Unprotected Left Main / Last Patent Conduit (Per-Protocol Population)

Subgroup Analysis– Unprotected Left Main (PP)	Impella® Patients (N=49)	IABP Patients (N=53)	Difference	Relative Reduction or Increase
30 days or Discharge	38.8%	41.5%	- 2.7%	- 6.5%
90 day follow-up	41.7%	50.9%	- 9.2%	- 18%

An analysis of the composite MAE for the subgroup whose indication for angioplasty was three-vessel disease is summarized in Tables 6.9a (ITT population) and 6.9b (PP population). The observed composite MAE rate was numerically lower for Impella® vs. IABP at 30 and 90 days in the ITT group. In the Per-Protocol population, a trend in favor of Impella® was observed at 90 days (39.5% MAE for Impella® vs. 51.0% MAE for IABP).

Table 6.9a Subgroup of Three Vessel Disease (Intent-to-Treat Population)

Subgroup Analysis– Three Vessel Disease (ITT)	Impella® Patients (N=169)	IABP Patients (N=172)	Difference	Relative Reduction or Increase
30 days or Discharge	33.1%	39.9%	- 6.8%	- 17.0%
90 day follow-up	39.5%	49.1%	- 9.6%	- 19.6%

Table 6.9b Subgroup of Three Vessel Disease (Per-Protocol Population)

Subgroup Analysis– Three Vessel Disease (PP)	Impella® Patients (N=158)	IABP Patients (N=167)	Difference	Relative Reduction or Increase
30 days or Discharge	32.9%	42.4%	- 9.5%	- 22.4%
90 day follow-up	39.5%	51.0%	- 11.5%	- 22.5%

Outcomes as a Function of Morbidity: STS Mortality Score

An analysis of the composite MAE for the subgroup with STS mortality scores < 10 is summarized in Tables 6.10a (ITT population) and 6.10b (PP population). The composite MAE rate in the ITT group is numerically lower for Impella® vs. IABP at 30 days (33.2% for Impella® vs. 38.7% for IABP) and at 90 days (37.4% for Impella® vs. 48.6% for IABP). In the PP population, there was a numerical trend favoring Impella® at 90 days (36.1% MAE for Impella® vs. 50.6% MAE for IABP).

Table 6.10a Subgroup of STS Mortality Score <10 (Intent-to-Treat Population)

Subgroup Analysis– STS Mortality Score <10 (ITT)	Impella® Patients (N=187)	IABP Patients (N=187)	Difference	Relative Reduction or Increase
30 days or Discharge	33.2%	38.7%	- 5.5%	- 14.2%
90 day follow-up	37.4%	48.6%	- 11.2%	- 23.0%

Table 6.10b Subgroup of STS Mortality Score <10 (Per-Protocol Population)

Subgroup Analysis– STS Mortality Score <10 (PP)	Impella® Patients (N=180)	IABP Patients (N=175)	Difference	Relative Reduction or Increase
30 days or Discharge	31.7%	41.1%	- 9.4%	- 22.9%
90 day follow-up	36.1%	50.6%	- 14.5%	- 28.7%

An analysis of the composite MAE for the subgroup with STS mortality scores ≥ 10 is summarized in Tables 6.11a (ITT population) and 6.11b (PP population). This subgroup represents the highest risk patients enrolled in the trial. The composite MAE rate is similar for Impella® vs. IABP at 30 days in the ITT group (44.7% for Impella® vs. 47.2% for IABP) and the PP population (47.2% for Impella® vs. 47.2% for IABP). The rates remain similar between the two arms at 90 days for both the ITT (56.8% for Impella® vs. 52.8% for IABP) and PP populations (60.0% for Impella® vs. 52.8% for IABP).

Table 6.11a Subgroup of STS Mortality Score ≥10 (Intent-to-Treat Population)

Subgroup Analysis– STS Mortality Score ≥10 (ITT)	Impella® Patients (N=38)	IABP Patients (N=36)	Difference	Relative Reduction or Increase
30 days or Discharge	44.7%	47.2%	- 2.5%	- 5.3%
90 day follow-up	56.8%	52.8%	+ 4.0%	+ 7.6%

Table 6.11b Subgroup of STS Mortality Score ≥10 (Per-Protocol Population)

Subgroup Analysis– STS Mortality Score ≥10 (PP)	Impella® Patients (N=36)	IABP Patients (N=36)	Difference	Relative Reduction or Increase
30 days or Discharge	47.2%	47.2%	0%	0%
90 day follow-up	60.0%	52.8%	+ 7.2%	+ 13.6%

The above results show that: 1) patients supported with Impella® tend to have a lower composite MAE rate than those supported with IABP in most of the subgroups; 2) there appears to be a learning curve associated with the use of the device that can be seen when removing from the analysis the first Impella® subject at each site, and 3) the use of atherectomy appears to be potentially a confounding variable that may have affected the results of the trial (including the high STS group patient subgroup).

SECONDARY SAFETY RESULTS

The ten major adverse events components of the primary endpoint were analyzed separately, in both a non-hierarchical and hierarchical manner. Tables 6.12a and 6.12b summarize the individual major adverse events components in a non-hierarchical manner, in which all the MAEs for all the subjects are represented in the components. Table 6.12a gives the results for the MAE components for the Intent-to-Treat population to 30 days or discharge, whichever is longer, and at 90 days. None of the differences between the IABP and Impella® study arms for the individual MAE components were numerically different at any time point for the ITT with the exception of repeat revascularization at 90 days, where 26 IABP subjects vs. 14 Impella® subjects required repeat revascularization.

Table 6.12b summarizes the results for the MAE components for the Per-Protocol population to 30 days or discharge whichever was longer, and at 90 days. None of the numerical differences between the study arms for the individual MAE components days were significant at any time point with the exception of repeat revascularization at 90 days, where 26 IABP subjects vs. 13 Impella® subjects required repeat revascularization.

Table 6.12a Individual MAE Components (ITT Population) Non-Hierarchical

MAE to 30 Days or Discharge	30 Days		90 Days	
	Impella® Patients (N=225)	IABP Patients (N=222)	Impella® Patients (N=224)	IABP Patients (N=219)
Death	7.6% (17/225)	5.9% (13/222)	12.1% (27/224)	8.7% (19/219)
Stroke/TIA	0.4% (1/225)	1.8% (4/222)	1.3% (3/224)	2.7% (6/219)
Myocardial Infarction	17.8% (40/225)	12.2% (27/222)	18.8% (42/224)	16.0% (35/219)
Repeat Revascularization	3.6% (8/225)	5.9% (13/222)	6.3% (14/224)	11.9% (26/219)
Need for Cardiac or Vascular Operation or Limb Ischemia	1.8% (4/225)	2.3% (5/222)	2.2% (5/224)	3.7% (8/219)
Acute Renal Dysfunction	7.1% (16/225)	7.7% (17/222)	9.4% (21/224)	11.0% (24/219)
CPR or Ventricular Arrhythmia Requiring Cardioversion	10.2% (23/225)	7.2% (16/222)	12.5% (28/224)	10.0% (22/219)
Increase in Aortic Insufficiency	0.0% (0/225)	0.0% (0/222)	0.0% (0/224)	0.0% (0/219)
Severe Hypotension	10.7% (24/225)	11.7% (26/222)	10.7% (24/224)	11.9% (26/219)
Angiographic Failure	3.6% (8/225)	1.8% (4/222)	3.6% (8/224)	1.8% (4/219)

Table 6.12b Individual MAE Components (PP Population) Non-Hierarchical

MAE to 30 Days or Discharge	30 Days		90 Days	
	Impella® Patients (N=216)	IABP Patients (N=211)	Impella® Patients (N=215)	IABP Patients (N=210)
Death	6.9% (15/216)	6.2% (13/211)	11.6% (25/215)	9.0% (19/210)
Stroke/TIA	0.5% (1/216)	1.9% (4/211)	1.4% (3/215)	2.4% (5/210)
Myocardial Infarction	17.1% (37/216)	12.8% (27/211)	18.1% (39/215)	16.7% (35/210)
Repeat Revascularization	3.2% (7/216)	6.2% (13/211)	6.0% (13/215)	12.4% (26/210)
Need for Cardiac or Vascular Operation or Limb Ischemia	1.9% (4/216)	2.4% (5/211)	2.3% (5/215)	3.8% (8/210)
Acute Renal Dysfunction	7.4% (16/216)	8.1% (17/211)	9.8% (21/215)	11.4% (24/210)
CPR or Ventricular Arrhythmia Requiring Cardioversion	9.7% (21/216)	7.6% (16/211)	12.1% (26/215)	10.5% (22/210)
Increase in Aortic Insufficiency	0.0% (0/216)	0.0% (0/211)	0.0% (0/215)	0.0% (0/210)
Severe Hypotension	10.2% (22/216)	12.3% (26/211)	10.2% (22/215)	12.4% (26/210)
Angiographic Failure	3.7% (8/216)	1.9% (4/211)	3.7% (8/215)	1.9% (4/210)

SECONDARY EFFECTIVENESS RESULTS

CARDIAC POWER OUTPUT (CPO)

When measured by maximal drop in CPO from baseline, Impella® appeared to provide better hemodynamic support compared to IABP (-0.04±0.24 vs. -0.14±0.27 Watts, respectively).

CREATININE CLEARANCE

The mean change in creatinine clearance from baseline to 24 hours post-procedure was equivalent for the two study arms: 4.64 ± 15.06 mL/min for the Impella® arm and 4.66 ± 13.55 mL/min for the IABP arm.

IMPELLA® PUMP OUTPUT

A secondary effectiveness endpoint was defined as the failure of the Impella® 2.5 device to maintain a pump output of > 1.0 L/min for more than five minutes while at a performance level P-5 or higher in the Impella® patients during the procedure. Analysis of the data of flow vs. P-level for Impella® subjects showed no failures (0%). In all cases the Impella® 2.5, when set at performance level P-5 or higher, was able to maintain flows above 1.0 L/min.

IABP PRESSURE AUGMENTATION

A secondary effectiveness endpoint was the failure of the IABP to augment diastolic pressure above the peak systolic pressure for more than five minutes in the IABP patients. This endpoint was unable to be measured for the study, as the data analysis required access to IABP console data, which was not possible without the IABP manufacturer's approval. Alternative sources of data (ie, analysis of IABP device failures and the MAE rate for hypotension for the IABP arm) do not suggest that there would have been significant failures of the IABP to augment diastolic pressure above the peak systolic pressure for more than five minutes in the IABP patients.

SUMMARY OF SUPPLEMENTAL CLINICAL INFORMATION

FURTHER PROTECT II ANALYSIS

An additional *post hoc* analysis was conducted on the primary endpoint of the PROTECT II data set and provided additional clinical information.

This analysis used a different, prognostically relevant definition of peri-procedural myocardial infarction. Specifically, the 2007 universal definition of MI used in the trial has since changed to reflect current knowledge. The additional analysis incorporated the identical data from PROTECT II but was conducted using an 8x Upper Limit of Normal (ULN) threshold for cardiac biomarker release to define peri-procedural MI in order to reflect a contemporary and prognostically relevant definition of MI.

At 90 days, lower MAE (same 10 components as defined in the PROTECT II Study) and major adverse cardiac and cerebrovascular events (MACCE – a subset of the components used in the MAE definition) rates were observed in the Impella® group compared to IABP when this contemporary definition of peri-procedural myocardial infarction (8x ULN) was used (Tables 6.13a and 6.13b).

Table 6.13a Composite MAE at 30 and 90 Days Using Contemporary Definition for Peri-Procedural MI (8x ULN) (Intent-to-Treat Population and Per-Protocol Population)

MAE at 30 Days	Impella®	IABP	Difference	Relative Reduction or Increase
ITT (N=448)	31%	38%	- 7%	- 18.4%
PP (N=427)	30%	40%	- 10%	- 25.0%

MAE at 90 Days	Impella®	IABP	Difference	Relative Reduction or Increase
ITT (N=448)	37%	47%	- 10%	- 21.3%
PP (N=427)	37%	49%	- 12%	- 24.5%

Table 6.13b Composite MACCE at 30 and 90 Days Using Contemporary Definition for Peri-Procedural MI (8x ULN) (Intent-to-Treat Population and Per-Protocol Population)

MACCE at 30 Days	Impella®	IABP	Difference	Relative Reduction or Increase
ITT (N=448)	15%	19%	- 4%	- 21.1%
PP (N=427)	14%	20%	- 6%	- 30.0%

MACCE at 90 Days	Impella®	IABP	Difference	Relative Reduction or Increase
ITT (N=448)	22%	30%	- 8%	- 26.7%
PP (N=427)	22%	31%	- 9%	- 29.4%

MAE PP	Time after Initial Procedure (days)			
	0	30	60	90
Impella® Patients At Risk	216	174	151	116
IABP Patients At Risk	211	167	129	103

MACCE PP	Time after Initial Procedure (days)			
	0	30	60	90
Impella® Patients At Risk	216	202	185	153
IABP Patients At Risk	211	197	169	135

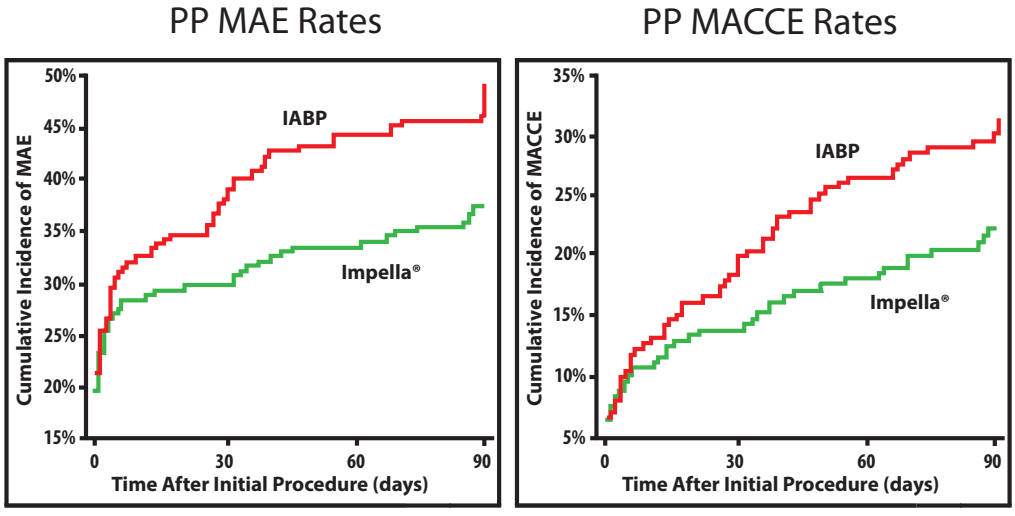


Figure 6.5 Additional Analysis of the Composite MAE and MACCE Rates in the Per-Protocol Population Using a Meaningful, Contemporary Definition for Peri-Procedural MI (8x ULN)

MAE ITT	Time after Initial Procedure (days)			
	0	30	60	90
Impella® Patients At Risk	225	180	156	129
IABP Patients At Risk	223	178	138	111

MACCE ITT	Time after Initial Procedure (days)			
	0	30	60	90
Impella® Patients At Risk	225	209	191	159
IABP Patients At Risk	223	208	178	143

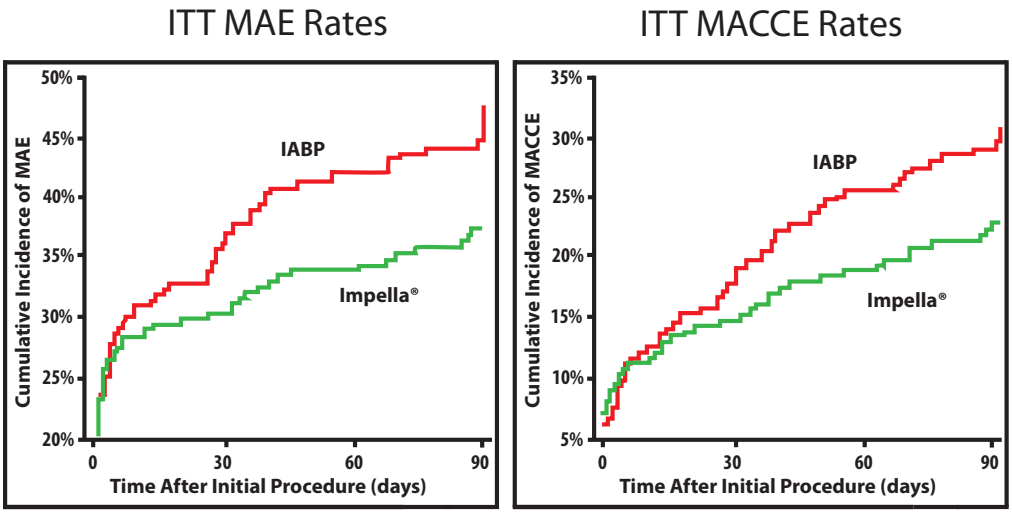


Figure 6.6 Additional Analysis of the Composite MAE and MACCE Rates in the Intent-to-Treat Population Using a Meaningful, Contemporary Definition for Peri-Procedural MI (8x ULN)

USPELLA REGISTRY - IMPELLA 2.5

Abiomed opened a voluntary registry (USpella) for Impella® use in the U.S. for all of its Impella® devices, including the Impella® 2.5. Data is collected at all participating sites retrospectively without pre-selection of patients, and included high risk PCI patients treated with the Impella® 2.5 System (albeit from a broader high risk PCI patient population than defined in the PROTECT II Study). The PROTECT II criteria was superimposed on this group of data and yielded an analysis containing 637 patients. These Impella® 2.5 System registry data were used as supplemental informative clinical data for FDA review of the Impella® 2.5 System PMA P140003, within context of the indications for use.

Outcomes and Limitations

Considering the retrospective nature of the registry design, there is a risk for some adverse events to not be documented. This is particularly true for adverse events that were defined based on temporal profile of biomarkers (such as cardiac or renal biomarkers) that require, regular, and periodic monitoring of the blood samples which may not be performed as frequently (if at all) during routine care across institutions. Other events such as the frequency of hypotensive events may also be not properly documented if accounted for retrospectively based on patient chart review.

However, mortality outcomes are relevant to report and compare to the PROTECT II trial for the following reasons: 1) USpella outcomes to discharge were obtained for 100% of the patients; and 2) death is very likely to be known and reported if the patient expired within the index hospitalization; and 3) USpella data could provide a real world estimate of the potential expected mortality for patients that are deemed to require hemodynamic support with the Impella® 2.5 while undergoing high risk PCI. Mortality outcomes in USpella are depicted in Figure 6.5. Benchmark with PROTECT II data is also provided.

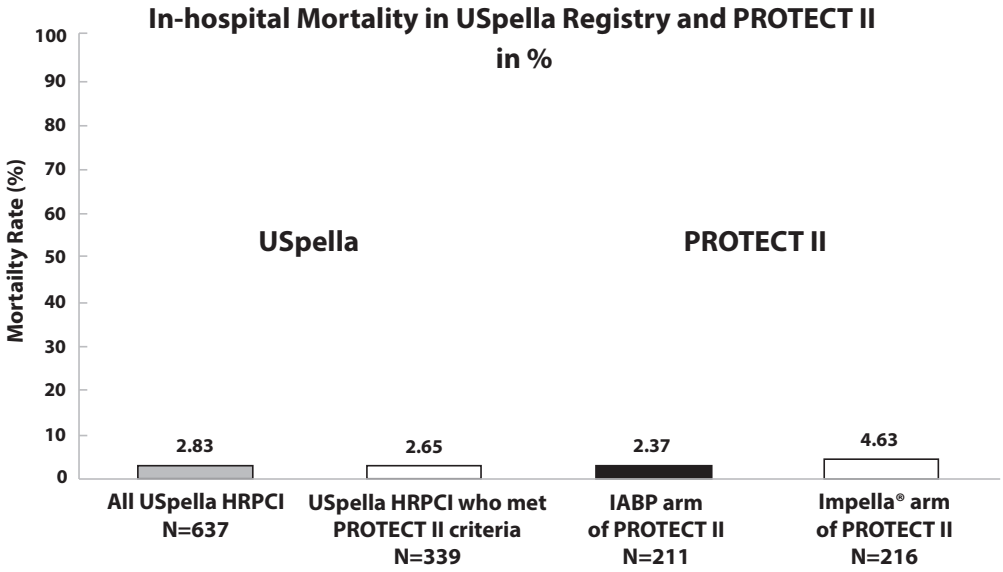


Figure 6.7 In-Hospital Mortality for "All USpella HRPCI Patients," "All USpella HRPCI Patients who met PROTECT II Criteria" and PROTECT II Patients for Both IABP and Impella® 2.5 Arm

Mortality was similar between the USpella subsets and PROTECT II Impella® 2.5 arm and IABP arm. This supports the observation in the PROTECT II trial (448 patient cohort) that there was no increased risk for mortality associated with the use of Impella® and large bore access sheath compared to IABP.

USPELLA REGISTRY- IMPELLA CP

Because of their close similarity of design, the primary clinical data set provided above for the Impella 2.5 for the same indication is applicable for the use of the Impella CP in the same high risk PCI (HRPCI) patient population. However, to further support the safety and effectiveness for use of the Impella CP in HRPCI patients, additional confirmatory clinical evidence from the USPella Registry was also reviewed by the FDA.

The USPella Registry data reviewed included results from an analysis of a cohort of consecutive, unselected patients in whom the Impella CP was used for the HRPCI indications for use. Specifically, a comparison of the two cohorts of patients, those supported with Impella CP (N=72) or Impella 2.5 (N=637) was reviewed. The Impella 2.5 cohort is identical to the cohort provided in the USPella Registry section above. The time interval for the patient selection is provided in Figure 6.8. All reported cases at Impella registry active sites supported with Impella CP for the indication of HRPCI between January 2014 and August 2014 were included. Details of the analyses of datasets for the two cohorts, which was reviewed by the FDA, are provided below.

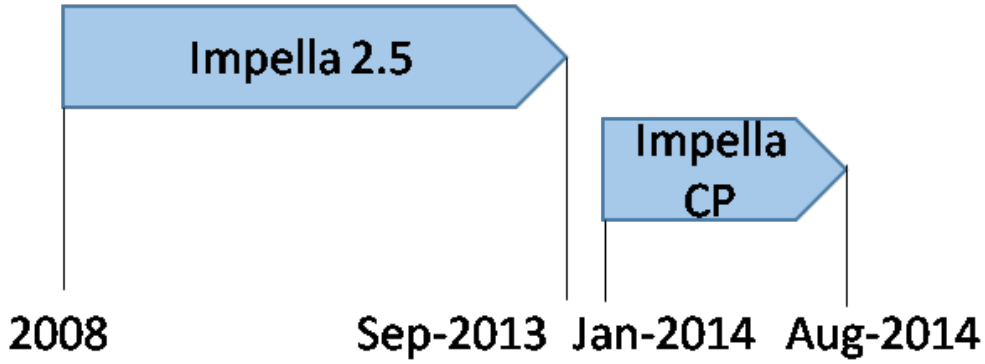


Figure 6.8 Time intervals for Impella implants (patient selection) by type of device

Baseline Characteristics Comparison

Patient demographics and baseline hemodynamic characteristics for the HRPCI patients supported with both devices were analyzed for both groups. Generally, both cohorts had advanced age (70 years), presented with severe coronary artery disease (CAD) and had multiple co-morbidities including: diabetes mellitus (50%), renal insufficiency (30%), congestive heart failure (55%), cardiomyopathy (45%), prior myocardial infarction (50%), prior PCI (47%) or prior CAGB (30%), and high STS mortality scores. The only difference in the demographics between the Impella 2.5 and Impella CP groups was a higher prevalence of congestive heart failure in the Impella CP patients (69.4% vs. 52.8%, p=0.008). The hemodynamic characteristics of the patients were also comparable, with baseline left ventricular ejection fraction (LVEF) being slightly lower in the Impella CP group, and the STS mortality and morbidity scores being slightly higher in the Impella 2.5 group compared to the Impella CP group.

Admission, procedural and support characteristics were also analyzed for both groups. The main differences were:

- more patients in the Impella CP group were admitted for acute myocardial infarction (38.9% vs. 28.4%, p=0.076)

- fewer patients in the Impella CP group were recommended for CABG compared to the Impella 2.5 group (21.1% vs. 37.1%, p=0.008).
- more patients in the Impella CP group had intervention on the left main (LM) coronary artery and/or left anterior descending (LAD) artery (56.8% vs. 49.97%, p=0.084).
- more patients in the Impella CP group were treated with rotational atherectomy (27.8% vs. 16.7%, p=0.032).
- the Impella CP provided a higher pump flows (3.03 vs. 2.09 L/min, p=0.001).

Hemodynamics were also measured. Baseline hemodynamics were similar for both cohorts. As expected, during support, both the Impella 2.5 and the Impella CP significantly increased the diastolic and the mean arterial blood pressures.

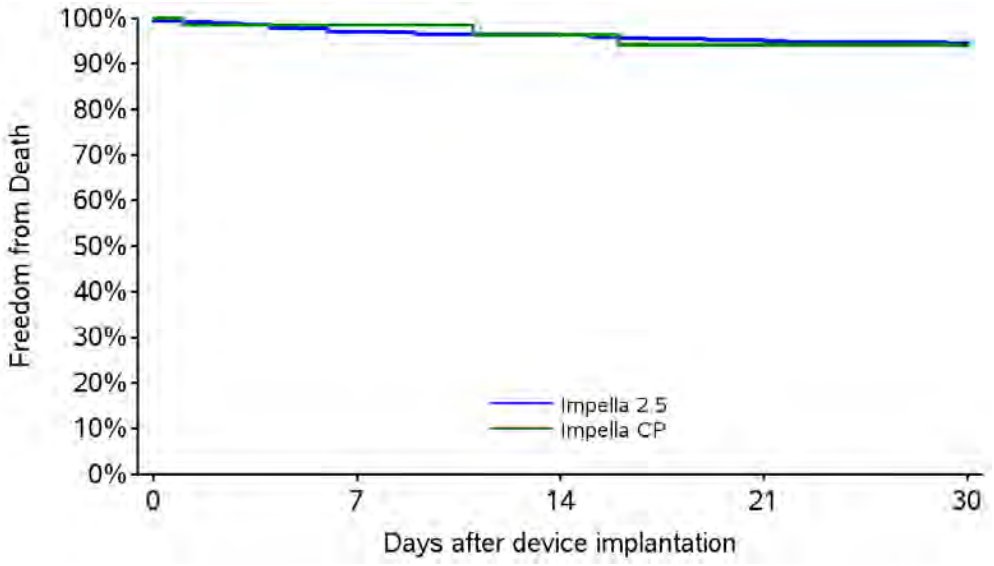
Clinical Outcomes Comparison

The patient outcomes, as determined by the mortality and the site reported adverse events (AEs) were also analyzed. The results are provided in Table 6.14. Overall, there were no significant differences in adverse event rates between the patients supported with Impella CP and those supported with Impella 2.5.

Table 6.14 In-hospital site-reported AEs for HRPCI patients supported with Impella 2.5 or Impella CP in Impella Registry

Adverse Events	Impella 2.5 (N=637 Patients)	Impella CP (N=72 Patients)	Relative Reduction or Increase
Death	2.83% (18/637)	2.78% (2/72)	1.000
Myocardial Infarction	0.78% (5/637)	0.00% (0/72)	1.000
CVA/Stroke	0.00% (0/637)	0.00% (0/72)	--
TIA	0.00% (0/637)	0.00% (0/72)	--
Revascularization (including Emergent CABG)	0.94% (6/637)	0.00% (0/72)	1.000
Aortic Valve Injury	0.00% (0/637)	0.00% (0/72)	--
Aortic Valve Regurgitation >=2 Grades from Baseline	0.00% (0/637)	0.00% (0/72)	--
Bleeding requiring Surgery	0.47% (3/637)	1.39% (1/72)	0.349
Bleeding requiring Transfusion	7.54% (48/637)	5.56% (4/72)	0.810
Device Malfunction	0.16% (1/637)	1.39% (1/72)	0.193
Hematoma	5.02% (32/637)	6.94% (5/72)	0.412
Vascular Complication requiring Surgery	2.04% (13/637)	2.78% (2/72)	0.658
Vascular Complication without Surgery	2.04% (13/637)	4.17% (3/72)	0.216
Limb Ischemia	0.63% (4/637)	1.39% (1/72)	0.416
Hemolysis	0.00% (0/637)	0.00% (0/72)	--
Hematuria	1.41% (9/637)	1.39% (1/72)	1.000
Acute Renal Dysfunction	5.97% (38/637)	2.78% (2/72)	0.417
Acute Hepatic Failure	0.47% (3/637)	1.39% (1/72)	0.349
Acute Bowel Ischemia	0.31% (2/637)	0.00% (0/72)	1.000
Need for Cardiac, Thoracic, Abdominal Vascular Operation or Femoral Artery Bypass Graft (Not isolated Femoral Artery)	0.16% (1/637)	0.00% (0/72)	1.000
Hypotension During Support	9.73% (62/637)	11.11% (8/72)	0.678
Infection	3.61% (23/637)	2.78% (2/72)	1.000
Cardiopulmonary Resuscitation or Ventricular Arrhythmia	3.14% (20/637)	4.17% (3/72)	0.721
Failure to Achieve Angiographic Success (as Residual Stenosis <30% after stent implant)	0.31% (2/637)	0.00% (0/72)	1.000

Kaplan-Meier estimate for the 30-day survival are provided in Figures 6.9 for each device cohort patients. As shown in the Figure, survival to 30 days was high in this population and without any difference with regards to the Impella device used for support (94.6% in Impella 2.5 vs. 94.1% in Impella CP).



Freedom from Death	Days after device implantation				
	0	7	14	21	30
Impella 2.5 (N=637)					
# Entered	637	633	480	462	443
# Censored	0	141	14	13	13
# Events	4	12	4	6	2
% Survived	99.4%	97.1%	96.3%	95.0%	94.6%
Impella CP (N=72)					
# Entered	72	72	48	43	42
# Censored	0	23	4	0	4
# Events	0	1	1	1	0
% Survived	100.0%	98.5%	96.3%	94.1%	94.1%
Test Between Groups	Test	Chi-Square	Deg Frdm	P-value	
	Log-Rank	0.01	1	0.921	
	Wilcoxon	0.01	1	0.922	

Figure 6.9 Kaplan-Meier curve for freedom from death to 30 days in HRPCI patients supported with Impella 2.5 or Impella CP.

All cases of site-reported death from the Impella Registry were adjudicated by an independent clinical event committee (CEC). The results of the adjudications are provided in Table 6.15. None of the Impella CP patient deaths were determined by the CEC to be related to the device. One of the Impella CP patient deaths was determined to be related to the procedure. The patient had acute stent thrombosis causing ventricular fibrillation after the index procedure and required

defibrillation, multiple rounds of cardiopulmonary resuscitation (CPR) and a salvage coronary intervention, and expired during the procedure.

Table 6.15 Causes of in-hospital deaths for HRPCI patients supported with Impella 2.5 or Impella CP in Impella Registry.

Cause of Death	Impella 2.5 (N=637)	Impella CP (N=72)
Myocardial Infarction	1.26% (8)	2.78% (2)
Decompensated Heart/ Multi-Organ Failure	1.1% (7)	0
Procedural Complication	0.31% (2)	0
Respiratory Failure	0.16% (1)	0
Total	**2.83% (18)**	**2.78% (2)**

Overall the Impella Registry data analyses of use of the Impella CP indicated that:

- patients undergoing HRPCI supported with Impella CP in the routine clinical practice were very sick, and similar to Impella 2.5 patients undergoing HRPCI.
- the use of the Impella CP during HRPCI procedures provided adequate hemodynamic support with a significant increase (from baseline) in the diastolic and mean arterial pressures and similar to Impella 2.5 patients undergoing HRPCI.
- the outcomes of patients undergoing HRPCI procedures supported with Impella CP were similar to the outcomes observed in patients undergoing HRPCI procedures supported with Impella 2.5.
- the overall safety for use of the Impella CP device during HRPCI procedures is favorable with regard to a broad range of adverse events that were monitored, and is similar to the safety for use of the Impella 2.5 in the HRPCI settings.

The Impella Registry data provided further supports the safety and effectiveness for use of the Impella CP in the HRPCI patient population.

CONCLUSION

In conclusion, given the totality of the information available for the Impella® 2.5 and Impella CP Systems, the data suggests that an observed beneficial therapeutic effect at 90 days likely exists in patients undergoing high risk interventions (ie, patients have few, if any other treatment options due to the severity of the underlying coronary artery disease and co-morbidities). This beneficial effect is possibly attributable to the ability to perform more aggressive percutaneous revascularization procedures while being supported by the Impella® 2.5 and Impella CP Systems without significantly increasing safety risks, thereby decreasing the late need for symptom driven coronary artery re-intervention. In addition, supplementary evidence from the USPella Registry demonstrated similar clinical outcomes in real world use for both the Impella 2.5 and Impella CP Systems.

CLINICAL EXPERIENCE OVERVIEW FOR CARDIOGENIC SHOCK AFTER ACUTE MYOCARDIAL INFARCTION OR OPEN HEART SURGERY

The indication for use to treat ongoing cardiogenic shock following acute myocardial infarction or open heart surgery as a result of isolated left ventricular failure with the Impella 2.5, the Impella CP, the Impella 5.0 and the Impella LD Systems was supported by US and European human clinical data. This information included prospective clinical trials, and data from a retrospective registry, USpella, along with literature reviews. Details of the clinical information reviewed by the FDA for approval of the Cardiogenic shock indication is provided below.

CARDIAC SHOCK AFTER ACUTE MYOCARDIAL INFARCTION - SUMMARY OF PRIMARY CLINICAL STUDIES

PROSPECTIVE RANDOMIZED TRIAL: ISAR-SHOCK (FOR IMPELLA 2.5)

To support for safety and effectiveness, data from a small prospective randomized clinical trial (RCT) was used. The ISAR-SHOCK trial was designed as a prospective, two-center, randomized, open-label study designed to test whether the Impella 2.5 provides superior hemodynamic improvement as compared to the standard procedure utilizing IABP for AMICS patients.

The trial was designed to assess the hemodynamic robustness of the Impella 2.5 against IABP (primary endpoint), as measured by the improvement of cardiac support after device support initiation. Safety data (survival and adverse events) were also studied (secondary endpoints). Details of the study design are below.

CLINICAL INCLUSION AND EXCLUSION CRITERIA

Eligible patients were those who presented with cardiogenic shock within 48 hours of an acute myocardial infarction or suspicion of an acute coronary syndrome. The inclusion and exclusion criteria are below.

Inclusion Criteria

1. Systolic Blood Pressure (SBP) < 90 mmHg during angina pectoris and heart rate > 90/min OR use of catecholamines to maintain SBP> 90 mmHg during angina pectoris; AND
2. Signs of end-organ hypoperfusion OR Signs of left ventricular failure (Killip class 3 or 4)
3. Left Ventricular Ejection Fraction (LVEF)< 30% and Left Ventricular End-Diastolic Pressure (LVEDP)> 20 mmHg OR
4. Cardiac Index (CI)< 2.2 l/min/m2 and Pulmonary Capillary Wedge Pressure (PCWP)> 15 mmHg

Exclusion Criteria (Clinical Only)

1. Age less than 18 years old
2. Resuscitation for more than 30 minutes
3. Obstructive, hypertrophic cardiomyopathy
4. Marginal thrombus in the left ventricle
5. Subjects with implanted IABP at the point in time of randomization
6. Mechanical mitral and/or aortic valve, and/or severe valve stenosis
7. Mechanical cause of cardiogenic shock
8. Right ventricular failure
9. Sepsis
10. Brain damage or suspicion of brain damage
11. Surgically uncontrollable bleeding
12. Massive pulmonary embolism
13. Known coagulopathy or allergy to heparin
14. Aortic insufficiency
15. Participation in another clinical study
16. Pregnancy

Patients were followed up to 6 months. Procedural, hemodynamic, blood data and concomitant medications including catecholamines requirement were collected at baseline and at different times as prescribed by the protocol. Adverse events were recorded throughout the duration of the study.

CLINICAL ENDPOINTS

Primary Endpoint

- Hemodynamic improvement within the first 60 minutes after implantation, as measured by an improvement in cardiac index (CI) immediately following implantation of the study support device.

Secondary Endpoints

- Hemodynamic change during the course of treatment, which is defined as the change in measured values from the baseline (pre-implantation) after 24 and 48 hours using a generally recognized catecholamine dosage.
- Change in the catecholamine dosage for adrenalin or dobutamine from baseline compared to 6, 24, 48 and 96 hours after implantation.
- Survival for 30 days.
- Rates of all adverse events up to 30 days post-implantation.

- Lactate release (defined as a change in the lactate value from baseline compared to 6, 24, 48 and 96 hours after implantation).

ACCOUNTABILITY OF PMA COHORT

Twenty-seven (27) subjects were enrolled in ISAR-SHOCK at 2 centers in Germany between September 15, 2004 and February 17, 2007. Fourteen (14) patients were randomized to the Impella arm and 13 patients to the IABP arm. One (1) patient in the Impella arm (A-03-a) withdrew following consent, but prior to initiation on support. No data was captured for this patient. In addition, one (1) patient in the Impella arm (B-07-a) expired after randomization but prior to device placement.

STUDY POPULATION DEMOGRAPHICS AND BASELINE PARAMETERS

Study population demographics, characteristics and hemodynamics are provided below.

Table 6.16 Baseline demographics and characteristics

Parameter	All Subjects	IABP	Impella 2.5	p-value
Number of subjects	26	13	13	
Age in years (mean ± SD)	65 ± 13	67 ± 15	63 ± 10	0.390
Male %,(number)	73% (19)	85% (11)	62% (8)	0.378
LVEF % (mean ± SD)	27 ± 11	28 ± 12	26 ± 11	0.619
Number of catecholamines at baseline (mean ± SD)	1.2 ± 0.7	1.0± 0.4	1.3± 0.9	0.253
Diabetes %,(number)	27% (7)	8% (1)	46% (6)	0.030
Smoking %,(number)	42% (11)	46% (6)	38% (5)	1.000
Hypercholesterolemia %,(number)	38% (10)	38% (5)	38% (5)	1.000
Arterial Hypertension %,(number)	38% (10)	54% (7)	23% (3)	0.370
Anterior myocardial infarction (number) %	50% (13)	54% (7)	46% (6)	1.000
Time from AMI to support device implant in hours (mean ± SD)	9.9 ± 6.4	9.4 ± 6.6	10.4 ± 6.5	0.696

Table 6.17 Baseline hemodynamics

Parameter	All (mean ± SD) (n=25)	IABP (mean ± SD) (n=13)	Impella 2.5 (mean ± SD) (n=12)	p-value
Cardiac Index [l/min/m2]	1.8 ± 0.6	1.8 ± 0.8	1.7 ± 0.5	0.820
Heart rate [bpm]	96.8 ± 24.7	97.9 ± 24.7	95.5 ± 25.8	0.820
Systolic art. pressure [mmHg]	104.0 ± 21.4	98.6 ± 21.5	109.8 ± 20.6	0.196
Diastolic art. pressure [mmHg]	60.8 ± 14.3	56.5 ± 12.4	65.5 ± 15.2	0.117
Mean arterial pressure [mmHg]	74.9 ± 15.9	71.0 ± 15.6	79.2 ± 15.8	0.206
Systemic vasc. resistance [dyn sec-5]	1605 ± 620	1569 ± 775	1647 ± 399	0.766
Pulmonary capillary wedge pressure [mmHg]	22.1 ± 7.2	21.5 ± 6.7	22.8 ± 8.0	0.685
Central venous pressure [mmHg]	12.4 ± 6.3	12.3 ± 5.6	12.6 ± 7.3	0.916
Lactate [mmol/l]	6.5 ± 4.3	6.6 ± 4.0	6.5 ± 4.7	0.947

SAFETY AND EFFECTIVENESS RESULTS

The safety endpoint, 30-day survival, which was the secondary endpoint in the trial, is provided in Figure 6.10. There was an initial trend for better survival for Impella 2.5 while on device support but late death events occurred with no difference at 30 days. The study was not powered for survival differences to be established between devices considering the limited sample size, therefore, no definitive statement with respect to survival benefit can be made.

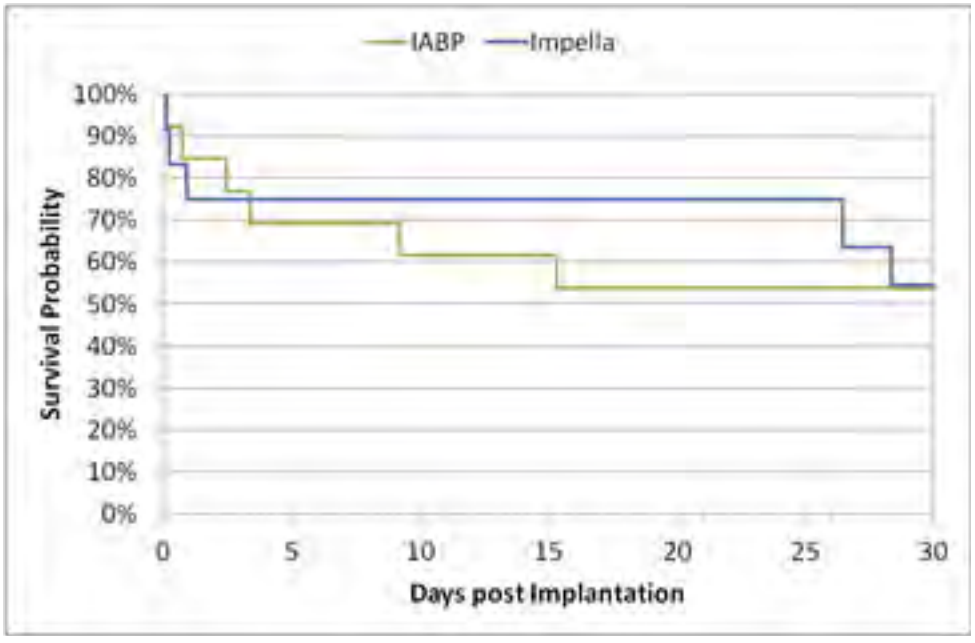


Figure 6.10 Kaplan-Meier survival curves survival (to 30 days) for the ISAR-SHOCK trial

In addition, Adverse Events (AEs) were monitored for the trial for 30 days post-implant as secondary endpoint. There were no serious AEs (SAEs) reported. There were four (4) non-serious AEs reported, as shown in Table 6.18.

Table 6.18 Adverse Events Monitoring

Cohort	Adverse Event(s)	Outcome
Impella	Bleeding at insertion site	Manual compression needed (for 20 minutes)
	Hemolysis (two consecutive blood samples)	Resolved in 1 day
	Hematoma at insertion site	Resolved in 1 week
IABP	Ventricular tachycardia	Resolved in 1 day

A third safety endpoint, the lactate levels following support was monitored. This data is given in Figure 6.11. The results were similar for both study cohorts.

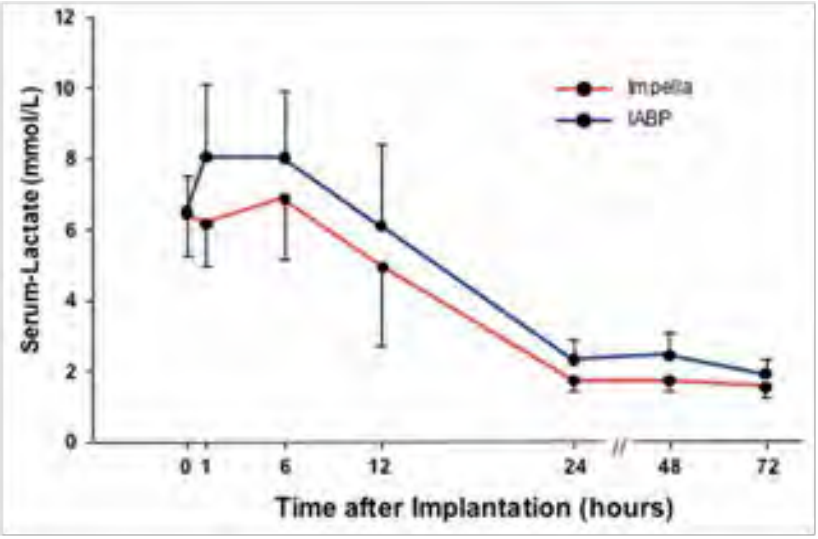


Figure 6.11 Lactate levels seen post-implant during the trial

The effectiveness endpoint, which was the primary endpoint of the study, was the change of cardiac index from baseline after device support. The ISAR-SHOCK study showed a significant improvement of cardiac index in the Impella 2.5 arm compared to the IABP arm post device insertion, as shown in Figure 6.12. In addition, after 24 hours of support, fewer patients supported with the Impella 2.5 required inotropes compared to patients supported with an IABP, as shown in Figure 6.13.

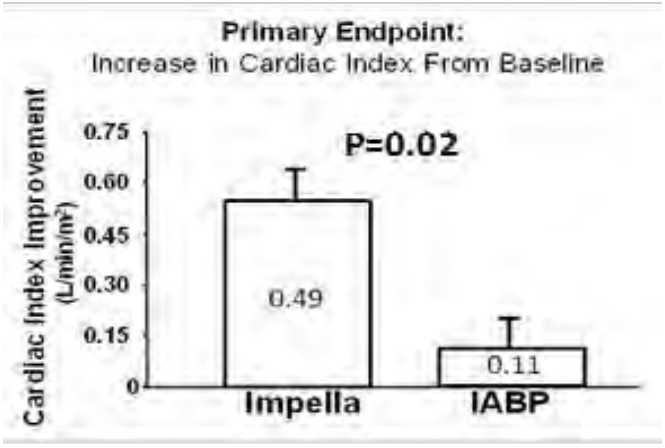


Figure 6.12 Increase in cardiac index from baseline, Impella vs. IABP 30 minutes post-support, in patients treated for cardiogenic shock after an AMI (ISAR-SHOCK)

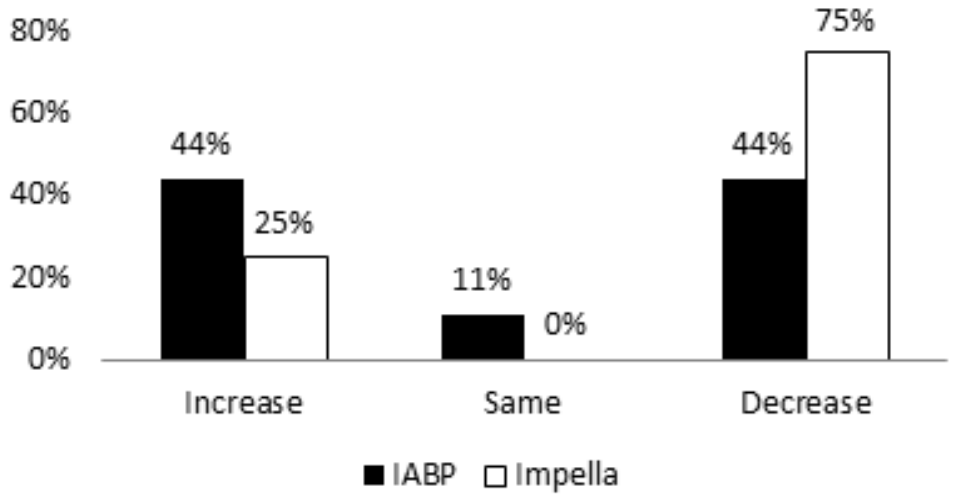


Figure 6.13 Change in inotropic dosage at 24 hours, Impella vs. IABP in patients treated for cardiogenic shock after an AMI (ISAR-SHOCK)

DEVICE FAILURES AND REPLACEMENTS

There were no device failures or replacements reported during the study.

FINANCIAL DISCLOSURE

The Financial Disclosure by Clinical Investigators regulation (21 CFR 54) requires applicants who submit a marketing application to include certain information concerning the compensation to, and financial interests and arrangement of, any clinical investigator conducting clinical studies covered by the regulation. This clinical study included 2 investigators. Neither of the clinical investigators had disclosable financial interests/arrangements as defined in sections 54.2(a), (b), (c), and (f). The information provided does not raise any questions about the reliability of the data.

SUMMARY OF SUPPLEMENTAL CLINICAL INFORMATION

Supplemental data from the Impella registry was provided to demonstrate real world use for the patient population. Several analyses of the Impella Registry data were provided to support the safety and effectiveness of use of the Impella devices. An analysis of the Impella Registry was also provided to differentiate the outcomes for different treatment groups. In addition, the sponsor also provided a benchmark comparison of the Impella Registry data to a comparable registry dataset for its surgical VAD, the AB5000 Ventricle (PMA approved for a similar indication). Clinical data from a separate clinical trial (RECOVER I) was also provided to demonstrate hemodynamic effectiveness of the Impella 5.0/LD device during use. As further evidence, a detailed literature review was also provided to support the overall safety and efficacy of the Impella devices.

REAL-WORLD IMPELLA REGISTRY RESULTS (FOR ALL IMPELLA DEVICES)

The Impella Registry is an ongoing, multi-center, retrospective, observational registry for collection of de-identified data for patients treated with the Impella 2.5, Impella CP, Impella 5.0 and Impella LD Support Systems. The registry, which was started by Abiomed in 2009, is open for participation by qualifying sites in the U.S. and Canada. Since the registry was started to date a total 59 sites have participated. As of June 30, 2015, there were 40 open sites. The sites include high and low volume centers, academic (teaching) and non-academic hospitals, public and private institutions as well as for profit and not for profit centers, almost entirely from the United States, thus providing a good representation of U.S. clinical practice. In addition, Abiomed used the Impella Registry as supporting evidence in its original PMA (P140003) application for the Impella 2.5 System. After reviewing the data, the FDA stated (In the PMA's SSED):

> *"Use of the device in a comparable patient group, as collected retrospectively via Abiomed's USpella (Impella Registry) database, showed results similar to those obtained in the PROTECT II clinical trial for overall patient outcomes and hemodynamic support during use."*

The data collection from the Impella Registry includes IRB approval, complete data monitoring, adverse events (AEs) monitoring and CEC adjudication of major AEs. All data is entered electronically by the sites. For this PMA, the time during which the Impella Registry data was used is shown in Figure 6.17. Eligible patients were those who were reported in the Impella Registry presented with AMICS and underwent mechanical revascularization with either percutaneous coronary intervention (PCI) or coronary artery bypass grafting (CABG) and required mechanical circulatory support with Impella devices.

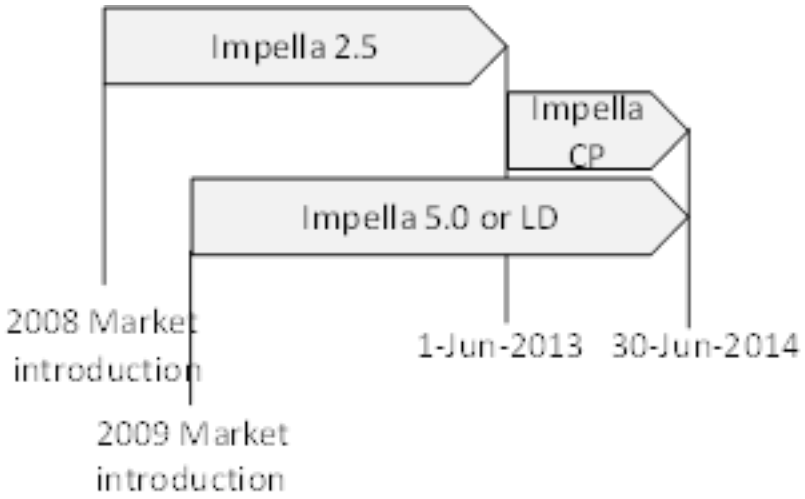


Figure 6.14 Time intervals for Impella implants data collection by type of device

Cases were initially identified using Abiomed's commercial patient tracking system, and then further reviewed to verify that each case was applicable for this supplement (i.e. was an AMICS patient). Using this method, three hundred twenty four (324) Impella cases were enrolled into the U.S. Impella Registry for this analysis. These included 189 Impella 2.5 cases, 111 Impella CP cases and 24 (combined) Impella 5.0 and Impella LD cases.

The data included: patient's demographics and baseline characteristics (risk factors, medical history and history of previous cardiac interventions), clinical presentation for the index hospitalization, index cardiac procedure information, Impella device information, hemodynamic parameters pre, during and post Impella support, cardiovascular medication, laboratory results, patient's outcome information at discharge and 30-day follow-up as well as site-reported adverse events. Both site-reported safety data and CEC-adjudicated data are presented.

The data showed that AMICS patients were on average 65 years old, the majority were male (75%) with significant risk factors and comorbidities including smoking (48%), diabetes (42%), hypertension (71%), renal insufficiency (24%), a Society of Thoracic Surgery (STS) scores for mortality of 21% and morbidity of 60%. The patients presented with high heart rate, poor hemodynamics despite pressors and inotropes, signs of tissue hypoperfusion (lactates) and end-organ dysfunction (creatinine). These characteristics were generally the same for all Impella devices, except for: the gender distribution had more male patients in the Impella 2.5 and Impella CP groups (compared to Impella 5.0/LD) and a higher proportion of patients transferred from outlying facility in patients supported with the Impella 5.0/LD (compared to patients supported with the Impella 2.5 or Impella CP).

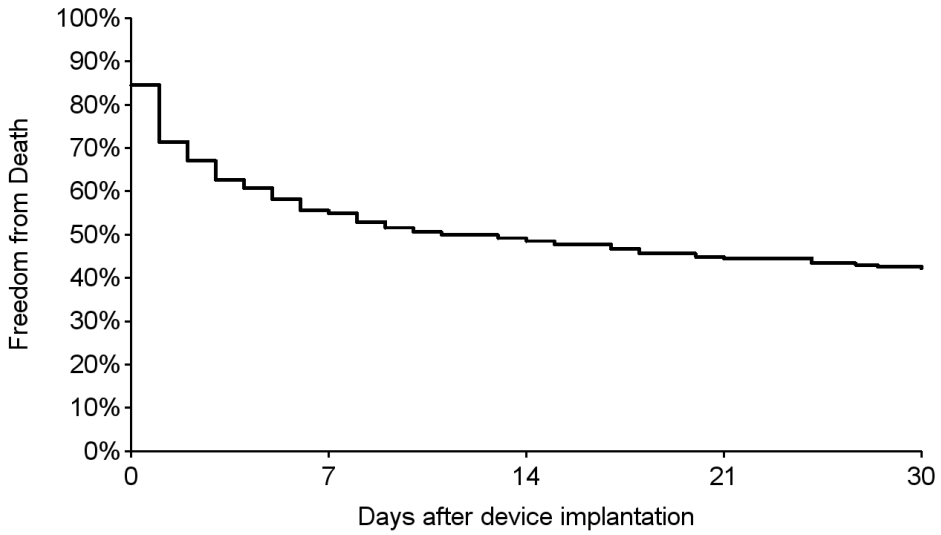


Figure 6.15 Kaplan-Meier curve estimates for 30 day survival – All patient cohort

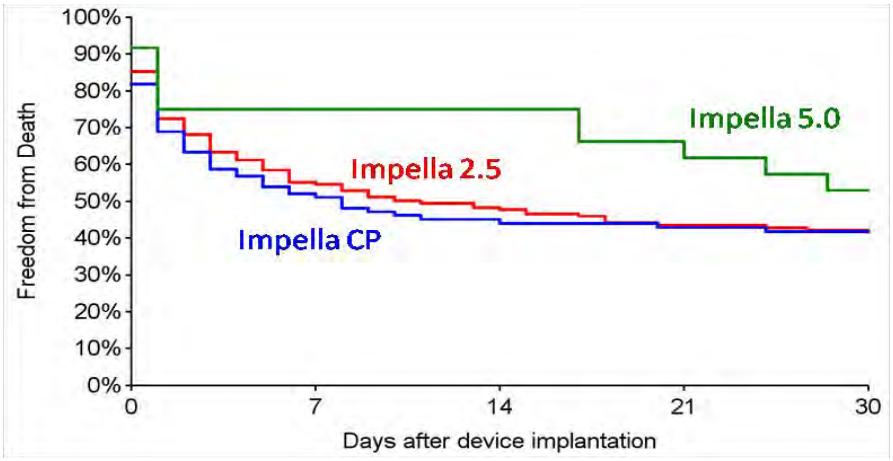


Figure 6.16 Kaplan-Meier curve estimates, 30 day survival (by device) - All patient cohort

As a further breakdown of the survival outcomes, 29% of the patients expired on Impella device support and 71% were successfully supported to recovery or to next therapy (bridge-to-bridge). In aggregate, 45.7% were discharged (85.8% with recovery, 12.8% transferred to another hospital on Impella support for care management and potential heart transplant or bridge-to-transplant or destination therapy, 1.35% discharged on long-term implantable VAD). By device, 45%, 46% and 50% of the Impella patients survived to discharge for the Impella 2.5, CP and 5.0/LD, respectively. There was no observed difference in outcomes between the different devices, but a trend for better outcomes was seen for patients treated with Impella 5.0/LD (see Figure 6.16).

ADDITIONAL ANALYIS OF THE IMPELLA REGISTRY DATA

An additional analysis of different subsets of the Impella Registry patients was provided. The analysis was completed to attempt to evaluate a potential benefit of Impella in a subgroup of the Impella Registry patients, which would be similar to patients selected in prior randomized AMICS RCTs. This was accomplished by dividing the Impella Registry into two groups, a "RCT group" or a group who may have qualified for an AMICS RCT that has been conducted (i.e., SHOCK trial) and a group of "salvage" patients, who would typically be excluded from an AMICS RCT. Specifically, the "salvage patient population" included patients who presented with anoxic brain injury prior to implant, out of hospital cardiac arrest and those who were transferred from outlying hospital. These higher risk patients would usually be excluded from RCTs because of the time delay in providing care or severity of the insult that makes the shock irreversible despite effective hemodynamic support. The RCT subgroup consisted of 111 patients and the "salvage" subgroup was made up of the remaining 209 patients:

The overall 30-day survival results (Kaplan-Meier curve estimates) for the two subgroups described above are shown in Figure 6.17. As expected, the "salvage" group of patients has poorer outcomes than the RCT group, which is more representative of patients chosen for AMICS RCTs.

In addition, the outcomes data for both 30-day survival and survival to discharge are provided in Figures 6.18 and 6.19, respectively, for each Impella device. Interestingly, there appears to be a trend (most noticeable for the RCT group) for an incremental improvement in outcomes with increased flow (from Impella 2.5 to Impella 5.0/LD). This trend reinforces the principle[1] that an increase in the amount of support (CPO) affects outcomes in patients in whom the cardiogenic shock condition is still reversible.

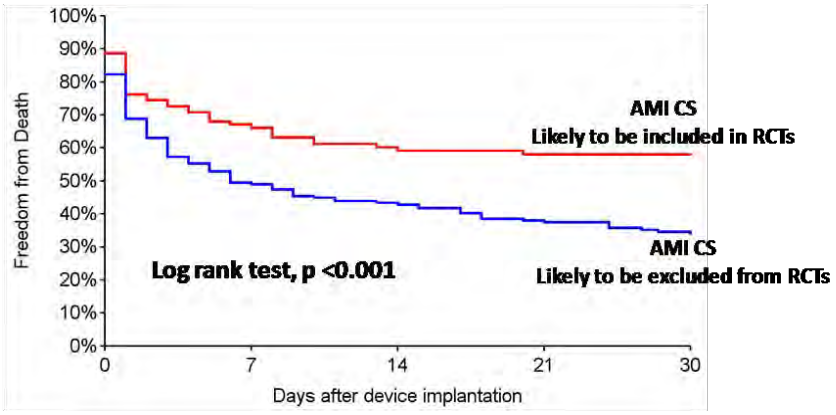


Figure 6.17 Outcomes between Impella Registry subgroups: Patients likely to be eligible for RCTs vs. Patients likely to be excluded from RCTs ("salvage" patients)

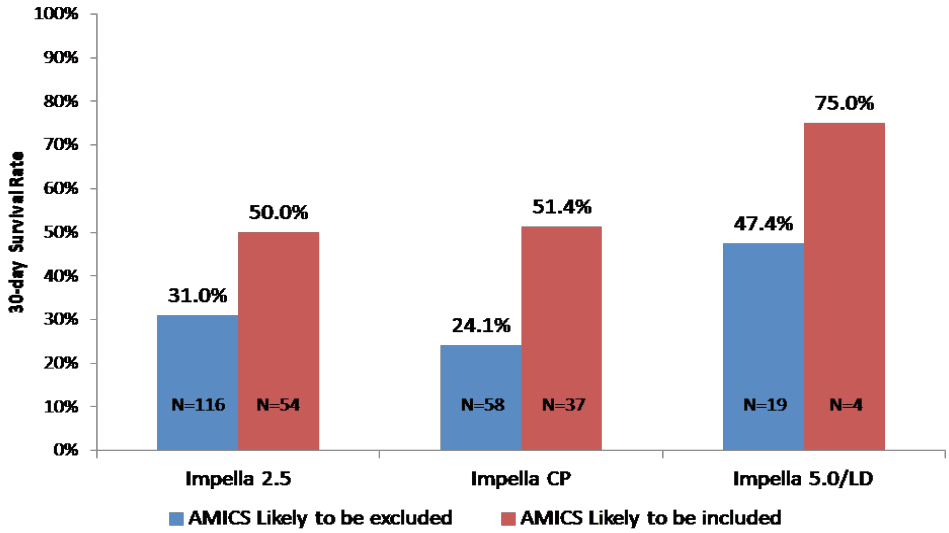


Figure 6.18 30-day outcomes (by device) between Impella Registry subgroups: Patients likely to be eligible for RCTs vs. Patients likely to be excluded from RCTs ("salvage" patients)

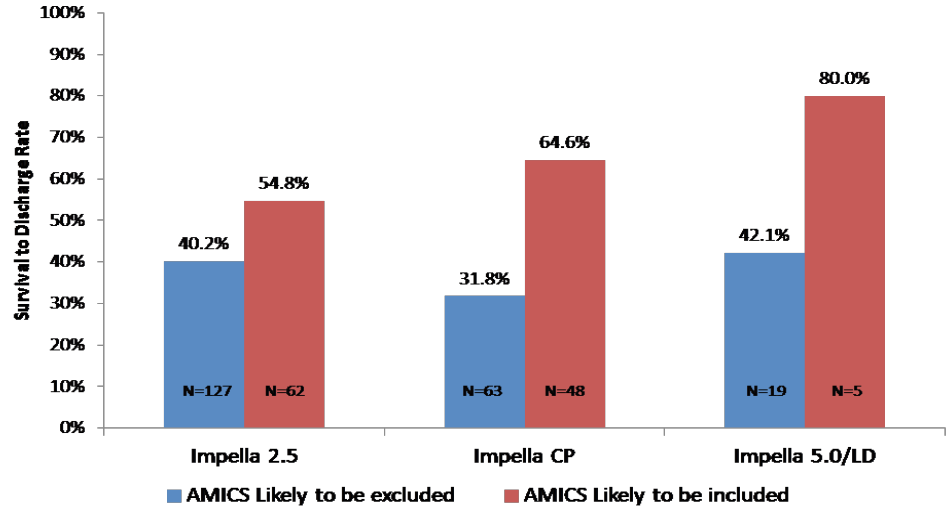


Figure 6.19 Survival to discharge outcomes (by device) between Impella Registry subgroups: Patients likely to be eligible for RCTs vs. Patients likely to be excluded from RCTs ("salvage" patients)

BENCHMARKING IMPELLA VS. APPROVED VAD IN AMICS

In order to provide a benchmark for the Impella devices in a comparable clinical setting (AMICS), Abiomed analyzed the results from its real-world registry for the AB5000 Ventricle. The AB5000 Ventricle was PMA approved (P900023/S038) in 2003 as a temporary VAD for use to treat AMICS. The AB5000 Registry was a retrospective registry, which included data collected from U.S. sites between October 3, 2003 and December 11, 2007. The AB5000 Registry included data with demographics, procedural and hemodynamic characteristics, outcomes and adverse events.

The AB5000 Registry includes 2,152 patients. After reviewing the AB5000 Registry and matching the two cohorts (Impella and AB5000 for AMICS), 115 cases from the AB5000 Registry were eligible match for the benchmark analysis.

The benchmark analysis included the overall survival to 30 days and to discharge in the AMICS patient group. The 30-day Kaplan-Meier estimates are provided in Figure 6.20. The results are provided for each Impella device. In addition, the survival-to-discharge results are provided in Figure 6.21.

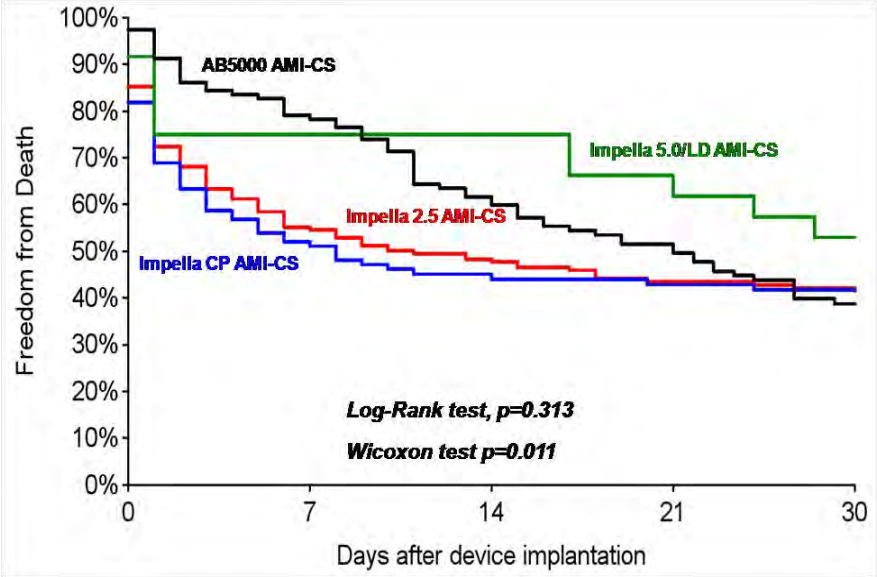


Figure 6.20 Kaplan-Meier curve estimates for 30-day survival

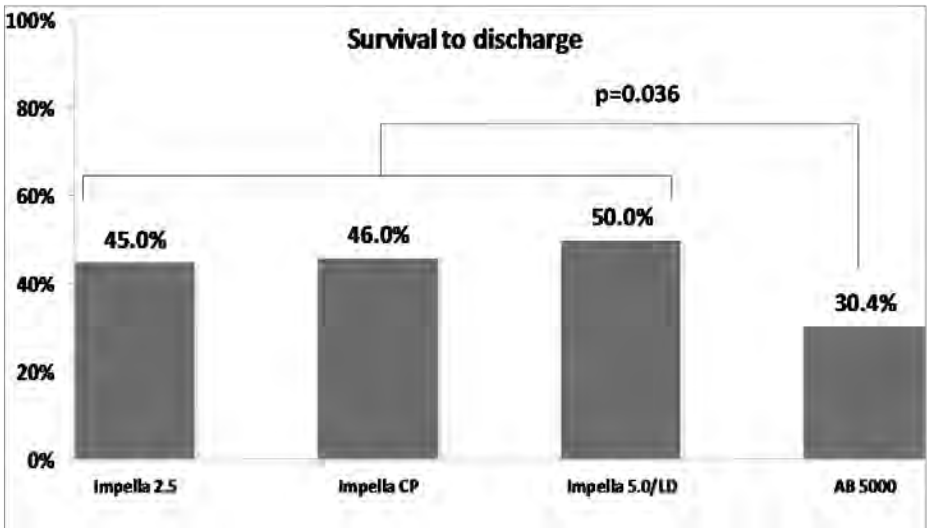


Figure 6.21 Survival to discharge in AMICS cohort

The trends in the Kaplan Meier curve support the assertion that outcomes are improved when more robust hemodynamic support (i.e., flow) is provided to these hemodynamically compromised patients. Indeed, Impella 5.0/LD and AB5000 initially exhibit the highest survival. However, the data shows that the survival to discharge was significantly lower in the AB5000 cohort compared to the Impella cohort (30.43% vs. 45.68%, p=0.036), even though the AB5000 is the most potent device. For this comparison, the longer duration of support and the

invasiveness of the AB5000 likely increases the risk of device related morbidities as the support is extended. These issues can result in serious complications culminating in death events. Therefore, a potential benefit of the higher hemodynamic support of a surgical VAD is offset by the high complication rates that impair outcomes.

In addition, to assess overall safety of use of the Impella devices, the rates of site-reported in-hospital adverse events were compared. The results of this comparison are provided in Table 6.4. There are several noteworthy differences between the Impella and AB5000 safety profile.

- The cerebral vascular accident (CVA) and stroke events were significantly higher in AB5000 cohort compared to the Impella devices, which could be explained by the longer duration of support with the AB5000, and its much larger blood contacting device surface area and areas of stasis in the device that interact with the patient blood compared to the Impella device.
- The bleeding rates differed among the groups. For Impella 5.0/LD group, only 4 patients underwent percutaneous coronary intervention, with the remainder receiving surgical revascularization (i.e., a CABG procedure). As a result, the bleeding rates were similar between the Impella 5.0/LD and AB5000. These were mainly surgical bleeding. However, the bleeding rates for Impella 2.5 and Impella CP, which were placed percutaneously in AMICS patients undergoing PCI, were much lower compared to the other two groups. There were no device-related bleeding events reported.
- There were also differences in the infection rates, with higher incidence in the Impella 5.0/LD and AB5000 groups. Although infections were reported more frequently for the Impella 5.0/LD, this most likely due to more rigorous contemporary process of reporting adverse events, including all infections (urinary tract infections, streptococcus throat, etc.) in the Impella Registry. None of the infections was determined to be related to the device.

Table 6.19 Site-reported adverse events (to discharge) by classification

Adverse Events	Impella 2.5 (n=189)	Impella CP (n=111)	Impella 5.0/LD (n=24)	AB5000/ BVS/AB (n=115)	p-value
Death	55.03% (104/189)	54.05% (60/111)	50.00% (12/24)	69.57% (80/115)	0.036
CVA/Stroke	2.65% (5/189)	3.60% (4/111)	4.17% (1/24)	21.74% (25/115)	<.001
TIA	0.00% (0/189)	0.00% (0/111)	0.00% (0/24)	5.22% (6/115)	0.002
Acute Renal Dysfunction	27.51% (52/189)	31.53% (35/111)	41.67% (10/24)	25.22% (29/115)	0.355
Hemolysis	8.47% (16/189)	10.81% (12/111)	8.33% (2/24)	10.43% (12/115)	0.900
Acute Hepatic Failure	10.58% (20/189)	16.22% (18/111)	12.50% (3/24)	11.30% (13/115)	0.516
Bleeding	19.58% (37/189)	17.12% (19/111)	41.67% (10/24)	37.39% (43/115)	<.001
Infection	17.46% (33/189)	13.51% (15/111)	50.00% (12/24)	26.96% (31/115)	<.001

Table 6.20 Site-reported adverse events (to discharge) by classification (continued)

Adverse Events	Impella 2.5 (n=189)	Impella CP (n=111)	Impella 5.0/LD (n=24)	AB5000/ BVS/AB (n=115)	p-value
MSOF	1.59% (3/189)	0.00% (0/111)	4.17% (1/24)	18.26% (21/115)	<.001
Respiratory Dysfunction/Failure	10.05% (19/189)	14.41% (16/111)	41.67% (10/24)	22.61% (26/115)	<.001
Supraventricular Arrhythmia	5.82% (11/189)	6.31% (7/111)	16.67% (4/24)	7.83% (9/115)	0.253
Other	19.58% (37/189)	18.02% (20/111)	41.67% (10/24)	27.83% (32/115)	0.032

CVA: Cerebrovascular accident; TIA: Transient Ischemic Attack; MSOF: Multi System Organ Failure

Overall, the benchmark analysis reveals that AMICS patients in the Impella Registry had better outcomes to discharge than the patients in the AB5000 Registry. This is likely due to the increased risk with mortality and morbidity associated with a prolonged support and invasiveness that comes with the AB5000 technology. The comparison also showed that the rates of complications were lower in the U.S. Impella Registry cohort. This may have been a result of the less invasive approach for insertion and operation, shorter duration of support, ease of use to allow earlier mobilization of patients and a reduced ICU and hospital stay.

HEMODYNAMIC EFFECTIVENESS RESULTS

The Impella Catheters directly unload the left ventricle (LV) and propel blood forward, from the left ventricle into the aorta, in a manner most consistent with normal physiology. Impella provides both an active forward flow[2,3], and systemic aortic pressure (AOP) contribution,[1,2,4] leading to an effective increase in mean arterial pressure (MAP) and overall cardiac power output (CPO).[1,5] Combined with LV unloading, Impella support reduces end-diastolic volume and pressure (EDV, EDP)[1,2] and augments peak coronary flow,[1,2,6,7] leading to a favorable alteration of the balance of myocardial oxygen supply and demand. This cascade of hemodynamic effects has been described in the literature[8] and validated in computational modeling and a variety of pre-clinical and clinical studies.[1-7]

As initial clinical evidence of the hemodynamic benefits of Impella support, results from a clinical trial with the Impella 5.0 and Impella LD are provided. The study, RECOVER I, was an FDA-approved prospective, single-arm study that evaluated the safety, hemodynamic benefit and feasibility for the Impella 5.0 and the Impella LD in a post-cardiotomy settings. As part of the study, hemodynamic data was collected at baseline and over time to evaluate the robustness of the hemodynamic support with the Impella 5.0 and Impella LD devices in patients experiencing hemodynamic compromise/cardiogenic shock post cardiac surgery. Cardiac output (CO), cardiac index (CI), mean arterial pressure (MAP), cardiac power output (CPO), cardiac power index (CPI) and pulmonary artery diastolic blood pressure (PAd) measurements were collected. The data collected showed an immediate improvement of the hemodynamics of PCCS patients post device implant, as shown in Figure 6.22. In addition, concomitantly, as patients' hemodynamics improved, a rapid and sustained weaning of inotropic and pressor support was also observed, as given Figure 6.23.

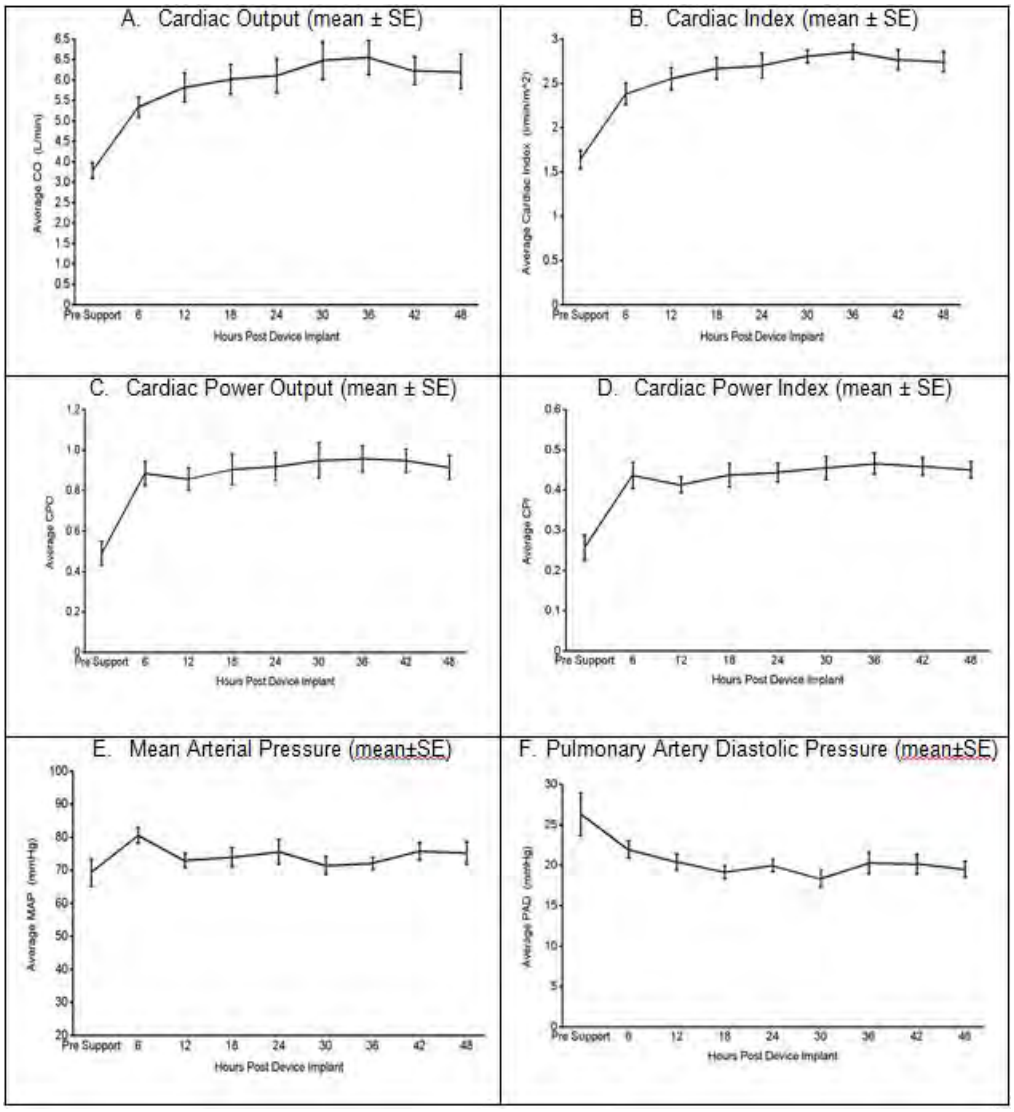


Figure 6.22 mprovement in patient hemodynamics (from baseline to 48hrs post device implant) for RECOVER I patients

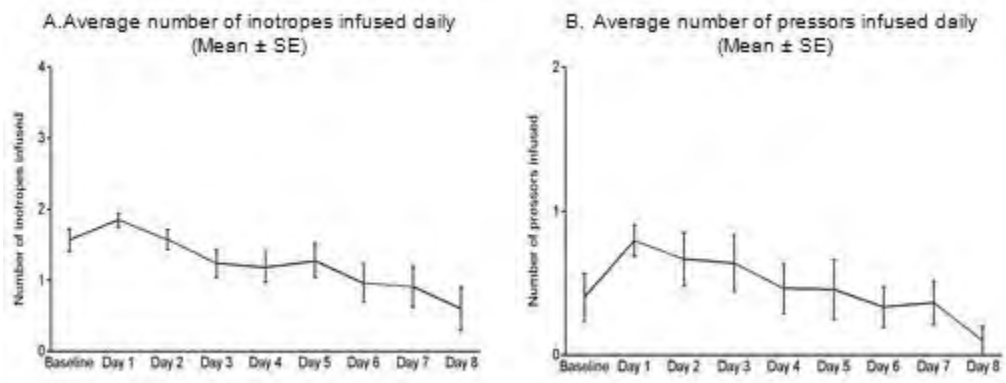


Figure 6.23 Decrease in inotropes and pressors (post-device placement) for RECOVER I patients

Additional hemodynamic and other clinical data was provided from both an FDA approved prospective randomized study (PROTECT II) and real-world use data to further corroborate the hemodynamic benefits afforded by use of the Impella devices.

LITERATURE REVIEW

The literature review provided has three components. The first component is a review and characterization of the use of Impella to treat AMICS patients. The second component is a comparison of the results of the Impella literature review to a literature review of Abiomed's PMA approved surgical VADs (the BVS and AB5000) in AMICS. The third component is a literature review of the use of ECMO in this population, since ECMO is used as an alternative device to support these patients as well, albeit off-label.

The Impella review encompassed a large body of scientific evidence with over 315 publications available for review. The filtering of these publications resulted in over 692 patients in 17 publications for the relevant use of Impella devices, which included 469 patients in 9 publications treated for this specific proposed indication for use. The literature review provides further insight into the use of the Impella devices in routine clinical practice.

The literature analysis shows that AMICS patients, who are deemed to require emergent hemodynamic support, are, in general, older and present with high-risk comorbidities, poor functional status and greatly depressed cardiac function. Overall, the use of Impella devices to support AMICS patients appears to be safe and effective, based on the studies published in the literature. The survival rates and morbidities also appear to be favorable for use of the Impella devices as compared to the surgical VADs.

The review of ECMO in these same patients yielded a mean survival to either discharge of 30 days at 43% (range 29% to 59%) representing 6 studies and over 265 patients. The results of the ECMO review indicate that the use of ECMO, which is a much more invasive system, yielded a higher morbidity profile during support than use of the less invasive Impella devices for a potential comparable or less favorable survival outcome.

Overall, the literature analysis provides further reasonable assurance of safety and effectiveness of the Impella devices in the proposed indications for use.

CARDIAC SHOCK AFTER OPEN HEART SURGERY - SUMMARY OF PRIMARY CLINICAL STUDIES

Clinical evidence was provided to support the overall safety and effectiveness of the Impella devices to treat the indications for use provided above. Specifically, the results of the RECOVER I study were provided as primary clinical evidence. RECOVER I was an FDA approved prospective, single-arm study that evaluated the safety, hemodynamic benefit and feasibility for the Impella 5.0 and the Impella LD in a post-cardiotomy setting.

RECOVER I was a single arm study designed to evaluate the safety, hemodynamic potency and outcomes of the Impella 5.0/LD in patients presenting with cardiogenic shock or low cardiac output syndrome post weaning from cardiopulmonary bypass. Details of the study design are below.

CLINICAL INCLUSION AND EXCLUSION CRITERIA

Inclusion Criteria

1. Signed Informed Consent

2. Age Eligible ($18 \leq \text{Age} \leq 75$)

3. Body Surface Area ($1.5\ m^2 \leq \text{BSA} \leq 2.5\ m^2$)

4. Received stable infusion of one (1) high dose inotrope or two (2) medium dose inotropes

5. Cardiac Index ($1.3\ \text{L/min/m}^2 \leq \text{Cardiac Index} \leq 2.2\ \text{L/min/m}^2$) after the respective minimum inotrope infusion time

6. Elevated Filling Pressures: $30 \geq \text{PCWP} \geq 20$ mmHg OR $35 \geq \text{PA}$

7. Diastolic ≥ 25 mmHg

8. Time to enrollment within 48 hours of weaning from bypass

Exclusion Criteria

1. Concomitant enrollment in another investigational device or drug trial that did not complete the required follow-up

2. BUN ≥ 100 mg/dL

3. Renal dysfunction

4. Hepatic dysfunction

5. Presence of any .cardiac assist device (other than an IABP)

6. Right ventricular failure

7. Evidence of any vascular disease that would have precluded placement of the device (e.g., severely calcified vessel)

8. Evidence of LV or RV thrombus

9. Documented presence of aortic insufficiency

10. Aortic valve stenosis/calcification

11. Presence of mechanical aortic valve

12. Obstructive, hypertrophic cardiomyopathy

13. Evidence of uncorrected Ventricular Septal Defect or Atrial Septal Defect (VSD/ASD) or Patent Foramen Ovale (PFO)

14. Mechanical manifestation of AMI (e.g., ventricular septal rupture, papillary muscle rupture)

15. Any disorder causing fragility of blood cells or hemolysis

16. Patient actively receiving cardiopulmonary resuscitation(CPR) or any resuscitative maneuver for cardiac arrest

17. Sustained or non-sustained ventricular tachycardia/ ventricular fibrillation (VT/VF), unresponsive to treatment

18. Other co-morbid condition(s) that could have limited the patient's ability to participate in the study or impact its scientific integrity

Patients were assessed at 30, 60, 180 days and 1 year. During the assessments, clinical data was obtained to assess the endpoints below.

CLINICAL ENDPOINTS

Primary Endpoints

- Safety - Frequency of Major Adverse Events:
  - Death
  - Stroke
- Efficacy - Survival to:
  - Recovery defined as 30-day survival post-explant or hospital discharge (whichever is longer) with no other mechanical support or IABP
  - Bridge-to-other-therapy defined as induction of anesthesia for surgery for cardiac transplantation OR approved Ventricular Assist Device

Secondary Endpoints

- Safety
  - Frequency of other Adverse Events (at 30, 60, 180, 365 days)
- Efficacy
  - Improved Hemodynamics– Post-device implant improvements in hemodynamics were to be demonstrated without additional adjunctive inotropic or vasoactive medications versus baseline
  - Device Placement and Technical Success
  - Time-to-Recovery
  - Reduction in Inotropic/Pressor Support

ACCOUNTABILITY OF PMA COHORT

The study enrolled 17 patients at 7 enrolling sites from October 18, 2006 to June 4, 2008. The overall enrollment for the RECOVER I trial is shown in Figure 6.24.

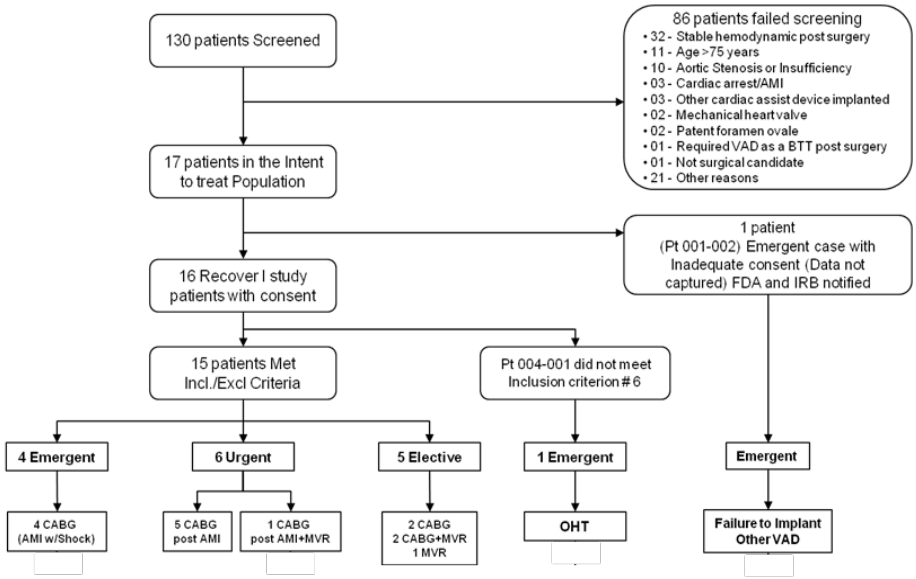


Figure 6.24 RECOVER I enrollment

AMI: Acute Myocardial Infarction; CABG: Coronary Artery Bypass Grafting; FDA: Food and Drug Administration; MVR: Mitral Valve Repair or Replacement; OHT: Orthotopic Heart Transplant; VAD: Ventricular Assist Device

STUDY BASELINE PARAMETERS

The baseline patient characteristics and hemodynamics are provided below.

Table 6.21 Baseline patient characteristics

Patient Characteristic	RECOVER I Patients (N=16)	[95% CI]
Age		
Mean±SD (N)	58.38±8.94 (16)	[53.61,63.14]
Gender		
Male	81.25% (13/16)	[54.35%,95.95%]
Weight (kg)		
Mean±SD (N)	90.96±23.03 (16)	[78.69,103.23]
Height (cm)		
Mean±SD (N)	174.21±10.36 (16)	[168.68,179.73]
BSA (m^2)		
Mean±SD (N)	2.05±0.28 (16)	[1.90,2.20]
Race		
Caucasian	50.00% (8/16)	[24.65%,75.35%]
African American	31.25% (5/16)	[11.02%,58.66%]
Asian Pacific	18.75% (3/16)	[4.05%,45.65%]

Table 6.21 Baseline patient characteristics (continued)

Patient Characteristic	RECOVER I Patients (N=16)	[95% CI]
Medical History		
CAD	81.25% (13/16)	[54.35%,95.95%]
Unstable Angina	43.75% (7/16)	[19.75%,70.12%]
Myocardial Infarction	68.75% (11/16)	[41.34%,88.98%]
CHF	75.00% (12/16)	[47.62%,92.73%]
Valve Disease	46.67% (7/15)	[21.27%,73.41%]
Pacemaker/AICD	12.50% (2/16)	[1.55%,38.35%]
Peripheral Vascular Disease	14.29% (2/14)	[1.78%,42.81%]
Prior Stroke	6.25% (1/16)	[0.16%,30.23%]
Diabetes Mellitus	37.50% (6/16)	[15.20%,64.57%]
Hypertension	62.50% (10/16)	[35.43%,84.80%]
COPD	12.50% (2/16)	[1.55%,38.35%]
NYHA Class		
I	8.33% (1/12)	[0.21%,38.48%]
II	16.67% (2/12)	[2.09%,48.41%]
III	25.00% (3/12)	[5.49%,57.19%]
IV	50.00% (6/12)	[21.09%,78.91%]
III or IV	75.00% (9/12)	[42.81%,94.51%]
Prior Cardiac Procedures		
Thrombolytic Therapy	18.75% (3/16)	[4.05%,45.65%]
PCI	33.33% (5/15)	[11.82%,61.62%]
CABG	12.50% (2/16)	[1.55%,38.35%]
Valve Surgery	0.00% (0/16)	[0.00%,20.59%]
Transplant Surgery	6.25% (1/16)	[0.16%,30.23%]
Left Ventricular Ejection Fraction (%)		
Mean±SD (N)	23.47±7.04 (15)	[19.57,27.36]
Logistic EuroScore (%)		
Mean±SD (N)	36.08±26.77 (16)	[21.82,50.34]

Table 6.22 Baseline patient hemodynamics

Measurements	RECOVER I Patients (N=16)	[95% CI]
Heart Rate (bpm)		
Mean±SD (N)	87.3±16.1 (16)	[78.7, 95.9]
Systolic Arterial Pressure (mmHg)		
Mean±SD (N)	105.4±20.4 (16)	[94.6, 116.3]
Diastolic Arterial Pressure (mmHg)		
Mean±SD (N)	61.0±13.9 (16)	[53.6, 68.4]
Mean Arterial Pressure (mmHg)		
Mean±SD (N)	69.3±15.0 (13)	[60.2, 78.4]
PCWP (mmHg)		
Mean±SD (N)	14.0±. (1)	N/A

Table 6.22 Baseline patient hemodynamics (continued)

Measurements	RECOVER I Patients (N=16)	[95% CI]
PA Systolic (mmHg)		
Mean±SD (N)	45.3±14.8 (16)	[37.4, 53.2]
PA Diastolic (mmHg)		
Mean±SD (N)	26.3±10.6 (16)	[20.7, 32.0]
Cardiac Index (l/min/m²)		
Mean±SD (N)	1.6±0.4 (12)	[1.4, 1.9]
CVP (mmHg)		
Mean±SD (N)	13.9±6.1 (15)	[10.5, 17.2]
Number of Inotropes		
Mean±SD (N)	1.56±0.63 (16)	[1.23, 1.90]
Number of Pressors		
Mean±SD (N)	0.40±0.63 (15)	[0.05, 0.75]

SAFETY AND EFFECTIVENESS RESULTS

Data for the 16 patients, who were consented for the RECOVER I study, was analyzed. The primary endpoint (survival) was met in 88% of the cases. A Kaplan-Meier curve for survival to 1 year is provided in Figure 6.25. In addition, the implant of the Impella 5.0 and the Impella LD in the RECOVER I was successful in all but one patient. The average support time was 3.7 ± 3 days, with the range of support from 1.7 days to 12.6 days. The pump provided an overall average flow during support of 3.8 ± 0.6 L/min.

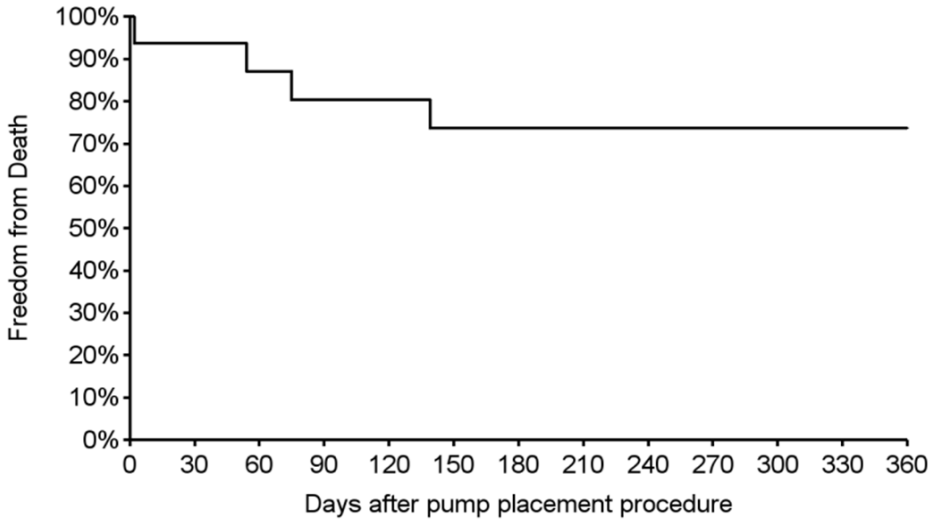


Figure 6.25 Kaplan-Meier survival curve for freedom from death (to 1 year)

There were no Unanticipated Adverse Device Effects (UADEs) over the duration of the RECOVER I trial. There were two (2) serious adverse events (SAEs) (each effecting one (1) patient), which were adjudicated by a Medical Monitor (per protocol) as being potentially device related. One SAE was an incidence of hemolysis, which fully resolved post-explant. A second SAE was an incidence of sepsis or bacteremia, which was treated with antibiotics and resolved.

In addition, data was obtained to evaluate the device safety with respect to its placement across the aortic valve. A total of 50 echocardiograms available on 14 subjects were analyzed by an independent CoreLab research group. The analysis showed that there was no evidence of structural damage to the heart during use or in any subsequent follow up. These results were also submitted to FDA in the 510(k) submission for the Impella 5.0 and Impella LD (K08331), which was cleared in 2009.

Overall, the RECOVER I study demonstrated that the Impella 5.0 and Impella LD could be used in the selected patient group, resulting in:

- A high survival rate of treated patients
- A consistent and reproducible hemodynamic support
- A rapid wean of patients off of inotropes and pressors
- An excellent device safety profile with a low rate of SAEs and other device related morbidities.

DEVICE FAILURES AND REPLACEMENTS

There were no device failures or replacements reported during the study.

FINANCIAL DISCLOSURE

The Financial Disclosure by Clinical Investigators regulation (21 CFR 54) requires applicants who submit a marketing application to include certain information concerning the compensation to, and financial interests and arrangement of, any clinical investigator conducting clinical studies covered by the regulation. This clinical study included 7 investigators. Neither of the clinical investigators had disclosable financial interests/arrangements as defined in sections 54.2(a), (b), (c), and (f). The information provided does not raise any questions about the reliability of the data.

SUMMARY OF SUPPLEMENTAL CLINICAL INFORMATION

Supplemental data was provided to demonstrate safety and effectiveness of the Impella devices during use. Results from the Impella Registry for the real-world use of the Impella catheters were provided. The sponsor also provided a benchmark comparison of the Impella Registry data to a comparable registry dataset for its surgical VAD, the AB5000 Ventricle (PMA approved for a similar indication). As further evidence, a detailed literature review was provided to support the overall safety and efficacy of the Impella devices.

RESULTS

The Impella Registry is an ongoing, multi-center, retrospective, observational registry for collection of de-identified data for patients treated with the Impella 2.5, Impella CP, Impella 5.0 and Impella LD Support Systems. The registry, which was started by Abiomed in 2009, is open for participation by qualifying sites in the U.S. and Canada. Since the registry was started to date a total 59 sites have participated. As of June 30, 2015, there were 40 open sites. The sites include high and low volume centers, academic (teaching) and non-academic hospitals, public and private institutions as well as for profit and not for profit centers, almost entirely from the United States, thus providing a good representation of U.S. clinical practice. In addition, Abiomed used the Impella Registry as supporting evidence in its original PMA (P140003) application for the Impella 2.5 System. After reviewing the data, FDA stated (In the PMA's SSED):

> *"Use of the device in a comparable patient group, as collected retrospectively via Abiomed's USpella (Impella Registry) database, showed results similar to those obtained in the PROTECT II clinical trial for overall patient outcomes and hemodynamic support during use."*

The data collection from the Impella Registry includes IRB approval, complete data monitoring, adverse events (AEs) monitoring and CEC adjudication of AEs. All data is entered electronically by the sites. For this PMA, the time during which the Impella Registry data was collected is shown in Figure 6.26. Eligible patients were those who were reported in the Impella Registry, underwent open-heart surgery and required mechanical circulatory support with Impella devices within 48 hours post-surgery.

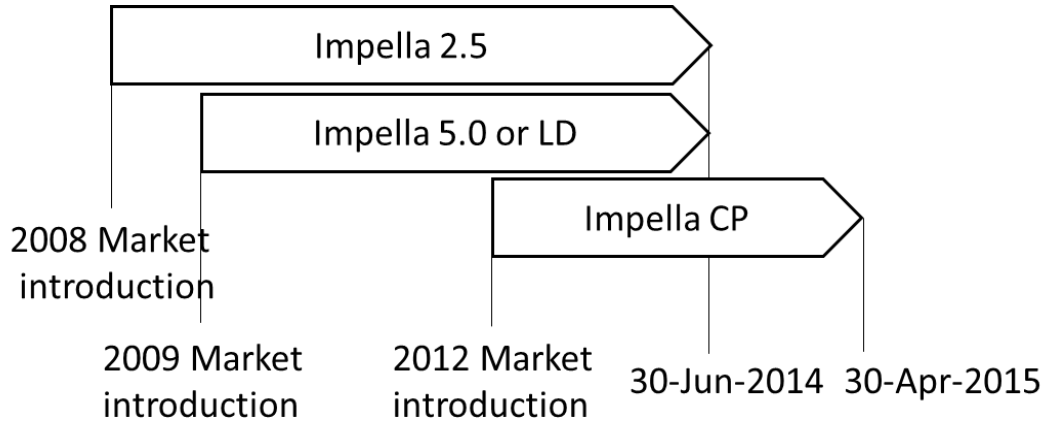


Figure 6.26 Time intervals for Impella implants data collection by type of device

Cases were initially identified using Abiomed's commercial patient tracking system. Using this method, seventy-seven (77) Impella cases were enrolled into the U.S. Impella Registry for this analysis. These included 19 Impella 2.5 cases, 14 Impella CP cases and 44 (combined) Impella 5.0 and Impella LD cases.

The overall results (Kaplan-Meier curve estimates) for survival (to 30 days) for the patients are shown in Figure 6.27. Figure 6.28 provides the results for the different devices used. Overall outcome results appear favorable for this sick patient group, particularly when compared to the historical results for similar patients (see the benchmark and literature review sections below).

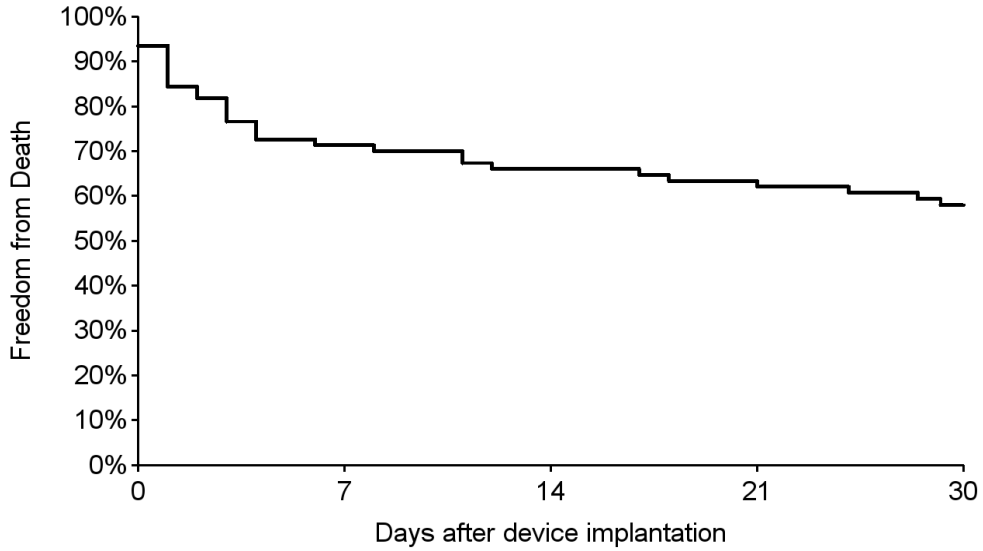


Figure 6.27 Kaplan-Meier curve estimates for 30 day survival – all patients cohort

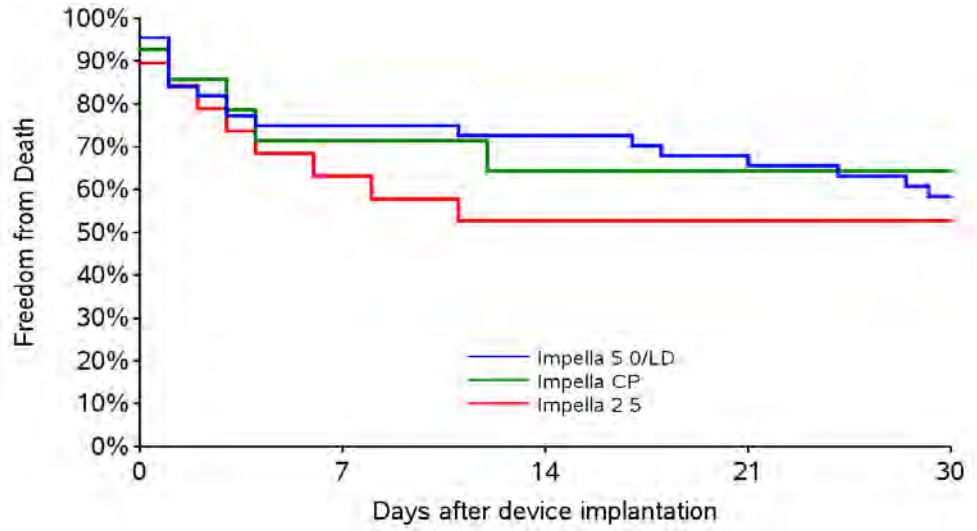


Figure 6.28 Kaplan-Meier curve estimates for 30 day survival – for difference devices

In addition, analyses were completed using two different classification schemes. In one analysis, Classification A, the patients were categorized in three (3) different groups based on an incremental ascending risk for mortality, which were: (1) Post-cardiotomy Low Cardiac Output Syndrome (LCOS), (2) Post-cardiotomy Cardiogenic Shock (PCCS-CS) and (3) Post-cardiotomy Failure to Wean (PCCS-FW). In the other analysis, Classification B, which was specifically

requested by FDA, the patients were categorized in three (3) different groups, to evaluate separately patients that received Impella before, during the operating time (during the surgical procedure) and after the surgery. The groups included in each category are shown in Figure 6.29.

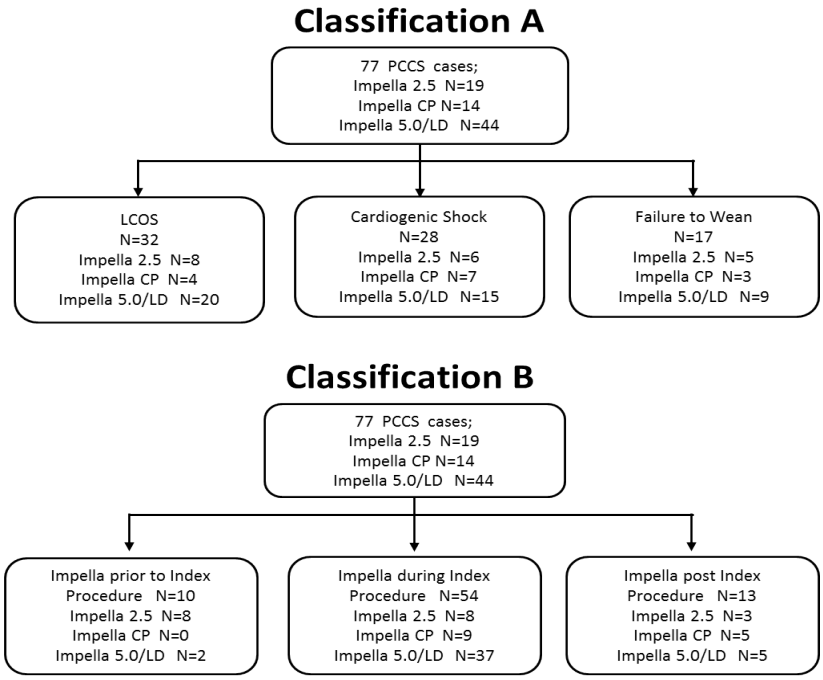


Figure 6.29 Groups used for each classification analysis

For Classification A, the overall results (Kaplan-Meier curve estimates) for survival (to 30 days) for the patients are shown in Figure 6.30. Figures 6.31, 6.29 and 6.32 give the results for the different devices used. The results show that high-risk patients in whom hemodynamic support is initiated early prior to surgery (LCOS group) tend to do better than those without support prior to surgery and who develop cardiogenic shock post-weaning from CPB or those who cannot wean from CPB.

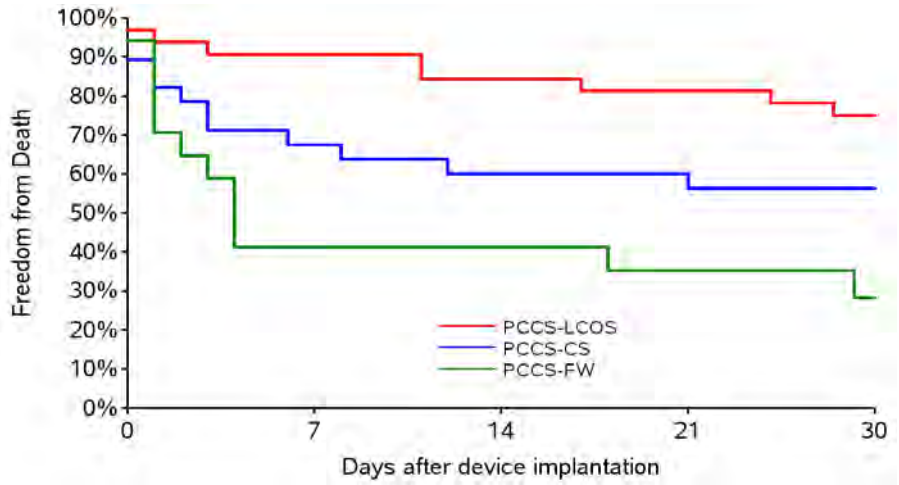


Figure 6.30 Kaplan-Meier curve for 30-day survival using Classification A (all patients)

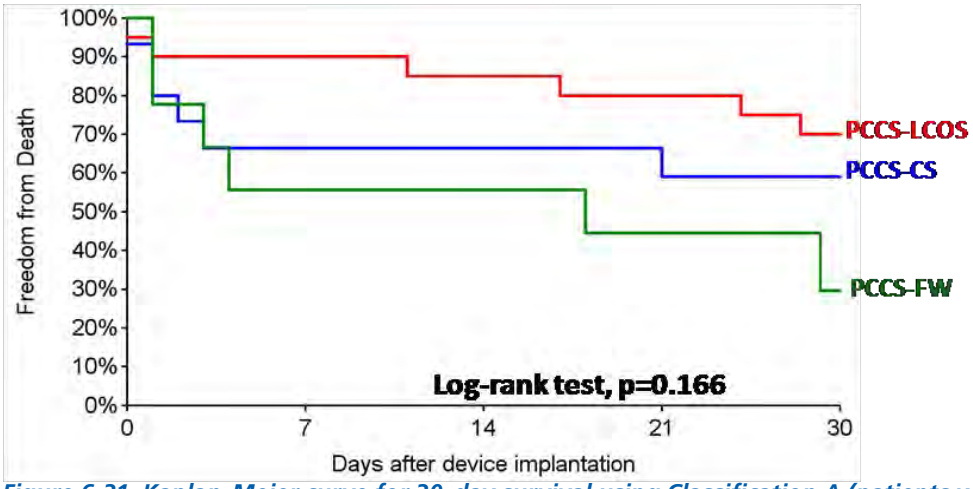


Figure 6.31 Kaplan-Meier curve for 30-day survival using Classification A (patients with Impella 5.0/LD)

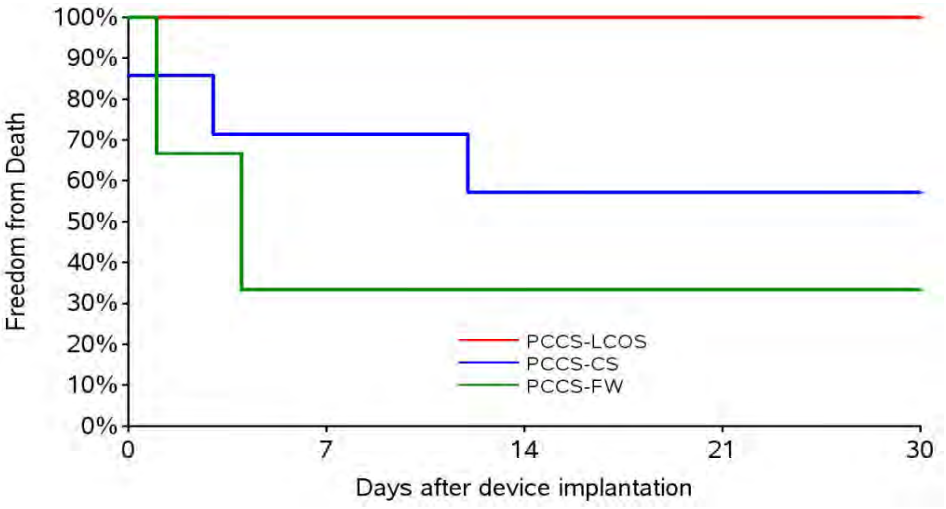


Figure 6.32 Kaplan-Meier curve for 30-day survival using Classification A (patients with Impella CP)

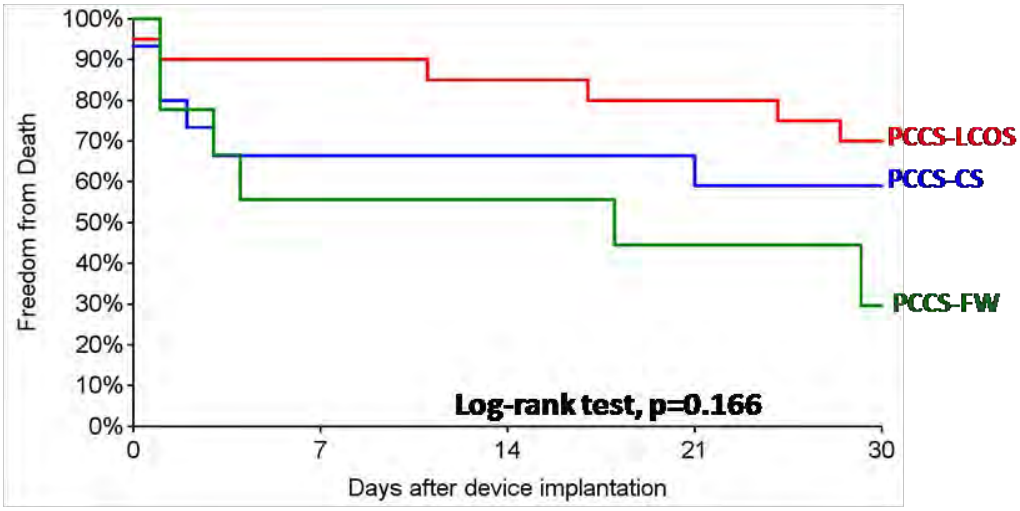


Figure 6.33 Kaplan-Meier curve for 30-day survival using Classification A (patients with Impella 2.5)

For Classification B, the overall results (Kaplan-Meier curve estimates) for survival (to 30 days) for the patients are shown in Figure 6.34. Figures 6.35, 6.36 and 6.37 give the results for the different devices used. Using this classification, the trend suggest that patients with support prior to the procedure have better outcomes, which mirrors the results observed with Classification A.

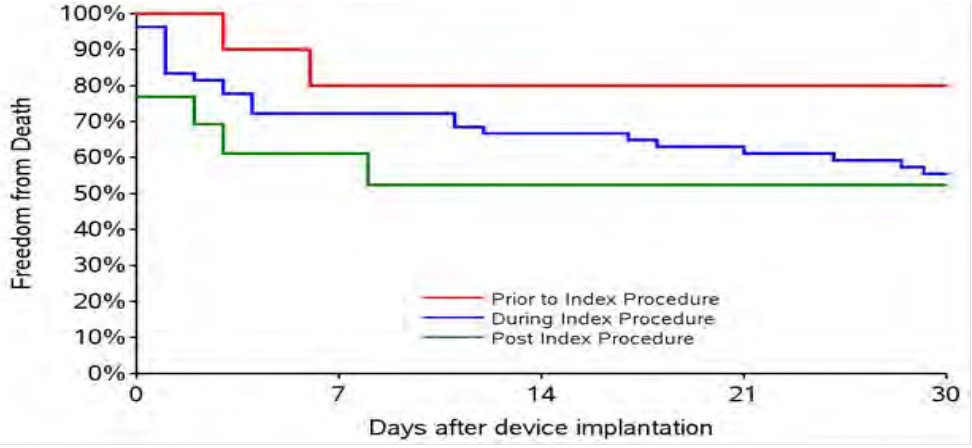


Figure 6.34 Kaplan-Meier curve for 30-day survival using Classification B (all patients)

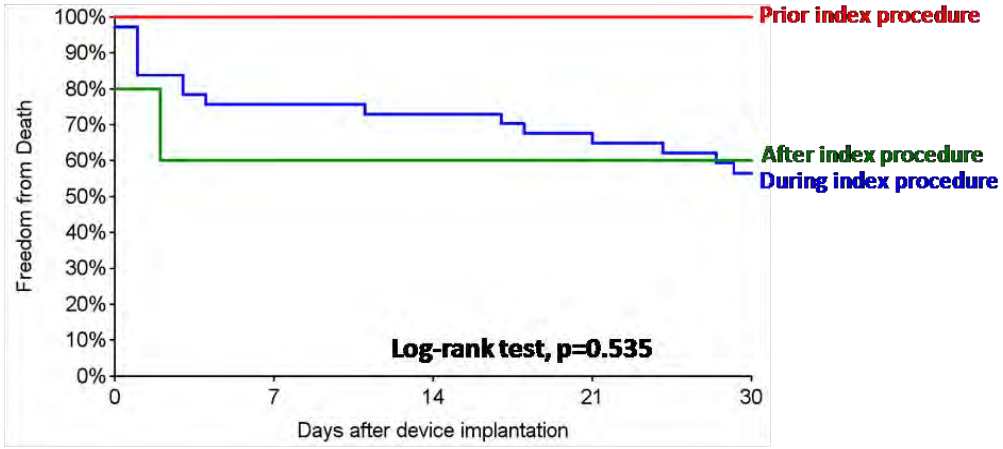


Figure 6.35 Kaplan-Meier curve for 30-day survival using Classification B (patients with Impella 5.0/LD)

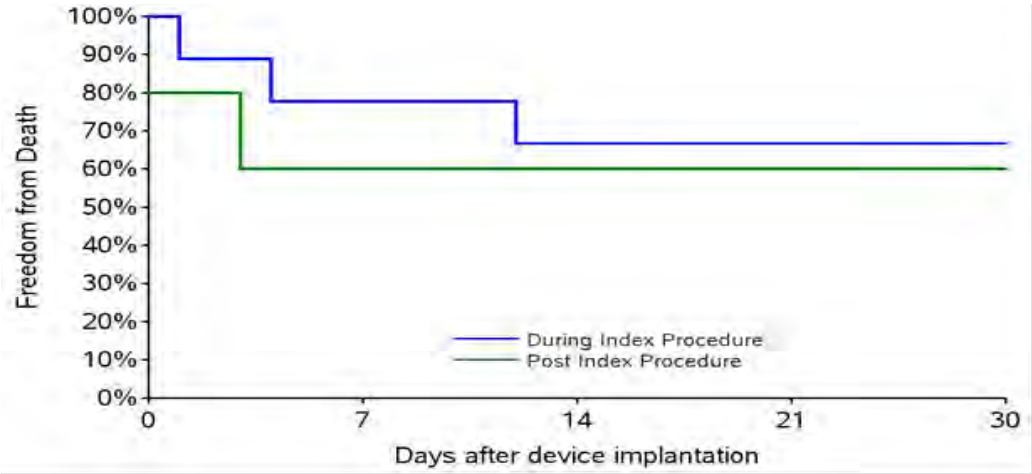


Figure 6.36 Kaplan-Meier curve for 30-day survival using Classification B (patients with Impella CP)

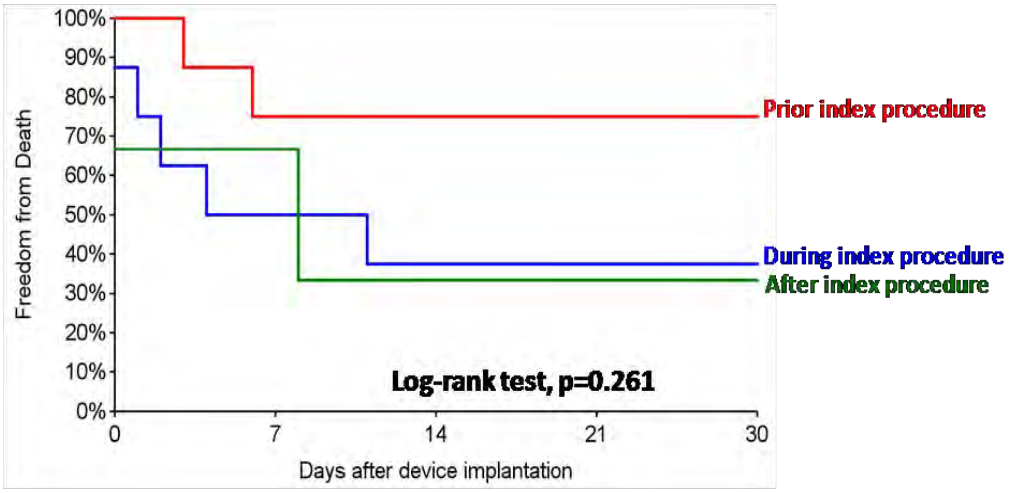


Figure 6.37 Kaplan-Meier curve for 30-day survival using Classification B (patients with Impella 2.5)

The Impella Registry data provides a real-world perspective on the use of the device in routine practice in the proposed clinical setting for the Impella devices. Although some limitations exist with respect to the interpretation of some of the data, the Impella Registry data showed the following:

- Patients that require hemodynamic support in the setting of PCCS are sick and present with a broad spectrum of pre-existing co-morbidities and risk factors
- The overall outcomes are favorable
- Despite the limited sample size, the data suggests that Impella 5.0 and Impella LD patients do somewhat better than Impella 2.5 (in the proposed clinical setting)

In order to provide a benchmark for the Impella devices in a comparable clinical setting, Abiomed analyzed the results from its real-world registry for the AB5000 Ventricle. The AB5000 Ventricle was PMA approved (P900023/S038) in 2003 as a temporary VAD for use to treat PCCS. The AB5000 Registry was a retrospective registry, which included data collected from U.S. sites between October 3, 2003 and December 11, 2007. The AB5000 Registry included IRB approval and data for demographics, procedural and hemodynamic characteristics, outcomes and adverse events.

To better match the two cohorts, AB5000 patients who either received bi-ventricular or right ventricular support were excluded from the benchmark analysis. The AB5000 Registry included 1234 patients (387 of which received only LVAD). Of those patients, 89 were classified as PCCS patients; however, only 79 cases had enough data to confirm the severity of the presentation (to serve as the AB5000 benchmark cohort against the Impella Registry cohort). The Impella Registry benchmark included Impella 5.0/LD patients that presented either with PCCS-CS or PCCS-FW. The LCOS patients were excluded from the Impella cohort so the analysis is conservative (considering the invasiveness of the AB5000, it is very unlikely that it (i.e., the AB5000) was used for LCOS patients). The Impella 2.5 and Impella CP patients were also excluded because it was felt that both the AB5000 and the Impella 5.0/LD provide full flow (as opposed to the Impella 2.5 and Impella CP) that provides partial flow. The selection of cases for the benchmark comparison is provided schematically in Figure 6.38.

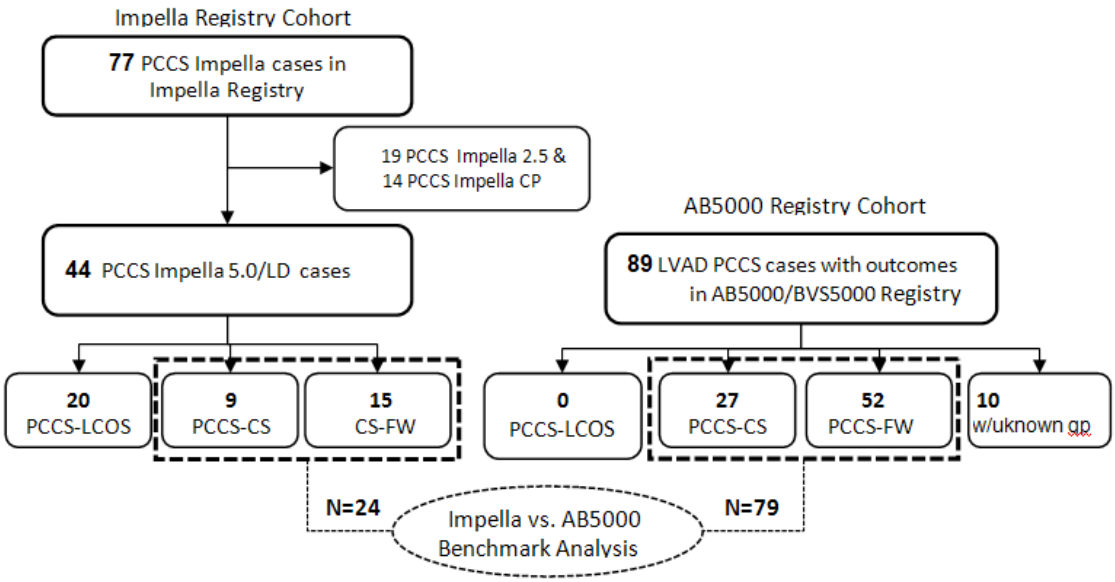


Figure 6.38 Flow diagram of the distribution of the AB5000 LVAD PCCS patient cohort

The benchmark analysis included the overall survival to 30 days and to discharge in the PCCS. The 30 day Kaplan-Meier estimates are provided in Figure 6.39. For the survival to discharge, the Impella survival rate (50%) was statistically higher that the AB5000 survival (15%, p=0.002), as shown in Table 6.23.

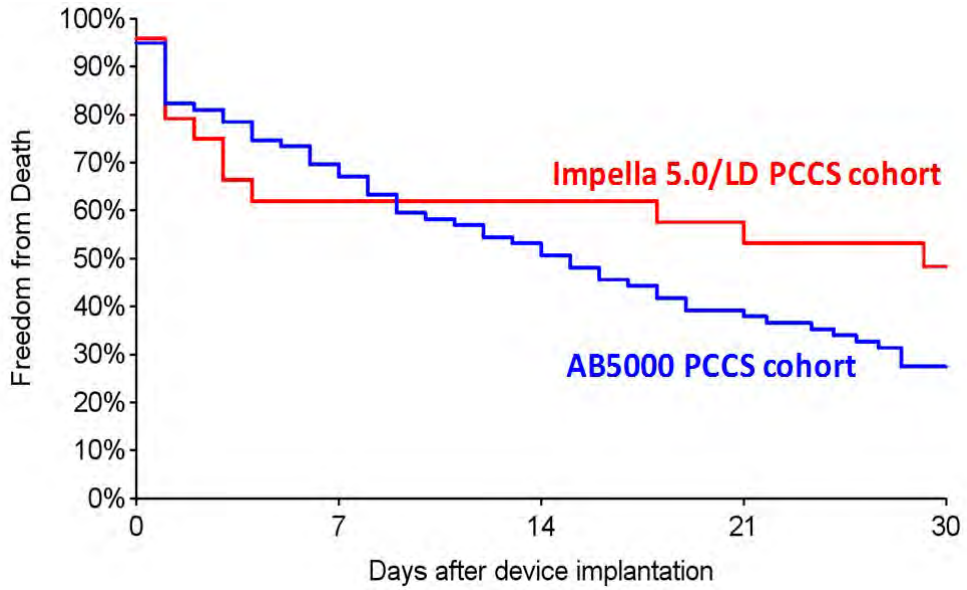


Figure 6.39 Kaplan-Meier curve estimates for 30 day survival

Table 6.23 Site-reported adverse events (to discharge) by classification

In-Hospital Adverse Events	Impella 5.0/LD Patients (n=24)	AB5000 Patients (n=79)	p-value
Death	50.00% (12/24)	84.81% (67/79)	0.002
CVA/Stroke	4.17% (1/24)	20.25% (16/79)	0.112
TIA	0.00% (0/24)	2.53% (2/79)	1.000
Acute Renal Dysfunction/Failure	41.67% (10/24)	29.11% (23/79)	0.318
Hemolysis	8.33% (2/24)	6.33% (5/79)	0.663
Acute Hepatic Failure	16.67% (4/24)	18.99% (15/79)	1.000
Bleeding	45.83% (11/24)	41.77% (33/79)	0.815
Infection	37.50% (9/24)	22.78% (18/79)	0.187
Supraventricular Arrhythmia	12.50% (3/24)	7.59% (6/79)	0.432
Respiratory Dysfunction/Failure	33.33% (8/24)	17.72% (14/79)	0.153
Sepsis	4.17% (1/24)	0.00% (0/79)	0.068
Multi System Organ Failure	8.33% (2/24)	35.44% (28/79)	0.010
Other	29.17% (7/24)	45.57% (36/79)	0.167

CVA: Cerebrovascular accident; TIA: Transient Ischemic Attack

In addition, the rates of site-reported in-hospital adverse events, which were captured in both registry CRFs, were compared. The results of this comparison are provided in Table 6.7. Of note, the rate of multi-system organ failure was lower in the Impella Registry PCCS group and the stroke rate was also numerically lower compared with the AB5000 PCCS benchmark cohort. The other site-reported adverse events including bleeding, hemolysis and infection were comparable between the two cohorts. Given the clinical presentation of these patients (all undergoing major cardiac surgery), similar bleeding and infection rates are expected.

Overall, Abiomed's benchmark analysis revealed that post-cardiotomy patients in the Impella Registry are comparable with the post-cardiotomy patients treated with the AB5000 device. Although the devices provided similar amount of circulatory support, it appears that the patients

in the Impella Registry had better outcomes than the patients in the AB5000 Registry.

HEMODYNAMIC EFFECTIVENESS RESULTS

The Impella Catheters directly unload the left ventricle (LV) and propel blood forward, from the left ventricle into the aorta, in a manner most consistent with normal physiology. Impella provides both an active forward flow and systemic aortic pressure (AOP) contribution, leading to an effective increase in mean arterial pressure (MAP) and overall cardiac power output (CPO). Combined with LV unloading, Impella support reduces end-diastolic volume and pressure (EDV, EDP) and augments peak coronary flow, leading to a favorable alteration of the balance of myocardial oxygen supply and demand. This cascade of hemodynamic effects has been described in the literature and validated in computational modeling and a variety of pre-clinical and clinical studies.

For the RECOVER I study (see above), hemodynamic data was collected at baseline and over time to evaluate the robustness of the hemodynamic support with the Impella 5.0 and Impella LD devices in patients experiencing hemodynamic compromise or cardiogenic shock post cardiac surgery. The data collected showed an immediate improvement of the hemodynamics of PCCS patients post device implant, as shown in Figure 6.40. In addition, concomitantly, as patients' hemodynamics improved, a rapid and sustained weaning of inotropic and pressor support was also observed, which is shown in Figure 6.41.

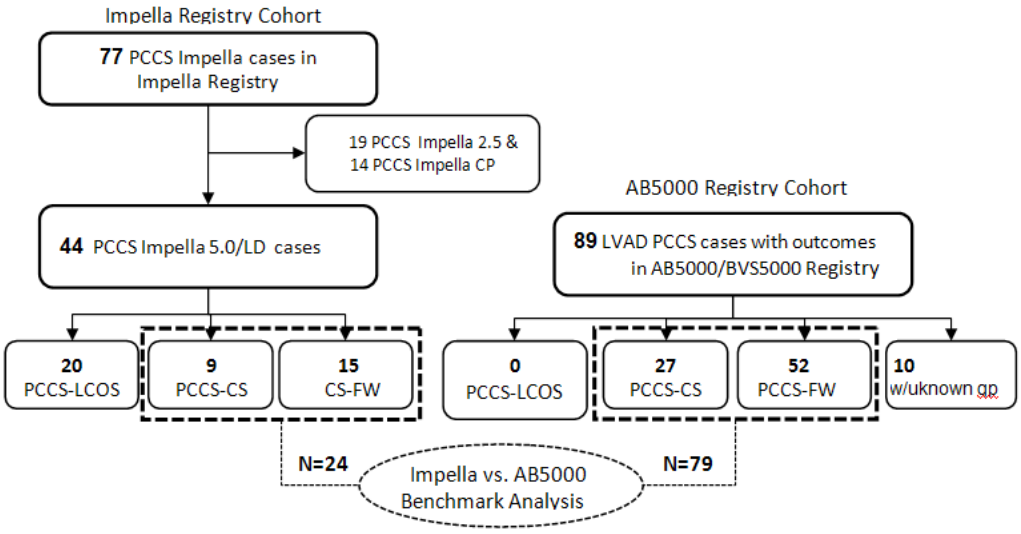


Figure 6.40 Improvement in patient hemodynamics (from baseline to 48 hr post-device implant) for RECOVER I patients

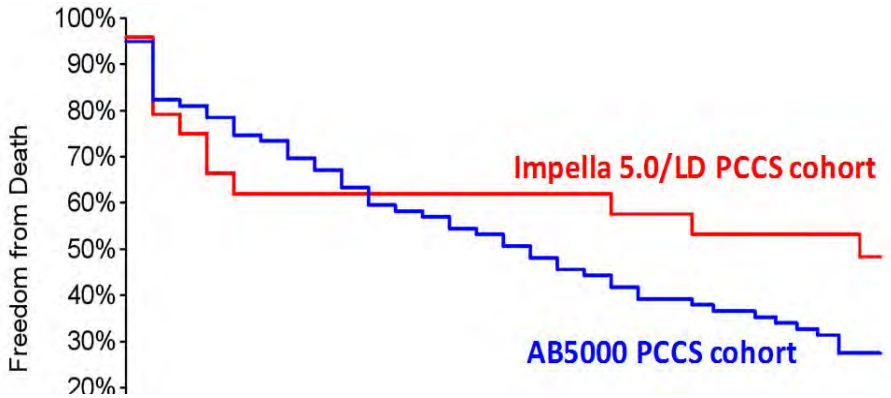


Figure 6.41 Decrease in inotropes and pressors (post-device placement) for RECOVER I patients

Additional prospective clinical study data was provided to demonstrate a similar hemodynamic effect for the Impella 2.5 device.

LITERATURE REVIEW

The literature review provided has three different components. The first is a review and characterization of the use of Impella in post-cardiotomy shock. The second is a review of the BVS/AB5000 in the same patient population as this device has FDA approved for this indication. The third is a review of ECMO in this population as ECMO, even though off-label, is used as an alternate device to support these patients as well.

The Impella review encompasses a large body of scientific evidence with over 230 publications totaling over 2537 patients for the use of Impella devices. Included in this Impella PCCS analysis 223 patients treated for the proposed indications for use. The literature review provides further insight into the use of the Impella devices in routine clinical practice. The literature analysis shows that post-surgical patients, who are deemed to require urgent hemodynamic support, are in general old and present with high-risk features and co-morbidities, poor functional status and greatly depressed cardiac function. The use of Impella devices to support these patients generally appears to be safe and effective in these studies published in the literature. Also the survival rates and morbidity profiles appear to be favorable for use of the Impella as compared to surgical VADs.

Likewise, the review of ECMO in these same patients yielded a mean survival to either discharge of 30 days at 33.9% (range 8% to 53%) representing 14 studies and over 1400 patients. ECMO is a much more invasive system and more complex to use yielding a higher morbidity profile than Impella. Overall, the literature analysis provides further reasonable assurance of safety and effectiveness of the Impella devices in the proposed indications for use.

CLINICAL EXPERIENCE OVERVIEW FOR CARDIOGENIC SHOCK IN THE SETTING OF CARDIOMYOPATHY, MYOCARDITIS, AND PERIPARTUM CARDIOMYOPATHY

An additional clinical dataset was provided to demonstrate a reasonable assurance of safety and effectiveness of the Impella devices to treat a new patient population: patients suffering from ongoing cardiogenic shock that occurs in the setting of cardiomyopathy, including peripartum cardiomyopathy, or myocarditis. Specifically, clinical data from the Impella Registry for real-world use of the Impella devices to treat patients suffering from cardiomyopathy, myocarditis, or peripartum cardiomyopathy (PPCM) with ongoing cardiogenic shock was provided.

In addition, a detailed literature review of the treatment outcomes for the new patient group was used to further support the overall safety and effectiveness of the Impella devices in the new patient group.

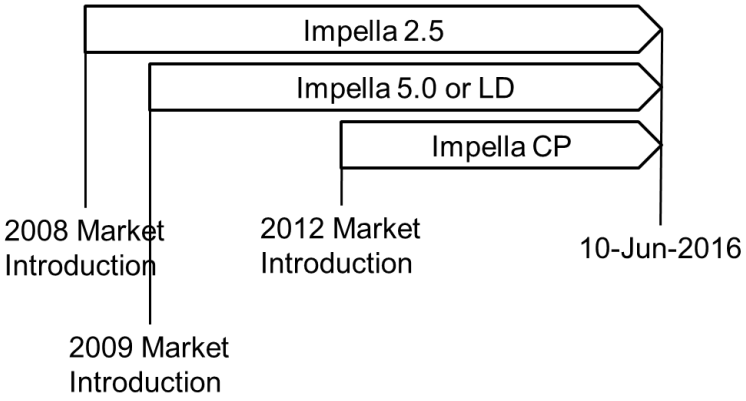
Impella Registry Results

The Impella Registry is an ongoing, multi-center, retrospective, observational registry for collection of de-identified data for patients treated with the Impella 2.5, Impella CP, Impella 5.0, Impella LD and Impella RP Support Systems. The registry, which was started by ABIOMED in 2009, is open for participation by qualifying sites in the U.S., Canada and Europe. A total of 88 sites have participated in the registry since its initiation. As of December 31, 2016, there were 58 open sites of which 44 were U.S. sites. All patients identified for this analysis were U.S. patients. The sites include high and low volume centers, academic (teaching) and non-academic hospitals, public and private institutions as well as for profit and not for profit centers, almost entirely from the United States. Data are collected at all participating sites retrospectively without pre-selection of patients, and include cardiomyopathy, myocarditis, and peripartum cardiomyopathy (PPCM) patients treated with the Impella 2.5, Impella CP and Impella 5.0/LD Systems. These registry data were used as clinical data for review of the Impella Ventricular Support Systems under P140003/S018, within the context of the indications for use.

The data collection from the Impella Registry includes IRB approval, complete data monitoring, adverse events (AEs) monitoring, and CEC adjudication of major

AEs. All data are entered electronically by the sites. For this submission, the time during which the Impella Registry data were collected is shown in Figure 6.42. Eligible patients were those who were reported in the Impella Registry as having presented with ongoing cardiogenic shock in the setting of cardiomyopathy, myocarditis, or peripartum cardiomyopathy, and required mechanical circulatory support with Impella devices, through June 10, 2016.

Figure 6.42: Time intervals for Impella implants data collection by type of device



Ninety-three (93) Impella cases were enrolled into the Impella Registry for this analysis. These included 50 cardiomyopathy cases (4 Impella 2.5 cases, 29 Impella CP cases, and 17 Impella 5.0 cases), 34 myocarditis cases (14 Impella 2.5 cases, 12 Impella CP cases and 8 Impella 5.0 cases), and 9 PPCM cases (5 Impella 2.5 cases, 2 Impella CP cases and 2 Impella 5.0 cases). The cardiomyopathy cases included the 50 most recent consecutive cardiomyopathy with ongoing cardiogenic shock cases enrolled in the Impella Registry and occurring prior to June 10, 2016. The myocarditis and PPCM cases included all such cases enrolled in the Impella Registry and occurring prior to June 10, 2016.

Population Demographics and Baseline Characteristics

Population demographics, baseline characteristics and baseline hemodynamics are provided below. Ninety-two of the 93 patients were in cardiogenic shock at the time of Impella implant. One of the PPCM patients was not in cardiogenic shock at the time of Impella implant and the device was implanted to improve left ventricular function and prevent further hemodynamic deterioration.

Table 6.24: Demographics and baseline characteristics

Parameter	All Subjects (N=93)	Cardio-myopathy (N=50)	Myocarditis (N=34)	Peripartum Cardiomyopathy (N=9)
Age, years (mean +/- SD)	48 +/- 17	55 +/- 12	42 +/- 17	27 +/- 8
Male, % (N)	59 (55)	76 (38)	50 (17)	0
Left ventricular ejection fraction (LVEF), % (mean +/- SD) (N)	16 +/- 8 (77)	15 +/- 6 (39)	18 +/- 10 (29)	17 +/- 7 (9)
Number of inotropes at baseline (mean +/- SD)	2 +/- 1	3 +/- 1	2 +/- 1	2 +/- 1
Diabetes, % (N)	28% (26)	44 (22)	9 (3)	11 (1)
Smoking, % (N)	26% (24)	22 (11)	33 (11)	22 (2)
Hypertension, % (N)	53% (49)	62 (31)	44 (15)	33 (3)
Arrhythmia, % (N)	39% (36)	56 (28)	21 (7)	11 (1)
Congestive heart failure, % (N)	59% (54)	88 (44)	26 (9)	13 (1 of 8)
NYHA III/IV. % (N)	95% (41 of 43)	100 (28 of 28)	83 (10 of 12)	100 (3 of 3)
Renal insufficiency	33% (30)	54 (26)	12 (4)	0 (0)
Known history of cardiomyopathy, % (N)	52% (47)	82 (41)	15 (5 of 33)	13 (1 of 8)
Prior myocardial infarction, % (N)	11% (10)	18 (9)	3 (1)	0 (0)
Prior AICD/pacer, % (N)	33% (31)	54 (27)	9 (3)	11 (1)

Table 6.25: Baseline hemodynamics

Parameter	All Subjects (N=93)	Cardio-myopathy (N=50)	Myocarditis (N=34)	Peripartum Cardiomyopathy (N=9)
Cardiac index (L/min/m^2) Mean +/- SD (N)	1.97 +/- 0.74 (48)	1.98 +/- 0.76 (20)	1.82 +/- 0.46 (23)	2.60 +/- 1.37 (5)
Heart rate (bpm) Mean +/- SD (N)	104.5 +/- 27.8 (89)	102.0 +/- 27.8 (48)	107.8 +/- 28.0 (32)	106.2 +/- 28.8 (9)
Systolic arterial pressure (mmHg) Mean +/- SD (N)	98.0 +/- 20.9 (90)	95.5 +/- 20.2 (48)	100.4 +/- 21.5 (33)	102.8 +/- 22.2 (9)
Diastolic arterial pressure (mmHg) Mean +/- SD (N)	65.7 +/- 15.2 (90)	65.2 +/- 16.4 (48)	66.1 +/- 13.7 (33)	66.5 +/- 16.1 (9)
Mean arterial pressure (mmHg) Mean +/- SD (N)	76.3 +/- 16.4 (90)	74.3 +/- 17.3 (48)	78.3 +/- 15.2 (33)	79.9 +/- 16.2 (9)
Pulmonary capillary wedge pressure (mmHg) Mean +/- SD (N)	25.9 +/- 9.8 (35)	27.9 +/- 14.0 (13)	25.2 +/- 6.6 (20)	21.5 +/- 3.5 (2)
Central venous pressure (mmHg) Mean +/- SD (N)	24.6 +/- 5.1 (7)	27.5 +/- 9.2 (2)	22.3 +/- 2.6 (4)	28.0 (1)

Impella Support Characteristics

Impella support characteristics are provided below (Table 6.26). Impella CP was the most used device (46%), followed by Impella 5.0 (29%) and Impella 2.5 (25%). Femoral access site was predominantly used (70%). Mean duration of support was 123 +/- 200 hours (5±8 days) for the full cohort. For the full patient cohort, the 90th percentile of support duration was 120 hours (5 days), 233 hours (9.7 days), and 384 hours (16 days) for patients supported with the Impella 2.5, Impella CP, and Impella 5.0, respectively.

Table 6.26: Impella support characteristics

Parameter	All Subjects (N=93)	Cardio-myopathy (N=50)	Myocarditis (N=34)	Peripartum Cardiomyopathy (N=9)
Impella device type (first device) Impella 2.5, % (N) Impella CP, % (N) Impella 5.0, % (N)	 25 (23) 46 (43) 29 (27)	 8 (4) 58 (29) 34 (17)	 41 (14) 35 (12) 24 (8)	 56 (5) 22 (2) 22 (2)
Impella access (% femoral), % (N)	70 (65)	64 (32)	79 (27)	75 (6)
Duration of device support, hours (mean +/- SD) (N)	123 +/- 200 (80)	115 +/- 101 (46)	91 +/- 74 (28)	338 +/- 670 (6)
90th percentile of support duration Impella 2.5, hours Impella CP, hours Impella 5.0, hours	 120 233 384	 78 233 384	 72 72 1704	 120 241 216

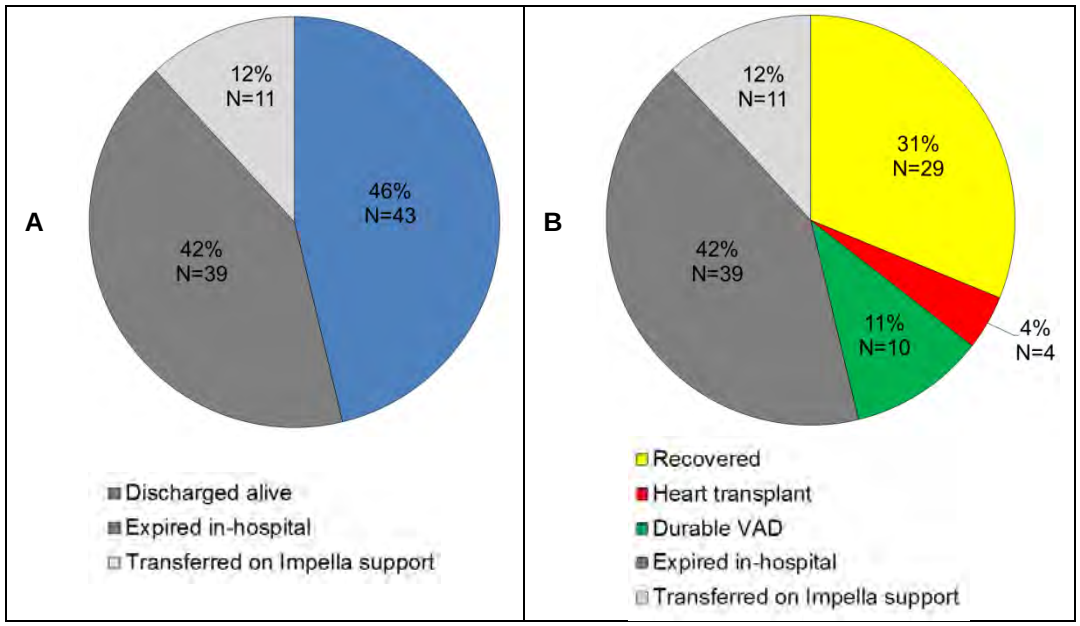
Safety and Effectiveness Results

Outcomes Summary

Outcomes were defined as survival to discharge and survival to 30 days after device implant. Survival to discharge and patient cardiac status at discharge for the full patient cohort, and all three cohorts separately, are shown in Figures 6.43-6.46.

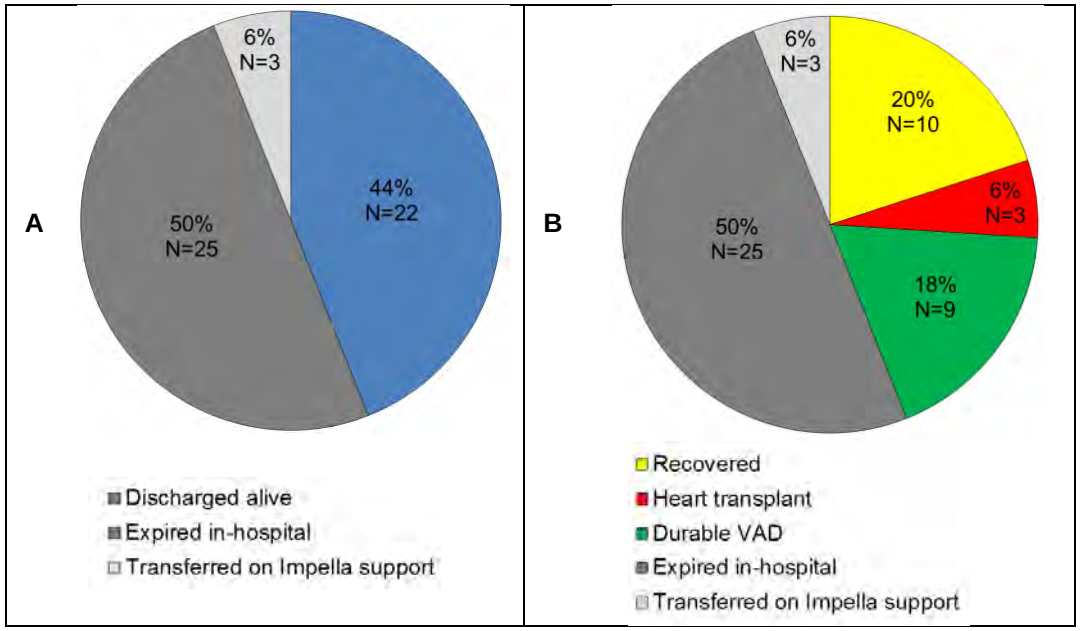
For the full patient cohort, 54 patients (58%) were either discharged alive (N=43, 46%) or transferred on Impella support to another medical facility for escalation of care (N=11, 12%); 39 (42%) expired during index hospitalization (Figure 6.43A). Of the 43 patients discharged alive, 29 recovered their cardiac function (67% of the discharged patients), 10 received a durable VAD (23% of the discharged patients), and 4 received a heart transplant (9% of the discharged patients) (Figure 6.43B).

Figure 6.43: Survival to discharge (A) and patient status at discharge (B) – All patients (N=93)



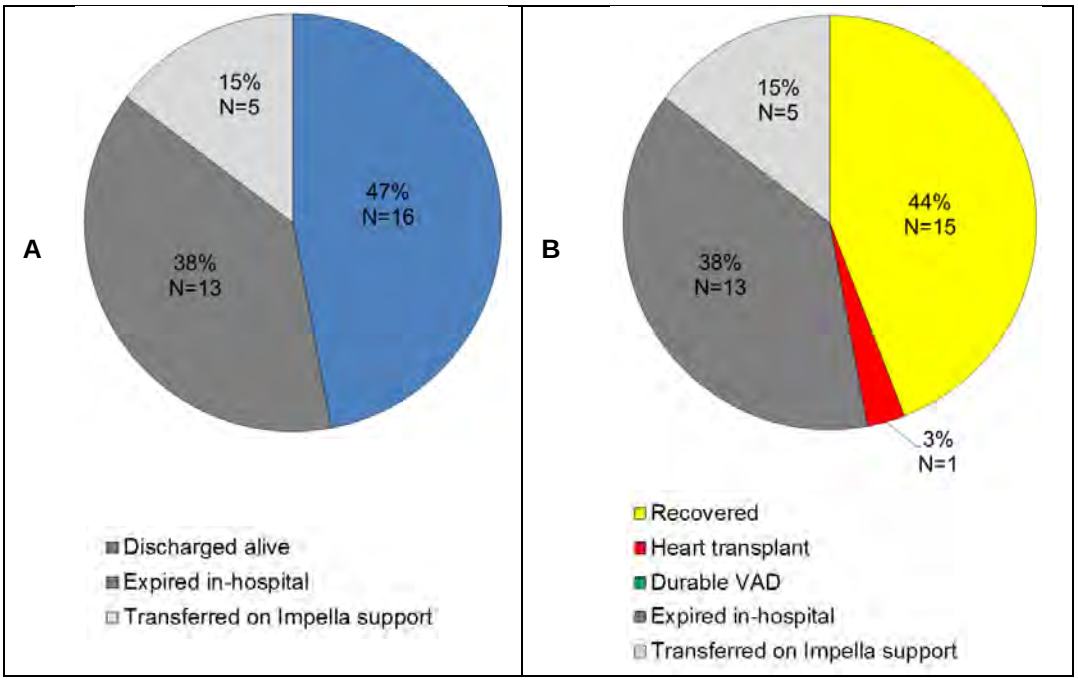
For the cardiomyopathy patients, 25 patients were either discharged alive (N=22, 44%) or transferred on Impella support to another medical facility for escalation of care (N=3, 6%); 25 (50%) expired during index hospitalization (Figure 6.44A). Of the 22 patients discharged alive, 10 recovered their cardiac function, 9 received a durable VAD, and 3 received a heart transplant (Figure 6.44B).

Figure 6.44: Survival to discharge (A) and patient status at discharge (B) – Cardiomyopathy patients (N=50)



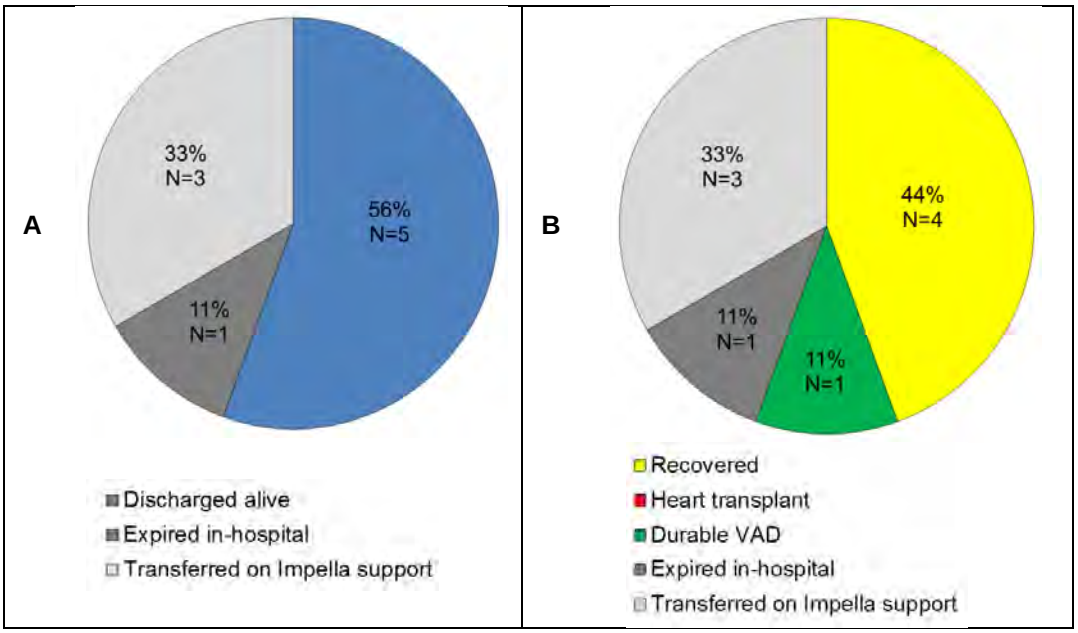
For the myocarditis patients, 21 patients were either discharged alive (N=16, 47%) or transferred on Impella support to another medical facility for escalation of care (N=5, 15%); 13 (38%) expired during index hospitalization (Figure 6.45A). Of the 16 patients discharged alive, 15 recovered their cardiac function and one received a heart transplant (Figure 6.45B).

Figure 6.45: Survival to discharge (A) and patient status at discharge (B) – Myocarditis patients (N=34)



For the PPCM patients, 8 patients were either discharged alive (N=5, 56%) or transferred on Impella support to another medical facility for escalation of care (N=3, 33%); one (11%) expired during index hospitalization (Figure 6.46A). Of the 5 patients discharged alive, 4 recovered their cardiac function and one received a durable left ventricular assist device (Figure 6.46B).

Figure 6.46: Survival to discharge (A) and patient status at discharge (B) – PPCM patients (N=9)



Patient Hemodynamics

Hemodynamic parameters on Impella support compared to baseline are shown in Table 6.27. Impella support significantly increased cardiac index and systolic, diastolic, and mean arterial blood pressure, and reduced pulmonary capillary wedge pressure, consistent with previous reports.

Table 6.27: Comparison of hemodynamics pre-support and on-support (paired data)

Parameter	Pre-Support (N=93)	On-Support (N=93)	P-value
Cardiac index (L/min/m^2) Mean +/- SD (N)	1.93+/- 0.51 (25)	2.27 +/- 0.83 (25)	**0.05**
Heart rate (bpm) Mean +/- SD (N)	104.8+/- 28.7 (75)	110.6 +/- 41.5 (75)	0.24
Systolic arterial pressure (mmHg) Mean +/- SD (N)	97.5 +/- 18.8 (71)	104.4 +/- 23.0 (71)	**0.02**
Diastolic arterial pressure (mmHg) Mean +/- SD (N)	65.2 +/- 13.8 (70)	70.8 +/- 18.4 (70)	**0.04**
Mean arterial pressure (mmHg) Mean +/- SD (N)	75.5 +/- 15.0 (72)	83.1 +/- 18.4 (72)	**0.003**
Pulmonary capillary wedge pressure (mmHg) Mean +/- SD (N)	23.5 +/- 7.3 (14)	18.7 +/- 6.7 (14)	**0.02**
Central venous pressure (mmHg) Mean +/- SD (N)	24.6 +/- 6.2 (5)	19.5 +/- 10.4 (5)	0.34

In-Hospital Adverse Events

Site-reported in-hospital adverse events are shown in Table 6.28. There were no valve injuries or valve dysfunction adverse events reported. The major complications reported for the full cohort included cerebrovascular accident (4%), acute renal dysfunction (30%), acute hepatic failure (5%), hemolysis (13%), bleeding requiring transfusion (10%), anemia requiring transfusion (11%), infection (13%), limb ischemia (4%), vascular complication with (3%) or without (4%) surgery, respiratory dysfunction/failure (4%), and ventricular arrhythmia (9%). Based on the site-reported data (local PI assessment of event causality), only a fraction of these rates were attributed to the Impella device and the events resolved without residual effect in most of the cases, unless the event of death occurred. Overall, the results did not show any evidence of increased morbidity associated with the Impella support in cardiomyopathy, myocarditis, and PPCM patients.

Table 6.28: Site-reported adverse events (to discharge)

In-Hospital Adverse Events	All Subjects (N=93)	Cardiomyopathy (N=50)	Myocarditis (N=34)	Peripartum Cardiomyopathy (N=9)
Death	42% (39/93)	50% (25/50)	38% (13/34)	11% (1/9)
Cerebrovascular Accident (CVA)/Stroke	4% (4/93)	4% (2/50)	6% (2/34)	0% (0/9)
Transient Ischemic Attack (TIA)	0% (0/93)	0% (0/50)	0% (0/34)	0% (0/9)
Acute Renal Dysfunction/Failure	35% (33/93)	30% (15/50)	47% (16/34)	22% (2/9)
Acute Hepatic Failure	5% (5/93)	6% (3/50)	6% (2/34)	0% (0/9)
Hemolysis	13% (12/93)	16% (8/50)	12% (4/34)	0% (0/9)
Valve Injury (Any Valve)	0% (0/93)	0% (0/50)	0% (0/34)	0% (0/9)
Anemia Requiring Transfusion	11% (10/93)	2% (1/50)	18% (6/34)	33% (3/9)
Bleeding Requiring Transfusion	10% (9/93)	2% (1/50)	21% (7/34)	11% (1/9)
Infection	13% (12/93)	12% (6/50)	9% (3/34)	33% (3/9)
Limb Ischemia	4% (4/93)	0% (0/50)	9% (3/34)	11% (1/9)
Vascular Complication Requiring Surgery	3% (3/93)	2% (1/50)	3% (1/34)	11% (1/9)
Vascular Complication Without Surgery	4% (4/93)	4% (2/50)	3% (1/34)	11% (1/9)
Respiratory Dysfunction/Failure	4% (4/93)	2% (1/50)	6% (2/34)	11% (1/9)
Ventricular Arrhythmia	9% (8/93)	2% (1/50)	15% (5/34)	22% (2/9)

There were 39 in-hospital deaths (42%). The causes of death for each subgroup are categorized in Table 6.29. The majority of the deaths (N=25, 64%) were attributed to heart failure or cardiogenic shock.

Table 6.29: Causes of in-hospital death

Cause of Death	Impella Registry Population		
	Cardiomyopathy (N=50)	Myocarditis (N=34)	Peripartum Cardiomyopathy (N=9)
Heart Failure or Cardiogenic Shock	30% (15)	26.47% (9)	11.11% (1)
Myocardial Infarction	4% (2)	0	0
CVA/Stroke	0	2.94% (1)	0
Procedural Complication	0	2.94% (1)	0
Heart Failure with MSOF	16% (8)	2.94% (1)	0
Unknown	0	2.94% (1)	0
Total	**50% (25)**	**38.23% (13)**	**11.11% (1)**

CVA – cerebrovascular accident; MSOF – multi-system organ failure

Relatedness to the Device and Procedure

The Clinical Events Committee (CEC) determined the potential relationship to the device (Table 6.30) and procedure (Table 6.31) for each death. All deaths were adjudicated by the CEC as not related to the Impella device, in any degree.

Two deaths in the myocarditis cohort were adjudicated by the CEC as probably related to the procedure. One myocarditis patient underwent an endomyocardial biopsy complicated by perforation of the inferior free wall of the right ventricle leading to cardiac tamponade and requiring emergent mediastinal exploration to suture the laceration and stop the bleeding. The patient expired four days later during the index hospitalization, and this death was adjudicated as probably related to the endomyocardial biopsy procedure. A second myocarditis patient was supported initially with an Impella CP but did not significantly improve. Consequently, the patient was escalated to an AB5000 LVAD. While on LVAD support, the patient developed multiple complications and support was withdrawn upon the request from the patient's family. This death was adjudicated as probably related to the LVAD implant procedure.

Table 6.30: In-hospital deaths CEC-adjudicated as related to the device

Deaths: CEC Device Relatedness	Definite	Probable	Possible	Remote	Not-Related	Unknown	Total
Cardiomyopathy	0	0	0	0	25	0	25
Myocarditis	0	0	0	0	13	0	13
PPCM	0	0	0	0	1	0	1

Table 6.31: In-hospital deaths CEC-adjudicated as related to the procedure

Deaths: CEC Procedure Relatedness	Definite	Probable	Possible	Remote	Not-Related	Unknown	Total
Cardiomyopathy	0	0	0	0	25	0	25
Myocarditis	0	2	0	0	11	0	13
PPCM	0	0	0	0	1	0	1

Patient Survival at 30 Days

The overall results (Kaplan-Meier curve estimates) for 30-day survival for the patients are shown in Figure 6.47 (full patient cohort), Figure 6.48 (cardiomyopathy patients), Figure 6.49 (myocarditis patients), and Figure 6.50 (PPCM patients). Overall outcome results appear favorable for this sick patient group, particularly when compared to the published results for similar patients (see the literature review section below).

Figure 6.47 Kaplan-Meier curve estimates for 30-day survival – all patients (N=93)

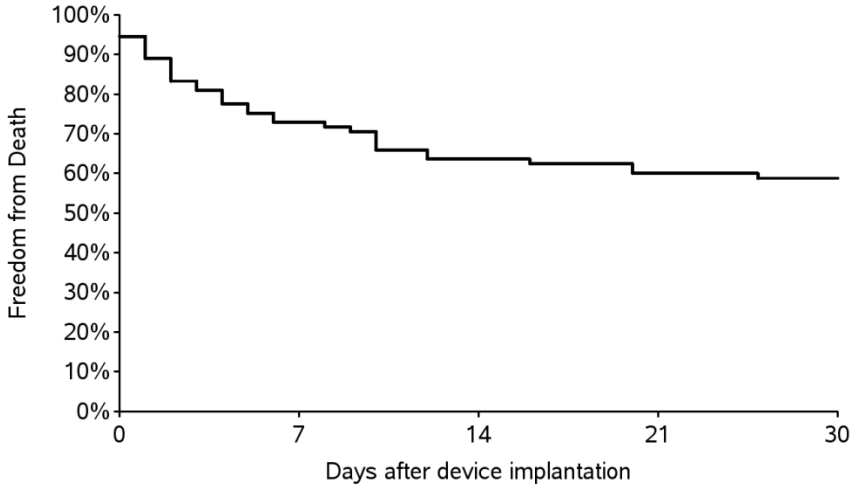


Figure 6.48: Kaplan-Meier curve estimates for 30-day survival – cardiomyopathy patients (N=50)

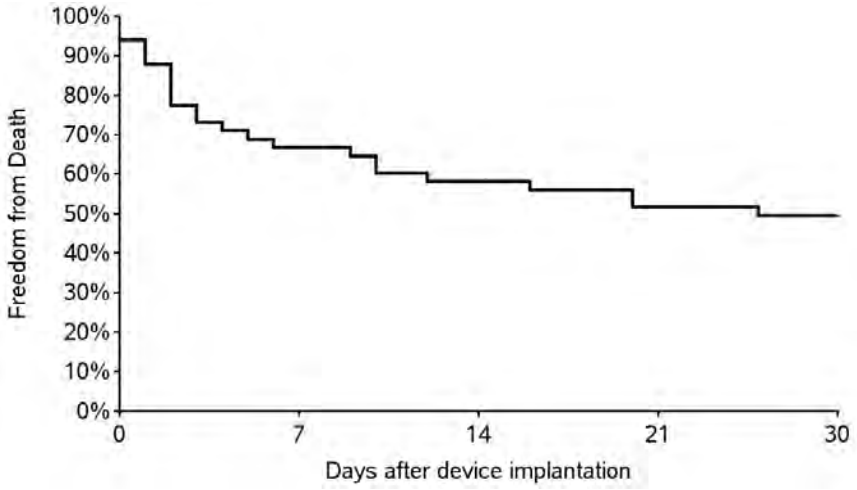


Figure 6.49: Kaplan-Meier curve estimates for 30-day survival – myocarditis patients (N=34)

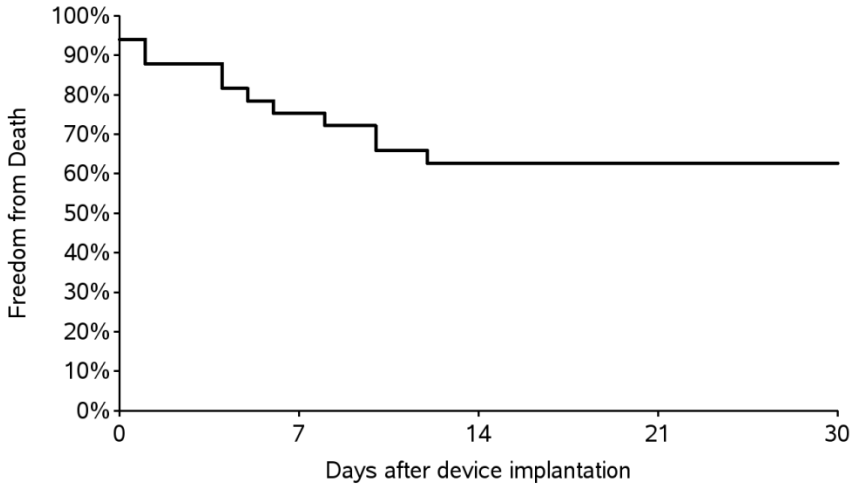
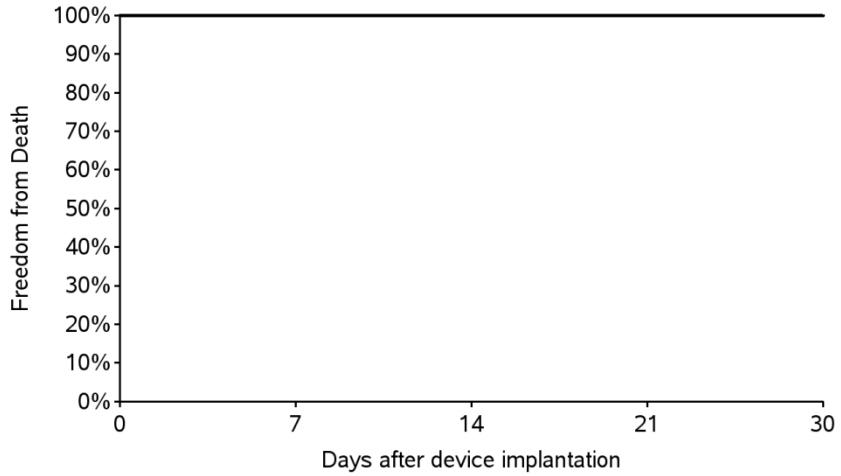


Figure 6.50: Kaplan-Meier curve estimates for 30-day survival – PPCM patients (N=9)



Summary of the Impella Registry Data

The Impella Registry data provides real-world perspective on the use of Impella devices in routine clinical practice in cardiomyopathy, myocarditis, and peripartum cardiomyopathy patients with ongoing cardiogenic shock. In spite of inherent limitations due to the retrospective nature of data collection, the Impella Registry data shows the following:

- Cardiomyopathy, myocarditis, and PPCM patients treated with Impella in routine clinical practice have severe LV dysfunction and are in cardiogenic shock refractory to conventional therapy, requiring immediate intervention to prevent death.
- The use of Impella devices improves hemodynamic status, stabilizing the patient and providing adequate hemodynamic support during the acute phase with a significant increase in cardiac index and systolic, diastolic, and mean arterial pressure, and a significant reduction in pulmonary capillary wedge pressure from baseline. This allows the myocardium to rest and recover, and improves end organ perfusion to bridge the patient to recovery. For patients in whom native heart recovery is not immediately evident, Impella provides a bridge to the next therapy (or bridge to decision), which could be a higher level of support with durable surgical VADs or heart transplantation. In this combined cohort the majority of patients who survived to discharge recovered their heart function.
- Mean duration of support was 123 +/- 200 hours (5±8 days) for the entire cohort. For the entire patient cohort, the 90^{th} percentile of support duration was 120 hours (5 days), 233 hours (9.7 days), and 384 hours (16 days) for patients supported with the Impella 2.5, Impella CP, and Impella 5.0, respectively.

- The outcomes of cardiomyopathy, myocarditis, and PPCM patients supported with Impella devices are similar to the outcomes observed in the patients supported with other circulatory support modalities (see Literature Review). The 30-day survival rates were 59% for the full patient cohort; 49% for the cardiomyopathy patients; 63% for the myocarditis patients; and 100% for the PPCM patients. The survival-to-discharge rates were 58% for the full patient cohort; 50% for the cardiomyopathy patients; 62%for the myocarditis patients; and 89% for the PPCM patients. These rates are similar to the corresponding survival-to-discharge rates observed in ischemic cardiogenic shock due to acute myocardial infarction (45.7%) or post-cardiotomy (58.4%) supported with Impella.
- The safety of the devices is favorable with regard to a broad range of adverse events that were monitored. The use of the Impella is safe and effective to treat ongoing cardiogenic shock secondary to cardiomyopathy, myocarditis, or peripartum cardiomyopathy.

Device Failures and Replacements

There was one device failure reported during the study. One myocarditis patient experienced device failure after 12 days on support. The device was explanted without clinical sequelae. No device failures were reported for the cardiomyopathy or PPCM patients. One cardiomyopathy patient underwent a device replacement after the initial device migrated and could not be repositioned across the aortic valve.

Literature Review

ABIOMED conducted a comprehensive literature review on the use of mechanical circulatory support in the setting of cardiogenic shock secondary to cardiomyopathy, myocarditis, or PPCM, to further enhance the body of evidence that will support the reasonable assurance of safety and effectiveness argument for the Impella family of devices. The literature review includes two parts: 1) a review of the literature for Impella use in the above setting, along with the FDA approved AB/BVS5000 VAD use in the same setting; and 2) a review of the literature for the use of other mechanical circulatory support devices in the same setting.

Impella

The Impella review yielded 32 publications on the use of Impella devices for hemodynamic support in the setting of cardiomyopathy (16 publications), myocarditis (13 publications), or PPCM (3 publications). The publications were either case reports on single patients (21 publications), single-center studies on hemodynamic support using Impella in the setting of cardiogenic shock where one or more of the patients presented with cardiomyopathy or myocarditis as the underlying cause (10 publications), or multi-center series on the use of Impella devices specifically for cardiomyopathy with ongoing cardiogenic shock (1 publication). For the cardiomyopathy patients, survival to explant was 72% (78 of 109). Ten of the reported cardiomyopathy patients were also included in the Impella Registry cohort. For the myocarditis patients, survival to explant was 71% (10 of 14 patients). One of the reported myocarditis patients was also included in the Impella Registry cohort. For the PPCM patients, recovery and survival to explant was 100% (3 patients).

Surgical VAD

The BVS/AB5000 review yielded only one publication, a retrospective multi-center study using data collected in the ABIOMED voluntary registry, on 11 patients supported with the BVS 5000 for cardiogenic shock secondary to acute myocarditis. The BVS/AB5000 System is the only FDA-approved system for use in patients suffering from acute cardiac disorders such as viral myocarditis. Survival to explant was 82%, with high rates of bleeding (73%), stroke (27%) and infection (18%).

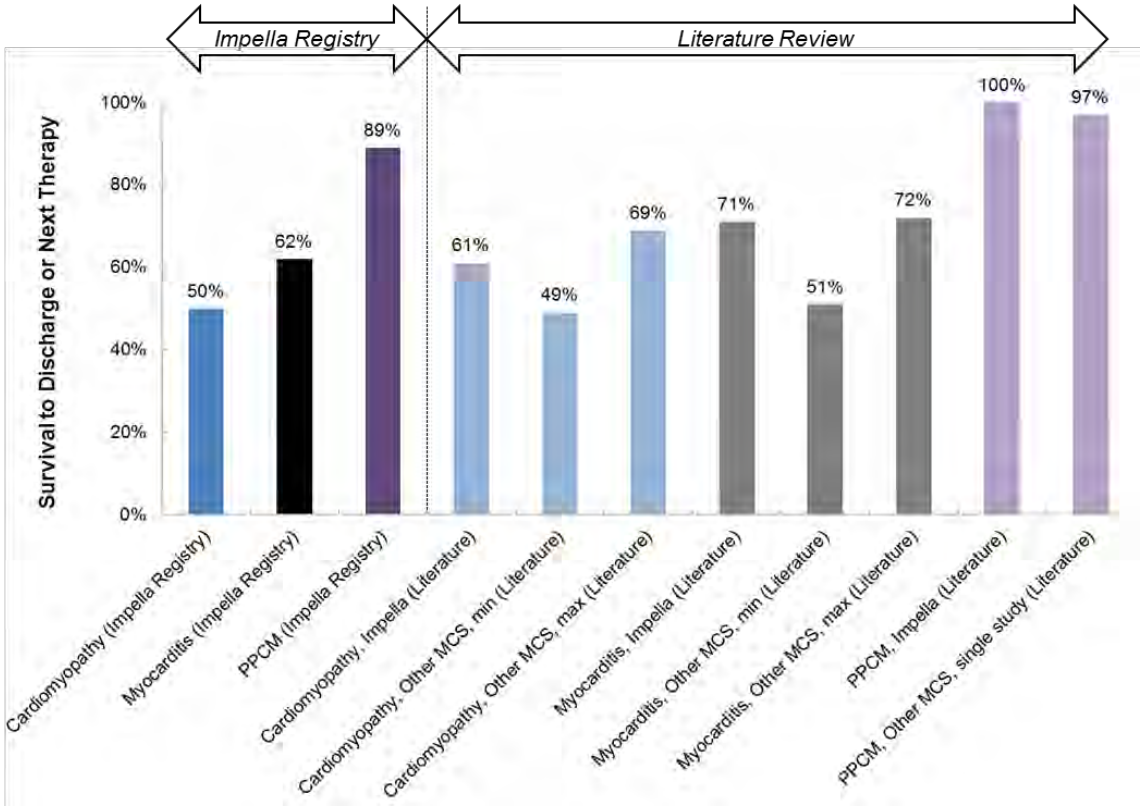
Other Mechanical Support Devices

The review on the use of other MCS devices in cardiomyopathy or myocarditis yielded 18 retrospective single-center (n=16) or multi-center (n=2) studies on patients who required mechanical circulatory support due to cardiogenic shock in the setting of cardiomyopathy or myocarditis (910 patients total). Most studies reported the use of ECMO only (10 of 18 studies). Survival to discharge ranged from 49% to 96%. For ECMO, the most widely reported support modality, survival to discharge ranged from 54% to 72%. Many of these articles did not report adverse events. When reported, the rates of stroke, bleeding, and infection were consistently higher in all other MCS devices than in Impella. The rates of limb ischemia were comparable. Hemolysis rate was absent in these data except for one non-Impella study.

The review on the use of other MCS devices in PPCM yielded one prospective multi-center study on patients who required VAD implant secondary to PPCM, using the INTERMACS registry. Survival to 1 month was 97%. Of note, only 66% of the patients described in the article above were in cardiogenic shock (INTERMACS 1 or 2) at the time of MCS device implant.

In conclusion, for available data on both Impella in these populations and other devices (pulsatile VADs and ECMO) the survival rates are comparable to the survival rates reported in the USpella and cVAD Registry analyses (Figure 6.51). In addition for those articles where AEs were reported, the USpella registry shows lower rates of morbidities associated with Impella than ECMO and surgical VADs. This is attributed to the relative low profile of Impella as a percutaneous device in this setting.

Figure 6.51: Survival comparisons of Impella Registry data, Impella literature, and other MCS reviewed in literature review



7 PATIENT MANAGEMENT TOPICS

Continued on next page

Patient Management Topics (continued)

PATIENT MANAGEMENT OVERVIEW

The information and instructions in this section of the manual are not intended to supersede established medical procedures concerning patient care. Best practice, as determined by the medical community, should always be observed. In each case, the clinician must determine whether the application of information provided is appropriate for the particular clinical setting.

PATIENT SELECTION AND THE HEART TEAM

INITIAL PATIENT DECISION: PCI VS. CABG

Per the ACC/AHA guidelines, there should be an initial overall decision around patient selection relative to the index procedure being CABG or PCI. The PCI indication is a medical decision and should be made by a Heart Team according to institution standards, current practice of medicine, and societal ACC/AHA guidelines. This involves a multidisciplinary approach composed of an interventional cardiologist, a cardiac surgeon, and maybe others, as deemed appropriate. The cardiac surgeon does not have to be on-site to participate in this decision.

IMPELLA® PATIENT DECISION

For the use of the Impella® 2.5 and the Impella CP®, the patient would be deemed an appropriate candidate for high risk PCI as defined by the inclusion/exclusion criteria contained in this IFU.

GENERAL PATIENT CARE CONSIDERATIONS

- Use knee immobilizer as needed to maintain access site straight.
- Access site management should be done in accordance with hospital protocol, using aseptic technique.
- Assess access site for bleeding and hematoma.
- Monitor pedal pulses.
- To prevent the purge tubing from kinking, do not allow the red Impella® plug to hang freely from the catheter and do not bend the catheter near the red Impella® plug.
- Consider attaching the red Impella® plug and catheter to a short armboard to prevent the catheter from kinking near the plug.
- When transferring a patient with the device in place:
  - Be careful not to pull on the Impella® Catheter when transferring a patient from one bed to another.
  - Do not raise the head of the bed to higher than a 30-degree angle.
  - Use care when moving or turning a patient; the Impella® Catheter may move out of position and cause a positioning alarm.

TRANSPORT WITHIN THE HOSPITAL

Patients supported with the Impella® Catheter may require transfer from the OR or cath lab into the ICU setting with the device in place. Considerations for transport within the hospital include the following:

- The Automated Impella® Controller and Impella® Catheter are designed to operate on battery power for at least 1 hour.
- Confirm that the battery capacity displayed on the controller is 100%.
- If transport time might be longer than 1 hour, bring an extension cord or confirm that you will be able to connect the controller to AC power once you arrive at your destination.
- When rolling the Automated Impella® Controller cart across a threshold, firmly grasp the cart handle and pull it over the threshold.
- Pay close attention to all system components and connections when rolling the Automated Impella® Controller cart over thresholds and through elevator doors.
- Do not stress the connector cable from the controller to the Impella® Catheter.

RIGHT HEART FAILURE

Caregivers should monitor patients being supported by the Impella® Catheter for signs of right heart failure:

- Reduced output from the Impella® Catheter
- Suction alarms
- Elevated filling pressures (CVP)
- Signs of liver failure
- Elevated pulmonary pressures

If the patient is exhibiting signs of right heart failure, the clinical team should assess the need for a more durable form of support.

ECG INTERFERENCE

Operating the Automated Impella® Controller may cause interference with electrocardiogram (ECG) signals. Please check the electrode pads and leads for good fixation and contact. If interference persists, activate the 50/100 Hz band-elimination filter or the 60/120 Hz band-elimination filter (also known as notch filter) on your ECG device. The filter frequency will be based on the AC power frequency for the country in which you are operating the equipment.

If your ECG device does not have the appropriate filters, disconnect the Automated Impella® Controller temporarily from AC power to obtain an undisturbed signal. Please observe the battery status while running the Automated Impella® Controller on battery power.

LATEX

The Automated Impella® Controller and Impella® Catheters, including all accessories, are not made with natural rubber latex.

USE OF ECHOCARDIOGRAPHY FOR POSITIONING OF THE IMPELLA® CATHETER

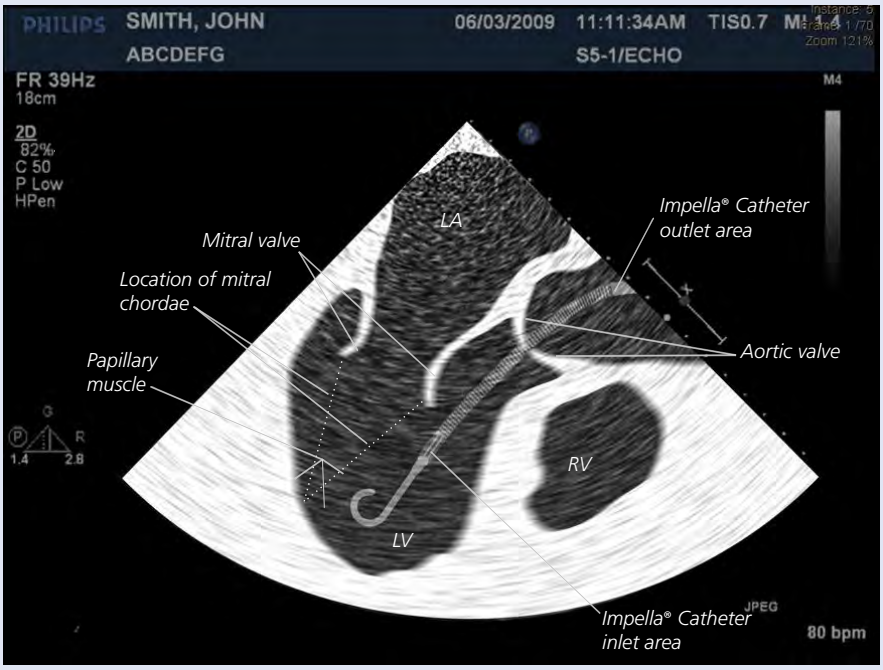
BACKGROUND

Echocardiography is a commonly used tool for evaluating the position of the Impella® Catheter relative to the aortic valve and other intraventricular structures post-placement. The best echocardiographic views for positioning the Impella® Catheter in the left ventricle are a long axis transesophageal echocardiogram (TEE) or a parasternal long axis transthoracic echocardiogram (TTE). These long axis views allow you to see both the aortic valve and Impella® Catheter inlet area.

Evaluate the position of the Impella® Catheter if the Automated Impella® Controller displays position alarms or if you observe lower than expected flows or signs of hemolysis. If the catheter does not appear to be correctly positioned, initiate steps to reposition it.

The illustrations on the following page identify the structures you would expect to see in transesophageal echocardiography (top) and transthoracic echocardiography (bottom). In these illustrations, the Impella® Catheter is positioned correctly; however, these depictions are stylized and in actual echocardiograms the pigtail and inlet and outlet areas may not be seen as distinctly. The graphics in this section depict the Impella® 2.5 Catheter, but are representative of positioning for the Impella CP® and Impella® 5.0 as well. Positioning for the Impella® LD Catheter would also look similar but without the pigtail.

Transesophageal Echocardiogram (TEE) of Impella® Catheter



Transthoracic Echocardiogram (TTE) of Impella® Catheter

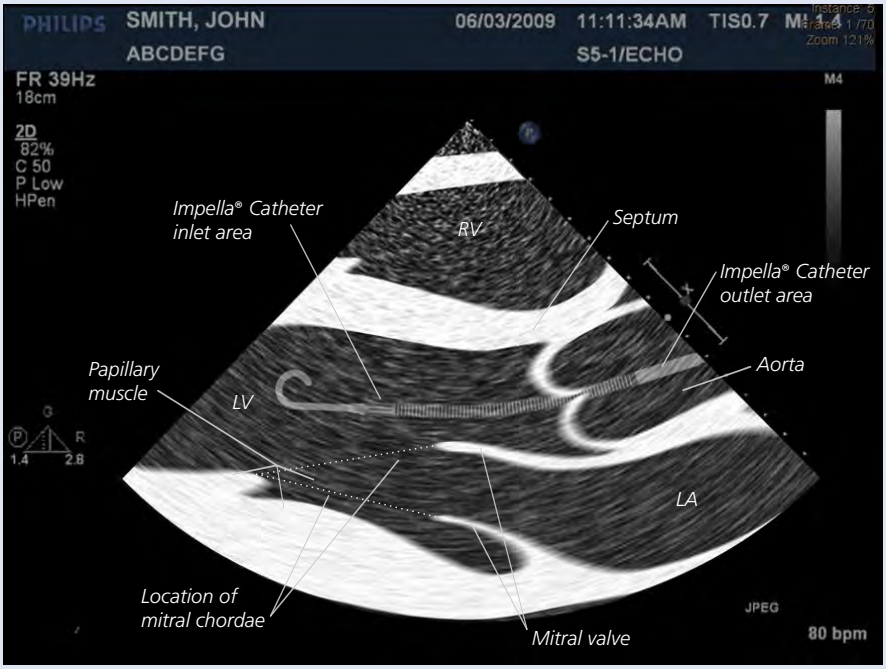


Figure 7.1 Labeled TEE and TTE Images of the Impella® Catheter Position

Four Impella® Catheter positions you are likely to encounter when examining echocardiograms from patients supported with the Impella® Catheter include:

- Correct Impella® Catheter position
- Impella® Catheter too far into the left ventricle
- Impella® Catheter inlet in the aorta
- Impella® Catheter in papillary muscle

The following pages describe each situation. Figure 7.2 illustrates a transesophageal echocardiogram (TEE) of each situation. Figure 7.3 illustrates a transthoracic echocardiogram (TTE) of each.

CORRECT IMPELLA® CATHETER POSITION

For optimal positioning of the Impella® Catheter, the inlet area of the catheter should be 3.5 cm below the aortic valve annulus and well away from papillary muscle and subannular structures. The outlet area should be well above the aortic valve. If the Impella® Catheter is correctly positioned, echocardiography will likely show the following, as depicted in Figures 7.2a (TEE) and 7.3a (TTE):

- Catheter inlet area 3.5 cm below the aortic valve
- Catheter outlet area well above the aortic valve (frequently not visible on TEE or TTE images)
- Catheter angled toward the left ventricular apex away from the heart wall and not curled up or blocking the mitral valve

IMPELLA® CATHETER TOO FAR INTO THE LEFT VENTRICLE

If the Impella® Catheter is positioned too far into the left ventricle, the patient will not receive the benefit of Impella® Catheter support. Blood will enter the inlet area and exit the outlet area within the ventricle. Obstruction of the Impella® Catheter inlet area can lead to increased mechanical forces on blood cell walls and subsequent hemolysis, which often presents as dark or blood-colored urine. If the Impella® Catheter is too far into the left ventricle, echocardiography will likely show the following, as depicted in Figures 7.2b (TEE) and 7.3b (TTE):

- Catheter inlet area more than 4 cm below the aortic valve
- Catheter outlet area across or near the aortic valve

IMPELLA® CATHETER INLET IN THE AORTA

If the inlet area of the Impella® Catheter is in the aorta, the patient will not receive the benefit of Impella® Catheter support. The catheter will pull blood from the aorta rather than the left ventricle. In addition, suction is possible if the inlet area is against the wall of the aorta or valve sinus. If the inlet area of the Impella® Catheter is in the aorta, echocardiography will likely show the following, as depicted in Figures 7.2c (TEE) and 7.3c (TTE):

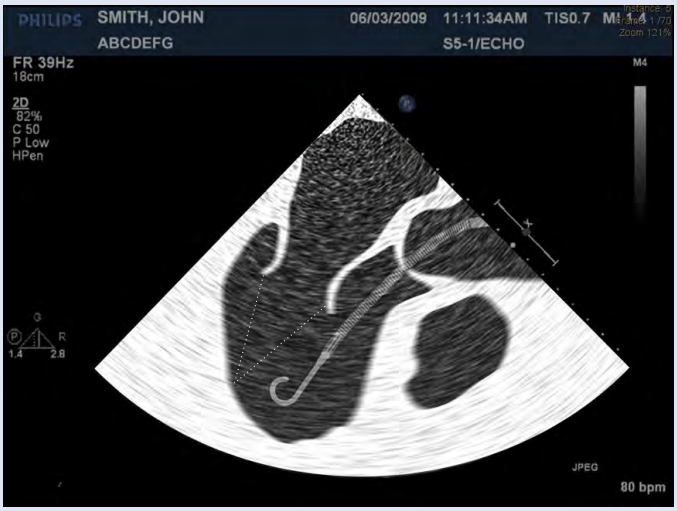
- Catheter inlet area in aorta or near the aortic valve
- Catheter pigtail too close to the mitral valve

IMPELLA® CATHETER IN PAPILLARY MUSCLE

If the inlet area of the Impella® Catheter is too close to or entangled in the papillary muscle and/or subannular structures surrounding the mitral valve, it can affect mitral valve function and negatively impact catheter flow. If the inlet area of the catheter is lodged adjacent to the papillary muscle, the inflow may be obstructed, resulting in suction alarms. This positioning is also likely to place the outlet area too close to the aortic valve, which can cause outflow at the level of the aortic valve with blood streaming back into the ventricle, resulting in turbulent flow and hemolysis. If the Impella® Catheter is too close to or entangled in the papillary muscle, echocardiography will likely show the following, as depicted in Figures 7.2d (TEE) and 7.3d (TTE):

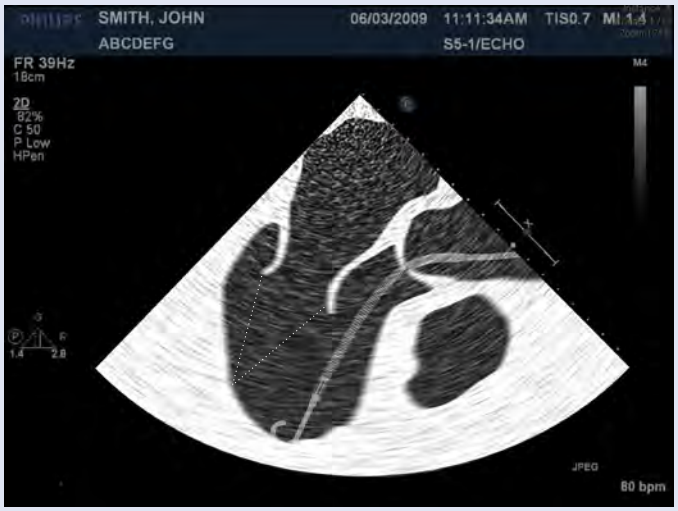
- Catheter pigtail in papillary muscle
- Catheter inlet area more than 4 cm below the aortic valve or lodged between papillary muscle and the myocardial wall
- Catheter outlet area too close to the aortic valve

The following figures depict transesophageal and transthoracic echocardiographic images of these four Impella® Catheter positions. Figure 7.2 shows four transesophageal depictions of Impella® Catheter position and Figure 7.3 shows four transthoracic depictions of Impella® Catheter position.



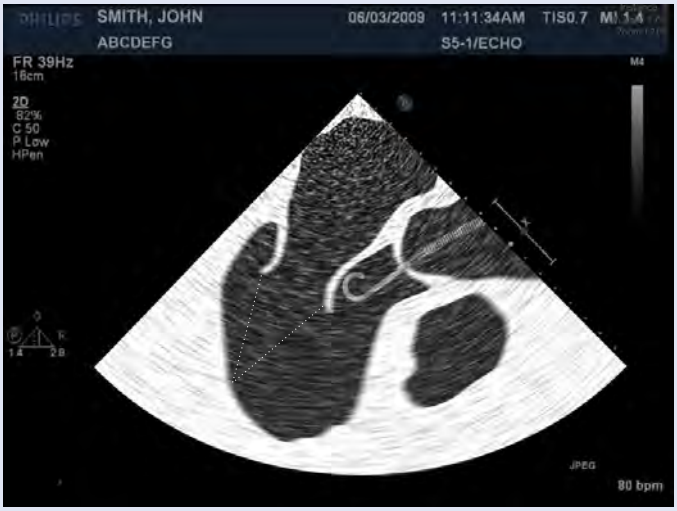
a. Correct Impella® Catheter Position (TEE)

- Catheter inlet area 3.5 cm below the aortic valve
- Catheter outlet area well above the aortic valve
- Catheter angled toward the left ventricular apex away from the heart wall and not curled up or blocking the mitral valve



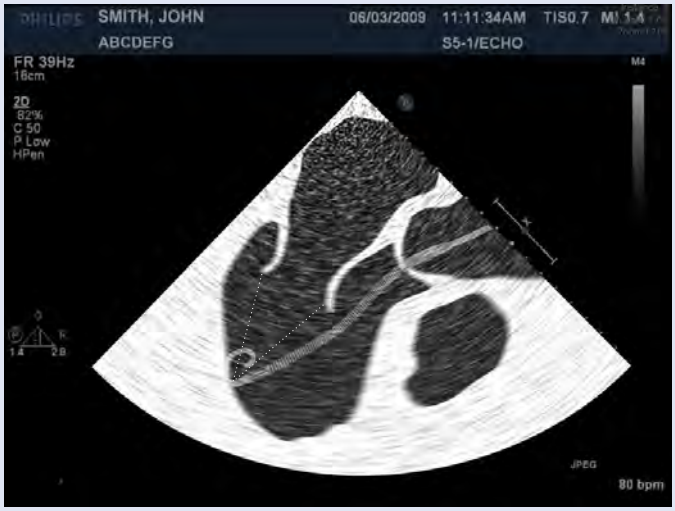
b. Impella® Catheter Too Far into Left Ventricle (TEE)

- Catheter inlet area more than 4 cm below the aortic valve
- Catheter outlet area across or near the aortic valve



c. Impella® Catheter Inlet in Aorta (TEE)

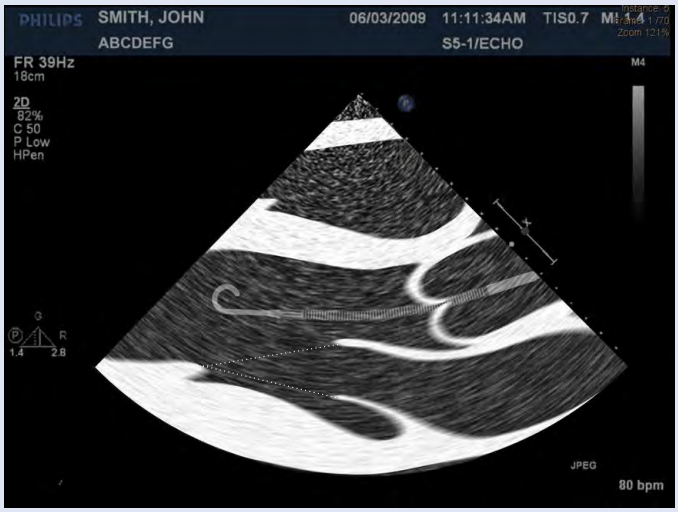
- Catheter inlet area in aorta or near the aortic valve
- Catheter pigtail too close to the mitral valve



d. Impella® Catheter in Papillary Muscle (TEE)

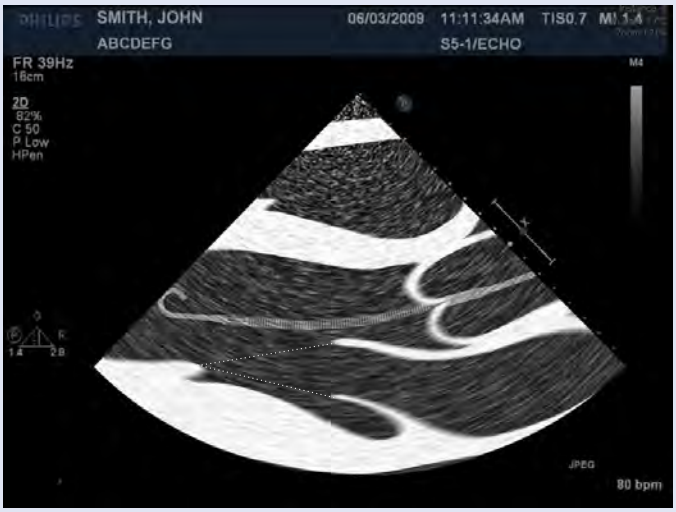
- Catheter pigtail in papillary muscle
- Catheter inlet area more than 4 cm below the aortic valve or lodged between papillary muscle and the myocardial wall
- Catheter outlet area too close to the aortic valve

Figure 7.2 Transesophageal Echocardiographic (TEE) Illustrations of Impella® Catheter Position



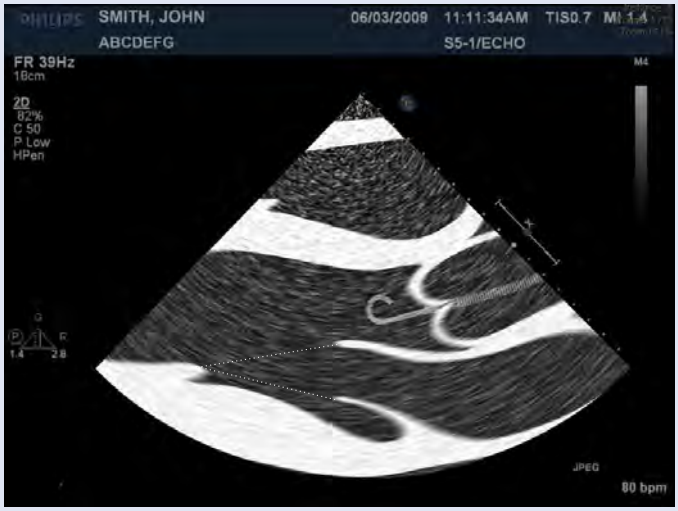
a. Correct Impella® Catheter Position (TTE)

- Catheter inlet area 3.5 cm below the aortic valve
- Catheter outlet area well above the aortic valve
- Catheter angled toward the left ventricular apex away from the heart wall and not curled up or blocking the mitral valve



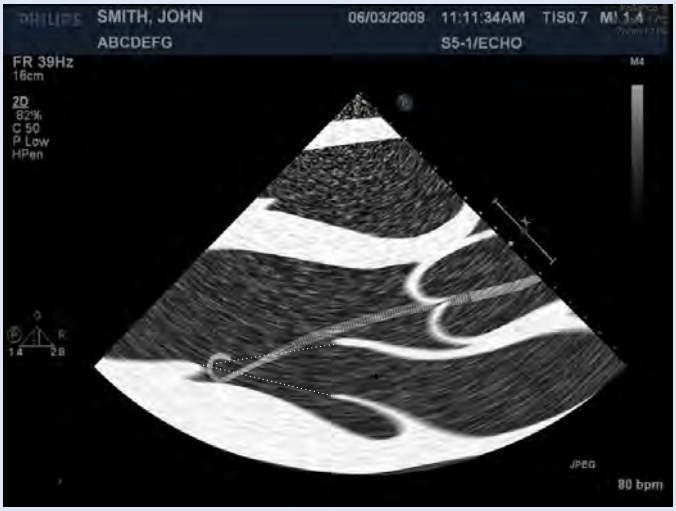
b. Impella® Catheter Too Far into Left Ventricle (TTE)

- Catheter inlet area more than 4 cm below the aortic valve
- Catheter outlet area across or near the aortic valve



c. Impella® Catheter Inlet in Aorta (TTE)

- Catheter inlet area in aorta or near the aortic valve
- Catheter pigtail too close to the mitral valve



d. Impella® Catheter in Papillary Muscle (TTE)

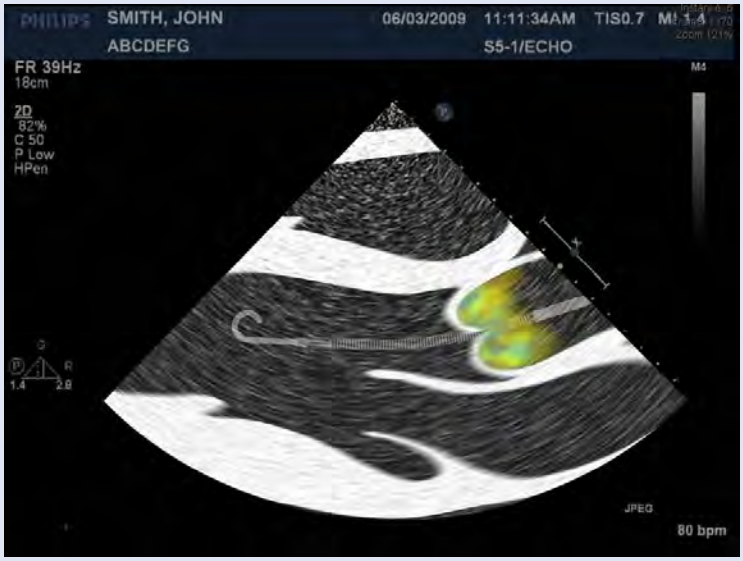
- Catheter pigtail in papillary muscle
- Catheter inlet area more than 4 cm below the aortic valve or lodged between papillary muscle and the myocardial wall
- Catheter outlet area too close to the aortic valve

Figure 7.3 Transthoracic Echocardiographic (TTE) Illustrations of Impella® Catheter Position

COLOR DOPPLER ECHOCARDIOGRAPHY

When moving a patient supported with an Impella® Catheter, it is important to monitor catheter migration. Adding color Doppler to an echo is another way to verify catheter position. If the Impella® Catheter is correctly positioned, a dense mosaic pattern of turbulence will appear *above* the aortic valve near the outlet area of the catheter, as shown in the top image in Figure 7.4. If, however, the echocardiogram reveals a dense mosaic pattern of turbulence *beneath* the aortic valve (bottom image in Figure 7.4), this likely indicates that the outlet area of the catheter is in the wrong position, that is, the catheter is too far into the ventricle or entangled in papillary muscle. (Note: If using transesophageal echocardiography [TEE], look for the mosaic patterns in the same locations relative to the aortic valve and Impella® Catheter outlet area.)

Correct Impella® Catheter Position (Color Doppler TTE)



Incorrect Impella® Catheter Position (Color Doppler TTE)

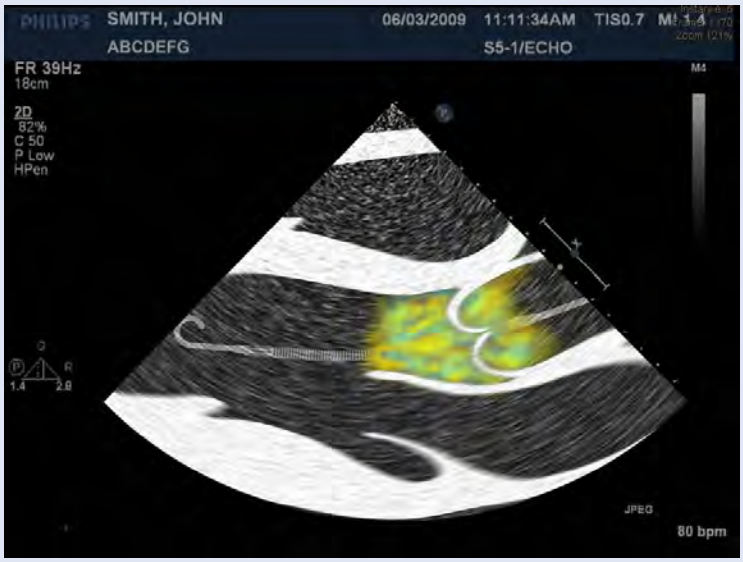


Figure 7.4 Correct and Incorrect Impella® Catheter Position (Color Doppler TTE)

POST-INSERTION POSITIONING (PIP) CHECKLIST

Completing the steps shown in the following post-insertion positioning checklist can help to ensure proper position of the Impella® Catheter following insertion. Pay particular attention to positioning after the patient is moved from the operating room or catheterization laboratory.

1. Remove slack in the Impella® Catheter by increasing P-level to AUTO or P-8 (or P-9 for the Impella® 5.0 or LD) and align the catheter against the lesser curvature of the aorta (rather than the greater curvature).
2. Use fluoroscopy to verify that the slack has been removed.
3. Verify that the Impella® Catheter inlet area is optimally positioned 3.5 cm below the aortic valve.
4. Return to previous P-level.
5. Secure the Impella® Catheter at a firm external fixation point in the groin area.

UNDERSTANDING AND MANAGING IMPELLA®CATHETER POSITION ALARMS

The Automated Impella® Controller continuously monitors the catheter based on the placement signal and the motor current.

- Placement signal: *Is the signal characteristic of aortic or ventricular pressure (for Impella® 2.5 or Impella CP®)?; Is it pulsatile or flattened (for Impella® 5.0 or LD)?*
- Motor current: *Is the signal "pulsatile" or "flattened"?*

If the system alarms with one of the positioning alarms described in this section, fluoroscopic imaging is the best method for confirming position. You can also use TEE, TTE, or a standard chest x-ray.

If the Impella® Catheter is either partly (just the pigtail) or completely in the ventricle, reposition the catheter under imaging guidance.

If the Impella® Catheter is completely out of the ventricle, do not attempt to reposition the catheter across the valve without a guidewire.

The following pages describe possible placement conditions and the associated signal characteristics and alarm messages as well as actions to take for each.

CORRECT POSITION

If the Impella® Catheter is in the correct position, the placement screen will appear as shown in Figure 7.5 for the Impella® 2.5 and Impella CP® and Figure 7.6 for the Impella® 5.0 and LD.

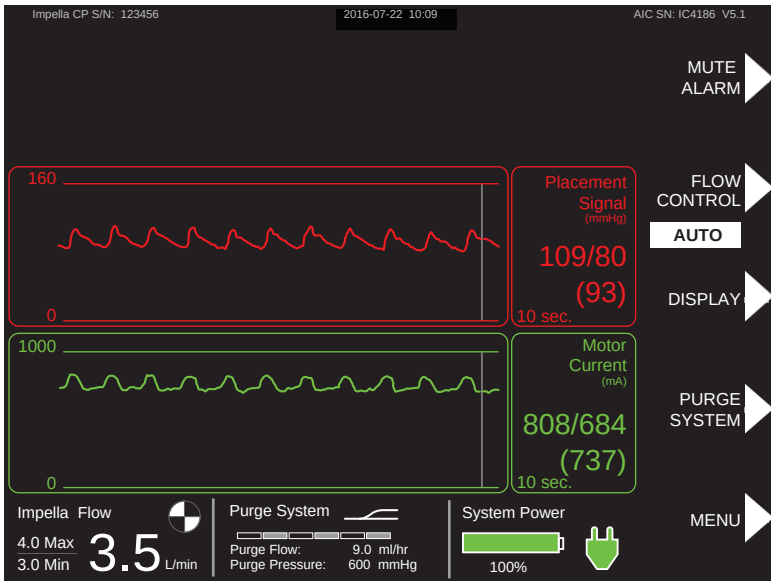


Figure 7.5 Correct Impella CP® Catheter Position (similar for Impella® 2.5)

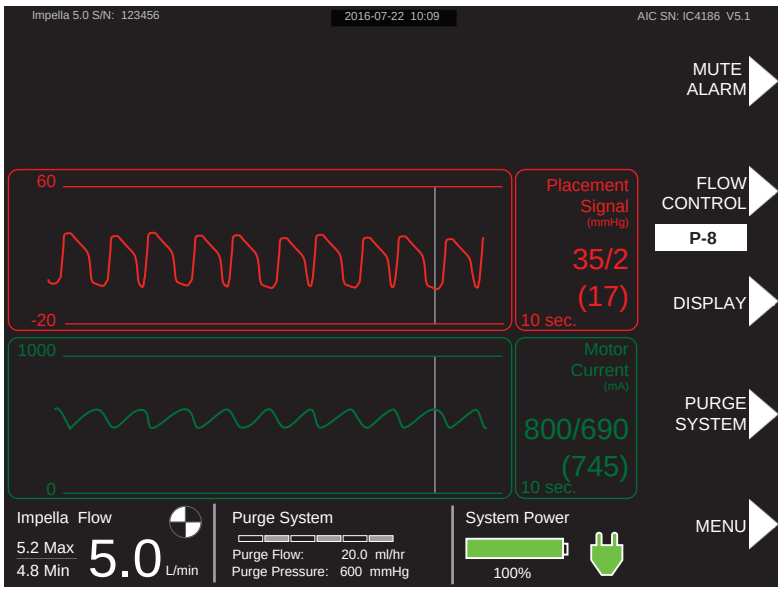


Figure 7.6 Correct Impella® 5.0 Catheter Position (similar for Impella® LD)

Restoring Placement Signal Quality

You may get a sensor or position alarm if you pinch the white flush valve to restore placement signal quality.

IMPELLA® 2.5 OR IMPELLA CP® CATHETER FULLY IN VENTRICLE

If the Impella® 2.5 or Impella CP® Catheter is fully in the ventricle, the following alarm will appear:

Impella Position In Ventricle

In this situation, the placement screen will appear as shown in Figure 7.7.

Yellow Flow Rate

If the Automated Impella® Controller detects incorrect or unknown catheter position, or if placement monitoring is suspended, the flow rate in the flow area appears in yellow as shown in Figure 7.7.

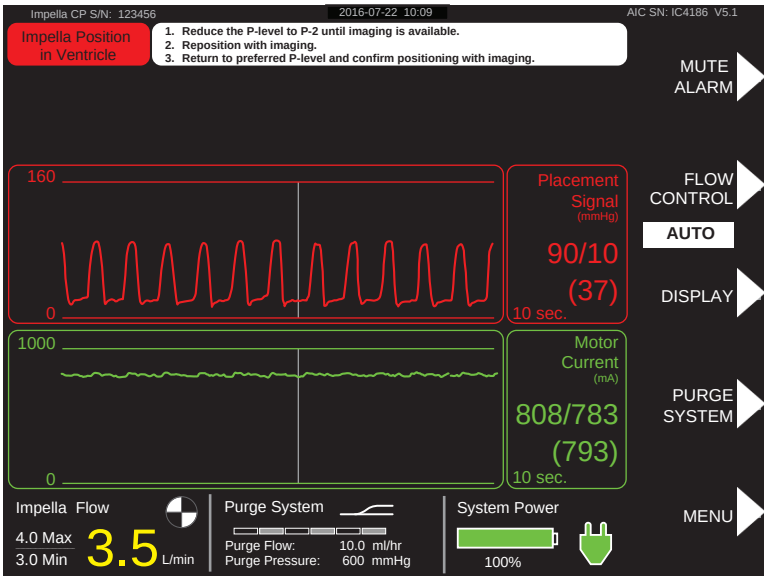


Figure 7.7 Impella CP® Catheter Fully in Ventricle (similar for Impella® 2.5)

Actions to take:

1. Under fluoroscopic guidance, reduce the P-level to P-2 and carefully pull back the Impella® Catheter until the aortic waveform signal is showing.
2. When you see the aortic waveform signal, pull the catheter back an additional 4 cm.

IMPELLA® 2.5 OR IMPELLA CP® CATHETER COMPLETELY IN THE AORTA or INLET AND OUTLET AREAS IN VENTRICLE AND OPEN PRESSURE AREA IN AORTA

If the Impella® 2.5 or Impella CP® Catheter is completely in the aorta or if the inlet and outlet areas are in the ventricle and the open pressure area is in the aorta, the following alarm will appear:

Impella Position Wrong

In this situation, the placement screen will appear as shown in Figure 7.8.

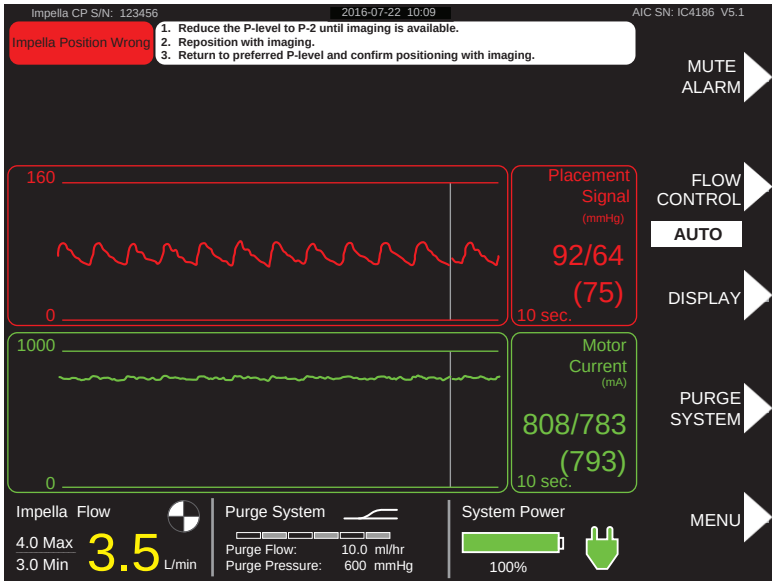


Figure 7.8 Impella CP® Catheter Completely in the Aorta or Inlet and Outlet Areas in Ventricle and Open Pressure Area in Aorta (similar for Impella® 2.5)

Actions to take:

1. Under fluoroscopic guidance, determine the Impella® Catheter position.
2. Reduce the P-level to P-2 and reposition the catheter as necessary.

LOW NATIVE HEART PULSATILITY (IMPELLA® 2.5 AND IMPELLA CP®)

When a patient has poor native ventricular function, the placement signal may remain pulsatile; however, the amplitude will be dampened.

In a situation of low native heart pulsatility, the Automated Impella® Controller may not be able to determine the catheter position. You may see the following indication on the home screen:

Impella Position Unknown

In this situation, the screen will appear as shown in Figure 7.9.

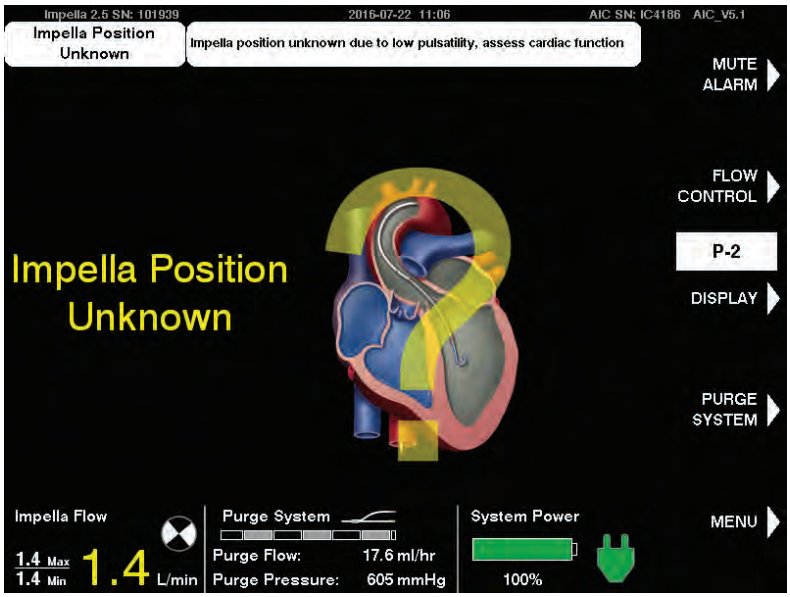


Figure 7.9 Impella CP® Catheter Position Unknown (similar for Impella® 2.5)

Actions to take:

1. Assess cardiac function.

IMPELLA® 2.5 OR IMPELLA CP® CATHETER OUTLET AREA ON OR NEAR AORTIC VALVE

If the Impella® 2.5 or Impella CP® Catheter outlet area is on or near the aortic valve, the catheter may be too deep in the ventricle.

Actions to take:

1. Assess and adjust Impella® Catheter position under fluoroscopic guidance.
2. If unsuccessful, reduce the P-level to P-2 and gently pull the catheter back 2 cm to see if the condition resolves.

IMPELLA® 5.0 OR LD CATHETER POSITION WRONG

If the Impella® 5.0 or LD Catheter is fully in the ventricle or fully in the aorta, the following alarm will appear:

Impella Position Wrong

The Impella® 5.0 or LD System cannot differentiate between these two conditions. In this situation, the placement screen will appear as shown in Figure 7.10.

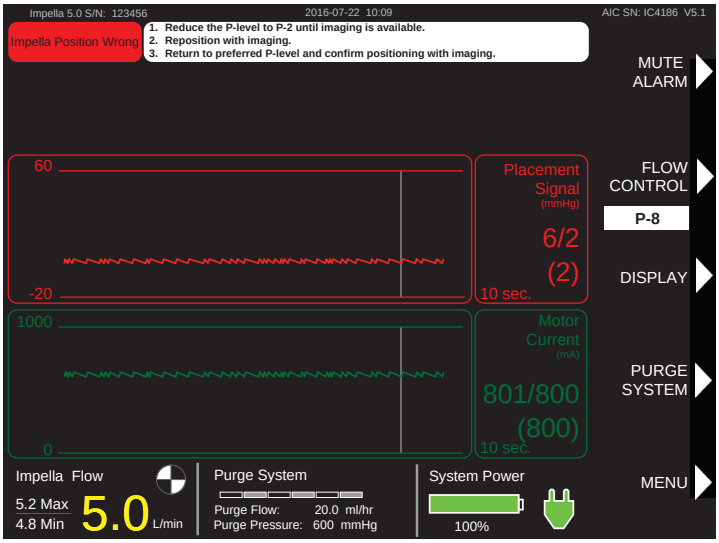


Figure 7.10 Impella® 5.0 Catheter Position Wrong (similar for Impella® LD)

Actions to take:

1. Under fluoroscopic or echocardiographic guidance, determine the catheter position.
2. Reduce P-level to P-2 and reposition the catheter by either pushing the catheter forward or pulling it back as needed. Confirm that the placement signal and motor current are both pulsatile.
3. If fluoroscopic or echocardiographic imaging is not available, obtain imaging equipment (fluoroscopy, echocardiography, or chest x-ray) to check the catheter position.

LOW NATIVE HEART PULSATILITY (IMPELLA® 5.0 AND LD)

When a patient has poor native ventricular function, the placement signal may remain pulsatile; however, the amplitude will be dampened and both the minimum and maximum values will be greater than zero because the aortic valve does not open and the Impella® 5.0 or LD Catheter raises the aortic blood pressure above the ventricular pressure during systole.

In a situation of low native heart pulsatility, the Automated Impella® Controller may not be able to determine the catheter position. You may see the following indication on the home screen:

Impella Position Unknown

In this situation, the screen will appear as shown in Figure 7.11. Notice that the flow rate is displayed in yellow in the lower left corner of the screen, indicating that the patient may not be getting the benefit of the displayed flow rate.

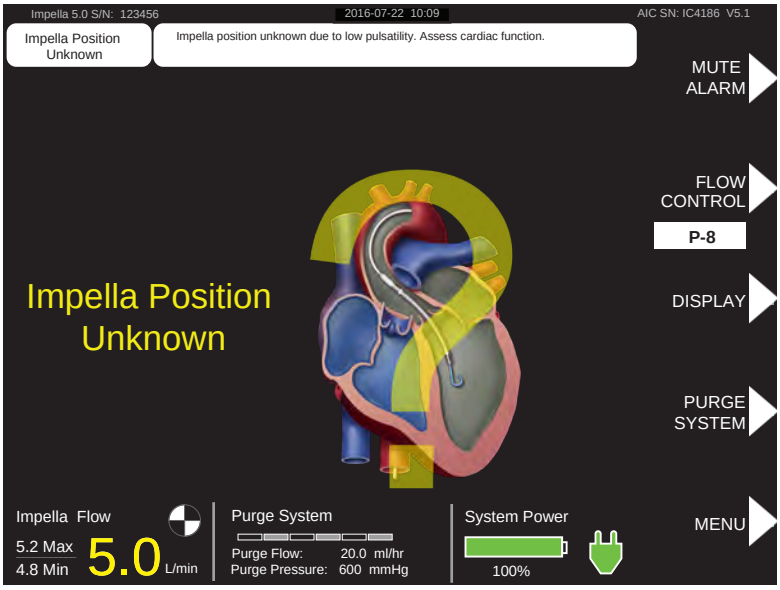


Figure 7.11 Impella® 5.0 Catheter Position Unknown (similar for Impella® LD)

Actions to take:

1. Assess cardiac function.
2. If needed, confirm catheter position with echocardiography.

IMPELLA® 5.0 OR LD CATHETER OUTLET AREA ON OR NEAR AORTIC VALVE

If the Impella® 5.0 or LD Catheter outlet area is on or near the aortic valve, the catheter may be too deep in the ventricle. The following alarm will appear:

Impella Outflow Blocked

In this situation, the placement screen will appear as shown in Figure 7.12.

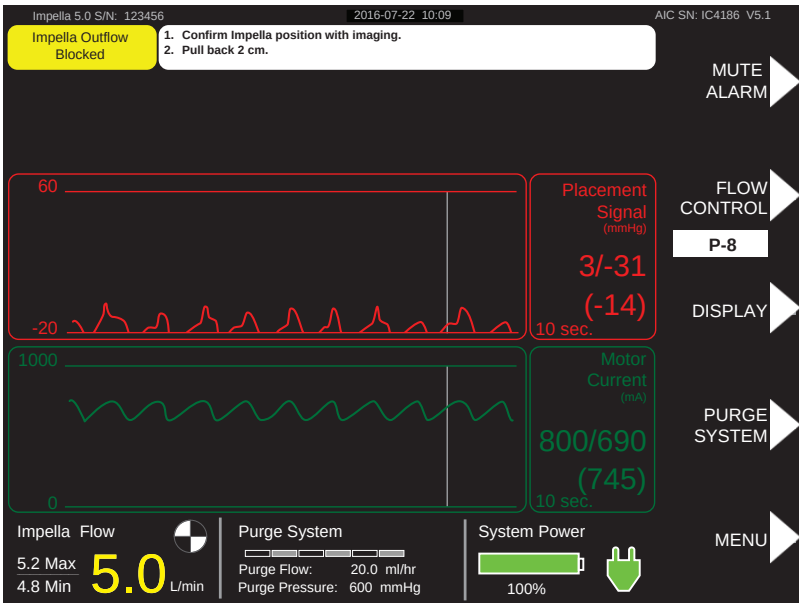


Figure 7.12 Impella® 5.0 Catheter Outlet Area on or near Aortic Valve (similar for Impella® LD)

Actions to take:

1. Assess and adjust Impella® 5.0 or LD Catheter position under fluoroscopic or echocardiographic guidance, if available.
2. If fluoroscopic or echocardiographic guidance is not available, reduce the P-level to P-2 and gently pull the catheter back 2 cm to see if the condition resolves.

IMPELLA STOPPED

If the Impella® Catheter has stopped suddenly:

1. Try to restart the catheter at P-8.
2. If the Impella® does not restart at P-8, try to restart at P-2.
3. If the Impella® does not restart or stops again, wait 1 minute and try to restart again.
4. If the Impella® restarts, wean down to P-2 as the patient can tolerate. Under these circumstances, catheter function is not reliable and the Impella® may stop again.
5. If the Impella® does not restart, remove the Impella® from the ventricle as soon as possible to avoid aortic insufficiency.

SUCTION

Suction may occur if the blood volume available for the Impella® Catheter is inadequate or restricted. Suction limits the amount of support that the Impella® Catheter can provide to the patient and results in a decrease in arterial pressure and cardiac output. It can damage blood cells, leading to hemolysis. It may also be an indicator of right heart failure.

SUCTION WITH THE IMPELLA® 2.5 OR IMPELLA CP® CATHETER

If the Automated Impella® Controller detects suction while running in AUTO mode, it automatically reduces motor speed to lower the flow rate to resolve the suction and displays the "Impella Flow Reduced" advisory alarm. If the suction is cleared, the controller returns the flow rate to the desired setting. If suction is still detected at the lowest motor speed, the controller displays the "Suction" alarm.

If the "Suction" or "Impella Flow Reduced" alarm occurs during Impella® 2.5 or Impella CP® support, follow the recommended actions:

1. Check the Impella® Catheter for correct positioning using imaging. Reposition the catheter by rotating or moving it into or out of the ventricle slightly. Either or both of these actions could help move the inlet of the Impella® Catheter away from the interior ventricular wall.
2. Ensure patient has adequate volume.
3. Confirm right ventricular function by assessing CVP or right side function with echocardiography or fluoroscopy. If CVP is not an option, check the pulmonary artery diastolic pressure to assess the patient volume status.
4. Return P-level to pre-alarm setting.

If the Impella® 2.5 or Impella CP® Catheter has sudden low flows or suction at startup:

1. Remove the catheter from the patient and ensure that ACT is 250 seconds or above.
2. Closely inspect the inlet and outlet areas and remove any thrombus or other foreign materials.
3. If materials have been removed, run the Impella® at P-8 or AUTO in a basin.
4. If flows are still above 2.2 L/min, reinsert the Impella® Catheter into the patient.
5. If no material is visible or if the flows are still low, there could be a clot inside the device. An assessment (fluoroscopic or echocardiography) of the left ventricle is recommended to rule out left ventricular thrombus before inserting another device.

SUCTION WITH THE IMPELLA® 5.0 OR LD CATHETER

If the "Suction" alarm occurs during support with the Impella® 5.0 or LD Catheter, follow the recommended actions:

1. Reduce P-level by 1 or 2 levels to reduce the effects of suction.
2. Check the Impella® Catheter for correct positioning using imaging. Reposition the catheter by rotating or moving it into or out of the ventricle slightly. Either or both of these actions could help move the inlet of the Impella® Catheter away from the interior ventricular wall.
3. Assess patient's fluid intake and output to confirm adequate volume status.
4. Confirm right ventricular function by assessing CVP or right side function with echocardiography. If CVP is not an option, check the pulmonary artery diastolic pressure to assess the patient volume status.
5. Return the P-level to pre-alarm setting.

HEMOLYSIS

When blood is pumped, it is subjected to mechanical forces. Depending on the strength of the blood cells and the amount of force applied, the cells may be damaged, allowing hemoglobin to enter the plasma. Pumping forces can be generated by a variety of medical procedures including heart lung bypass, hemodialysis, or ventricular assist device (VAD) support. Patient conditions—including catheter position, pre-existing medical conditions, and small left ventricular volumes—may also play a role in patient susceptibility to hemolysis.

Hemolysis should be monitored during support. Patients who develop high levels of hemolysis may show signs of decreased hemoglobin levels, dark or blood-colored urine, and in some cases, acute renal failure. Plasma-free hemoglobin (PfHgb) is the best indicator to confirm whether a patient is exposed to an unacceptable level of hemolysis.

Management technique may differ depending on the underlying cause of hemolysis. Table 7.1 provides guidance for various circumstances.

Table 7.1 Guide for Managing Hemolysis in Various Circumstances

Condition	Controller Indicators	Clinical Indicators	Management
Impella® inlet area in close proximity to intraventricular wall	• "Impella Flow Reduced" or "Suction" alarms • Lower than expected flows	Imaging (see note)	• Reposition the catheter by rotating or moving the catheter into or out of the ventricle slightly. Either or both of these actions could help move the inlet of the catheter away from the intraventricular wall. • If repositioning will be delayed, reduce the P-level if tolerated by patient hemodynamics. Return to the previous P-level after repositioning. • Reassess position after flow rate has returned to desired target value.
Wrong pump position	• Position alarms with higher than expected flows • "Impella Flow Reduced" or "Suction" alarms with lower than expected flows • Pump outlet blocked alarms	Imaging (see note)	• Reposition the catheter by rotating or moving the catheter into or out of the ventricle slightly. Either or both of these actions could help move the inlet of the catheter away from the intraventricular wall. • If repositioning will be delayed, reduce the P-level if tolerated by patient hemodynamics. Return to the previous P-level after repositioning. • Reassess position after flow rate has returned to desired target value.
Higher than needed flow setting	• There may be no controller indicators • "Impella Flow Reduced" or "Suction" alarms	• Normal hemodynamics • Native recovery	• Reduce P-level until patient pressure starts to drop. • Slowly increase P-level.
Inadequate filling volume	• Position alarms • "Impella Flow Reduced" or "Suction" alarms • Lower than expected flows	• Low CVP • Low PCWP • Low AOP • High PA pressures • Right heart failure • High urine output • Increased bleeding or chest tube drainage	• Reduce the P-level if tolerated by patient hemodynamics. • Correct I and O balance. • Consider giving volume; additional volume will expand the end systolic ventricular volume. • Reduce PA pressure. • Improve right heart function.
Pre-existing patient conditions or other medical procedures	N/A	• Patient past medical history • Current procedures or treatments	

Note on imaging: *All imaging technology represents the anatomy in two dimensions (2D). It is not possible to assess the interactions between the catheter and the intraventricular anatomy that occur in three dimensions (3D). Abiomed strongly recommends that the catheter be repositioned, even if the imaging view shows correct position.*

OPERATING THE IMPELLA® CATHETER WITHOUT HEPARIN IN THE PURGE SOLUTION

The Impella® Catheter is designed to be operated with a purge solution that contains heparin. Operation of the system without heparin in the purge solution has not been tested. In the event that a patient is intolerant to heparin, due to heparin-induced thrombocytopenia (HIT) or bleeding, physicians should use their clinical judgment to assess the risks versus benefits of operating the Impella® System without heparin.

If it is in the best interest of the patient to operate the system without heparin, the dextrose solution is still required, and physicians should consider *systemic delivery* of an alternative anticoagulant. DO NOT add any alternative anticoagulant (such as a direct thrombin inhibitor) to the purge fluid. The Impella® Catheter has not been tested with any alternative anticoagulants in the purge solution.

PLACEMENT SIGNAL LUMEN (FOR IMPELLA® 2.5 AND IMPELLA CP®)

BACKGROUND

The Impella® 2.5 and Impella CP® Catheters use a fluid-filled pressure lumen with an inlet at the proximal end of the motor housing and the pressure sensor located in the red Impella® plug. The Automated Impella® Controller software monitors both the pressure waveform characteristics and motor current to determine the placement of the Impella® Catheter inlet and outlet areas relative to the aortic valve.

Table 7.2 provides recommended standards for maintaining the placement signal.

Restoring Placement Signal Quality

You may get a sensor or position alarm if you pinch the white flush valve to restore placement signal quality.

Table 7.2 Recommended Standards for Maintenance of the Placement Signal for Impella® 2.5 and Impella CP® Catheters

Periodic flushing of the placement signal lumen. Note: Either of these actions may result in sensor or position alarms.	*Slight dampening* If you observe a dampened placement signal, pinch the white flush valve located on the red sidearm for a few seconds to restore the placement signal quality. *Severe or lost pressure* 1. Close the roller clamp and disconnect the IV tubing connected to the red pressure sidearm. 2. Connect a syringe of saline to the port and squeeze the white flow valve as you draw negative pressure. 3. Continue aspiration of the port until blood is visualized in the syringe. 4. Disconnect the syringe and open the roller clamp until slow drips of saline exit the tubing. 5. Flood the open port of the red pressure sidearm and then reconnect. 6. Squeeze the white wings of the flow valve for 15 to 20 seconds to flush the pressure lumen to remove all blood from the pressure lumen.
Pressure bag inflation pressure	Maintain pressure bag inflation pressure between 300 mmHg and 350 mmHg.

FLUSH SOLUTION CHANGE OUT PROCEDURE

1. Prime the new NaCl flush solution setup and close the roller clamp.
2. Place the NaCl bag in a pressure bag and inflate to between 300 mmHg and 350 mmHg.
3. Close the roller clamp and disconnect the old flush solution connected at the red sidearm port.
4. Open the roller clamp on the new flush solution setup until you get a slow drip.
5. Position the male luer connector over the female luer connector and fill to overflow, displacing any air, as shown in Figure 7.13.

Figure 7.13 Displacing Air During Flush Solution Change Out Procedure

6. Connect and secure luer fittings.
7. Fully open the roller clamp and squeeze the white wings for approximately 5 to 10 seconds to complete the internal prime. This final prime should eliminate any risk of lost or dampened pressure caused by blood tracking into the pressure lumen during the pressure tubing change.

PRESSURE SENSOR DRIFT AND PLACEMENT SIGNAL NOT RELIABLE (FOR IMPELLA® 5.0 AND LD)

MANUALLY ZEROING THE DIFFERENTIAL PRESSURE SENSOR

The electrical signal produced by the differential pressure sensor may drift over time.

If you observe that the placement waveform has shifted up or down on the display, or the expected flow does not match the current P-level setting, zero the differential pressure sensor by performing the following steps:

1. Press the **MENU** key and select "Start Manual Zero."
2. Select **OK** to confirm the decrease in P-level.
3. The controller displays "Wait until the new P-level is reached" and then "Calculation is running."
4. Select **OK** to accept the new setting when the controller displays the "Placement Signal Offset Adjust finished!" message.
5. The Impella® will automatically be reset to the previous P-level.

PLACEMENT SIGNAL NOT RELIABLE AND EFFECTS ON FLOW CALCULATIONS

If the pressure sensor fails, the controller can no longer calculate the flow rate. The controller displays a triangle with "Flow Calculation Disabled." The screen displays a yellow question mark over the heart icon and "Placement Monitoring Suspended."

To silence this alarm, go to **MENU** and select **SETTINGS/SERVICE**.

PLACEMENT SIGNAL NOT RELIABLE AND EFFECTS ON POSITION CONTROL

If the pressure sensor fails, placement monitoring is switched off because it is not possible to display the position of the catheter. In this case, the motor current signal or imaging procedures can be used for position control. As long as the motor current signal is pulsatile, the Impella® 5.0 or LD Catheter is correctly positioned across the valve. This signal must be monitored closely because the catheter can become displaced when moving the patient or changing the patient's position. Therefore, if patient hemodynamics change—for example, if arterial pressure falls or there are signs of left ventricular failure—check the correct positioning of the catheter using imaging procedures (eg, TEE) and the motor current signal.

Accuracy of Displayed Flow Rate

Under normal operating conditions, displayed flow rate can deviate from the actual flow rate by up to 0.5 L/min.

Zeroing the Differential Pressure Sensor When the Impella® 5.0 Catheter is Running

The controller software contains a data table listing the expected differential pressure for a given motor current when the motor speed is set to a specific value. To zero the differential pressure sensor while the Impella® 5.0 Catheter is running, the software sets the motor speed and measures the motor current. Using the data table, the software determines what the measured differential pressure should be, then adjusts the signal from the differential pressure sensor so that it matches the expected value.

SUCTION DETECTION DURING SENSOR DRIFT OR SENSOR FAILURE

If sensor drift occurs or the pressure sensor fails, the controller can no longer detect suction. (For more information about suction, refer to the "Suction" discussion earlier in this section of the manual.) The effectiveness of Impella® 5.0 or LD Catheter support can only be assessed by monitoring patient hemodynamics, cardiac imaging, and the Impella® 5.0 Catheter motor current.

Signs of suction include:

- A drop in the patient's arterial pressure
- Decreased output, if a cardiac monitor is in place
- Dampened or flat motor current waveforms

If imaging reveals that the suction is caused by the catheter inlet area in close proximity to the intraventricular wall, reposition the catheter as described in Table 7.1. If hemodynamic parameters, such as low aortic pressure or high pulmonary artery pressure, indicate suction caused by inadequate filling volume, reduce P-level and follow the management strategies described in Table 7.1.

ENABLING PURGE FLOW NOTIFICATIONS

The purge flow notification white alarms ("Purge Flow Increased" and "Purge Flow Decreased") are disabled by default.

To enable these alarms:

1. Press **MENU** and scroll to "Settings/Services." Press the selector knob.
2. Scroll to "Enable Purge Flow Change Notifications" and press the selector knob to enable these alarms.

DISABLING AUDIO FOR PLACEMENT SIGNAL LUMEN BLOCKED ALARM (IMPELLA® 2.5 AND IMPELLA CP®)

The audio for the "Placement Signal Lumen Blocked" alarm can be disabled.

To disable the audio for this alarm:

1. Press **MENU** and scroll to "Settings/Services." Press the selector knob.
2. Scroll to "Disable Audio – Placement Signal Lumen Blocked" and press the selector knob to disable the audio for this alarm.

DISABLING AUDIO FOR SUCTION ALARM

The audio for the "Suction" alarm can be disabled.

To disable the audio for this alarm:

1. Press **MENU** and scroll to "Settings/Services." Press the selector knob.
2. Scroll to "Disable Audio – Suction" and press the selector knob to disable the audio for this alarm.

DISABLING AUDIO FOR PLACEMENT SIGNAL NOT RELIABLE ALARM

The audio for the "Placement Signal Not Reliable" alarm can be disabled.
To disable the audio for this alarm:

1. Press **MENU** and scroll to "Settings/Services." Press the selector knob.
2. Scroll to "Disable Audio – Placement Signal Not Reliable" and press the selector knob to disable the audio for this alarm.

DISABLING AUDIO FOR PURGE PRESSURE HIGH AND PURGE SYSTEM BLOCKED ALARMS

The audio for the "Purge Pressure High" and "Purge Pressure Blocked" alarms can be disabled.

To disable the audio for this alarm:

1. Press **MENU** and scroll to "Settings/Services." Press the selector knob.
2. Scroll to "Disable Audio – Purge Pressure High/System Blocked" and press the selector knob to disable the audio for this alarm.

SURGICAL MODE

Surgical Mode can be enabled to silence the "Impella Stopped" alarm that occurs when P-level is reduced to P-0. A white banner notification (see Figure 7.14) appears throughout the duration of Surgical Mode support.

To enable Surgical Mode:

1. Press **MENU** and scroll to "Settings/Services." Press the selector knob.
2. Scroll to "Enable Surgical Mode" and press the selector knob to enable it.

You can disable Surgical Mode in one of two ways:

1. Increase P-level above P-0, or
2. Press **MENU** and scroll to and select "Settings/Services" and then scroll to and select "Disable Surgical Mode."

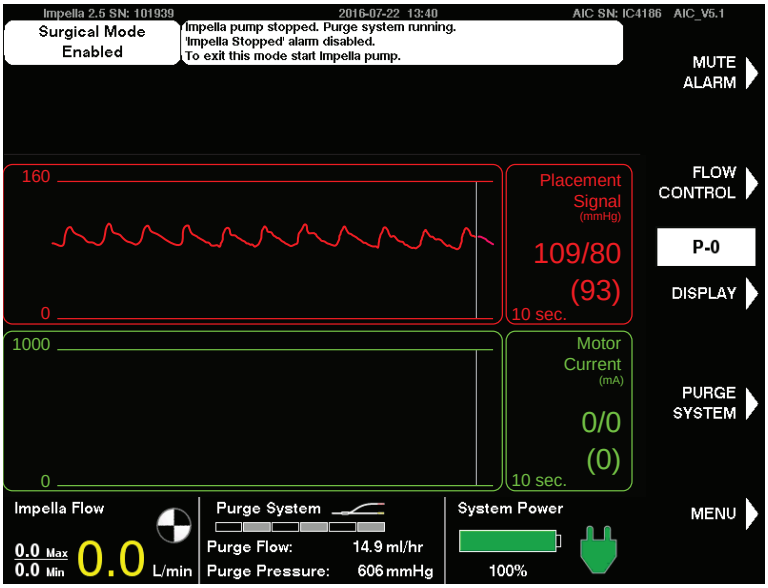


Figure 7.14 Surgical Mode Enabled

TIMED DATA RECORDING

The Automated Impella® Controller can hold up to 24 hours of real-time data. Once memory is full, the controller starts overwriting the old data. The timed data recording feature allows you to permanently save real-time operating data for later analysis. Timed data recording is automatically turned on during certain alarm conditions to capture data for analysis. You can also manually turn on the feature at any time to capture data for later analysis.

To manually access the timed data recording feature:

1. Press **MENU** and scroll to "Start Data Snapshot." Press the selector knob.
2. The controller records data for a predefined period of 10 minutes.

OPERATING THE IMPELLA® CATHETER IN ELECTROMAGNETIC FIELDS

The Impella® Catheter contains a permanent magnet motor that emits an electromagnetic field.

This field may produce electromagnetic interference with other equipment. In addition, other equipment that emits a strong electromagnetic field may affect the operation of the Impella® Catheter motor.

ELECTROANATOMIC MAPPING (EAM) SYSTEMS

The electromagnetic field emitted by the Impella® Catheter may produce interference with the magnetic location detection component of the electroanatomic mapping (EAM) system, particularly when the mapping catheter is close to the Impella® Catheter motor. For example, mapping in the right or left ventricular outflow tracts places the mapping catheter in close proximity to the Impella® Catheter motor in the ascending aorta.

Examples of EAM Systems

CARTO® 3 System and CARTO® XP Navigation System (Biosense Webster, Inc.)

Electromagnetic interference may appear as:

- Instability in the displayed location of the mapping catheter
- Magnetic interference errors generated by the electroanatomic mapping system

When operating the Impella® Catheter in the presence of an EAM system, use P-level mode. Operate the Impella® Catheter at P-1–P-5 or P-7. The motor speeds at these P-levels cause the least interference. Best performance is observed when the Impella® Catheter motor is at least 3 cm from the sensors in the mapping catheter. If you suspect interference, follow the troubleshooting steps in Table 7.3.

Table 7.3 Troubleshooting When Operating the Impella® Catheter in the Presence of an EAM System

Observation	Actions
Interference with the magnetic location detection component of the EAM system	1. Check for and address other sources of interference. 2. Reposition the Impella® Catheter to ensure that the Impella® motor is at least 3 cm from the sensors in the mapping catheter; however do NOT pull the inlet area out of the left ventricle. 3. Ensure that the Impella® Catheter is operating at P-1–P-5 or P-7, as these P-levels cause the least interference.

MAGNETIC NAVIGATION SYSTEMS (MNS)

Example of MNS

Stereotaxis Niobe® Magnetic Navigation System (Stereotaxis)

When initiating Impella® Catheter support in the presence of a magnetic navigation system (MNS), follow the steps below:

1. Insert the Impella® Catheter following the steps outlined in section 5 of this manual.
2. Place the MNS magnets in the "Reduced" or "Stowed" position.
3. Start the Impella® Catheter in the manner described in section 5 of this manual. Increase P-level to P-3.
4. Place the MNS magnets in the "Navigate" position and proceed with magnetic navigation.

Keep operating the Impella® Catheter at a P-level of at least P-3 when the MNS magnets are in the "Navigate" position. If the P-level falls below P-3, the Impella® Catheter may stop running. To resume operation, follow the steps in Table 7.4.

During magnetic navigation of the mapping catheter, the motor current of the Impella® Catheter

may temporarily increase to the point that the catheter stops running. Table 7.4 explains how to resume operation.

When the MNS magnets are in the "Navigate" position, the displayed Impella® Catheter flow may be artificially elevated. To accurately assess the flow rate, note the displayed flow when the magnets are in the "Stowed" position.

Table 7.4 Troubleshooting When Operating the Impella® Catheter in the Presence of a MNS System

Observation	Actions
Unable to start Impella® or Impella® stops running	1. Place the MNS magnets in the "Reduced" position and attempt to start the Impella® Catheter. 2. If the Impella® Catheter does NOT start with the magnets in the "Reduced" position, place the magnets in the "Stowed" position and start the Impella® Catheter. 3. Increase the Impella® Catheter P-level to P-3 or higher. 4. Place the MNS magnets in the "Navigate" position and proceed with magnetic navigation.
MNS magnets: "Navigate" Displayed flow seems too high or MNS magnets: "Stowed" Displayed flow drops	The Impella® Catheter displayed flow will be artificially elevated when the MNS magnets are in the "Navigate" position. The displayed flow will be accurate when the MNS magnets are in the "Stowed" position.

TRANSFERRING FROM THE AUTOMATED IMPELLA® CONTROLLER TO A NEW AUTOMATED IMPELLA® CONTROLLER

Change Purge Fluid to Obtain Accurate Purge Values

To get accurate purge values after changing to a backup controller, perform the Change Purge Fluid procedure (described in section 5 of this manual) and replace the purge fluid bag.

TRANSFER STEPS

A backup Automated Impella® Controller should be available at all times when a patient is on support. In the event that the controller fails, follow the steps below to transition the Impella® Catheter to the backup controller.

1. Confirm that the backup controller is powered on and ready.
2. Press **PURGE SYSTEM** on the original controller, select Change Purge Fluid, and complete the step to bolus the purge system. (Do NOT flush the purge fluid from the cassette.)
3. Disconnect the yellow luer connector from the Impella® Catheter to release the pressure in the purge cassette.
4. Transfer the purge cassette and purge solution from the original controller to the backup controller.

5. Reconnect the yellow luer connector to the Impella® Catheter.
6. Remove the white connector cable from the original controller and plug it into the catheter plug on the front of the backup controller.
7. Once the Impella® Catheter is connected to the backup controller, wait for a message to appear on the screen asking you to confirm re-starting the Impella® Catheter at the previously set P-level.
8. Press **OK** within 10 seconds to confirm restarting the Impella® Catheter at the previously set P-level.
9. If the message to restart the Impella® Catheter does not appear within 30 seconds, restart the Impella® Catheter using the **FLOW CONTROL** soft button.

PATIENT MANAGEMENT CHECKLIST FOLLOWING TRANSFER OF SUPPORT

After transferring patient support to or from the Automated Impella® Controller, perform each of the following patient management checklist items:

1. Confirm Impella® Catheter placement using echocardiography.
2. Tighten the Tuohy-Borst valve (tighten all the way to the right) on the Impella® Catheter to prevent catheter migration.
3. For the Impella® 2.5 and Impella CP® Catheters, attach a saline pressure bag pressurized to 350 mmHg to the red sidearm and complete the "Transfer to Standard Configuration" procedure under the **PURGE SYSTEM** menu if not already completed.

Questions or Concerns?

Contact the local Abiomed team or call the 24 hour clinical support line at 1-800-422-8666.

EMERGENCY SHUTDOWN PROCEDURE

In the unlikely event that the Automated Impella® Controller software stops responding, follow the procedure below to restart the controller without stopping the Impella® Catheter.

1. Press and hold the power switch for 30 seconds.
2. An "Emergency Shutdown Imminent" alarm will sound at 15 seconds.
3. The controller will shut down after 30 seconds.
4. Restart the controller.

8 AUTOMATED IMPELLA® CONTROLLER ALARMS

ALARMS OVERVIEW

The Automated Impella® Controller monitors various functions to determine whether specific operational parameters are within expected limits. When a parameter goes outside of its specified limits, the Automated Impella® Controller sounds an alarm tone and displays an alarm message that can be viewed on the display screen on the front of the controller. The alarm tone indicates the severity of the alarm. The alarm message on the display screen is color-coded for severity and provides details on the cause of the alarm and how to resolve the alarm. After muting an alarm, if another alarm occurs it will only be heard and displayed if it is a higher priority alarm than the one that was muted.

ALARM LEVELS

Alarms are divided into three levels of severity:

- Advisory (white)
- Serious (yellow)
- Critical (red)

Table 8.1 Alarm Levels

Category	Description	Audible Indicator*	Visual Indicator
Advisory	Notification	1 beep every 5 minutes	Alarm header on white background
Serious	May become harmful or life-threatening if not addressed immediately	3 beeps every 15 seconds	Alarm header on yellow background
Critical	Immediately harmful or life-threatening	10 beeps every 6.7 seconds	Alarm header on red background

* Sound pressure of audible alarm indicators is >80 dBA

For some alarms, there is a short delay between the triggered event and the audible annunciation and visual display of the alarm. (For more information, refer to the "Alarm Delay Information" discussion in section 9 of this manual.)

ALARM DISPLAY

The alarm window is located in the upper left region of the display screen on the front of the Automated Impella® Controller (see Figure 8.1). Alarms are listed in order of priority, with the highest priority alarm at the top. Up to three alarms may be displayed at one time. The colored background behind the highest priority alarm will alternate between two shades of that color. The white panel displayed to the right of the alarm header contains instructions for resolving the alarm condition. The instructions should be followed in the order given.

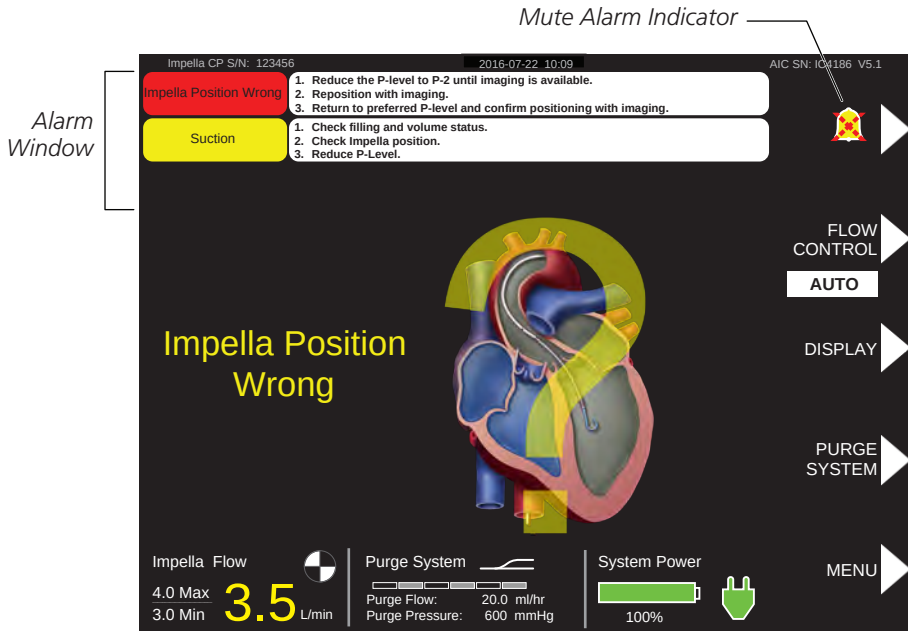


Figure 8.1 Alarm Window

Alarms That Resolve On Their Own

The audible indicator will shut off if an alarm condition is resolved before you press ***MUTE ALARM****. The visual message, however, will continue to be displayed, with the alarm header on a gray background, for 20 minutes or until you press* ***MUTE ALARM****. This allows you to identify the alarm that occurred.*

MUTE ALARM FUNCTION

Pressing the **MUTE ALARM** button on the upper right of the Automated Impella® Controller display screen will silence the audible alarm indicator for 2 minutes (for red or yellow alarms) or 5 minutes (for white advisory alarms). When an alarm is silenced, the words "MUTE ALARM" next to the button are replaced by the mute alarm indicator, a crossed-out bell icon (as shown in Figure 8.1).

ALARM HISTORY SCREEN

The alarm history screen may be accessed through the **MENU**. This screen contains a log of the alarms that occurred during the case. This log is not maintained when the Automated Impella® Controller is powered down or after a power failure. The controller does, however, maintain a long-term log that is saved after the Automated Impella® Controller is powered down or after a power failure and this information may be downloaded by Abiomed personnel.

ALARM MESSAGE SUMMARY

Table 8.2 briefly describes all of the alarm messages that may appear on the Automated Impella® Controller when used with the Impella® 2.5 Catheter.

Table 8.2 Automated Impella® Controller Alarm Messages

Severity	Alarm Header	Action	Cause
Critical Alarms	**Air in Purge System**	The purge system has stopped. Initiate the De-air Tool and follow instructions to remove the air from the system.	There is air in the purge tubing.
	Battery Critically Low	Plug controller into AC power.	Battery power has 15% remaining capacity.
	Battery Failure	1. Plug controller into AC power. 2. Press switch located on the underside of the controller. 3. Switch to backup controller.	A battery switch is turned off or there is a malfunction of the switch.
	Battery Failure	Plug controller into AC power.	One of the batteries has failed.
	Battery Temperature High	Switch to backup controller.	Battery temperature is greater than 60°C.
	Complete Procedure	1. Follow the steps on the screen or 2. Exit the procedure	Complete Procedure serious alarm (yellow; *see next page*) is active and the user has not responded for an additional 2 minutes.
	Controller Failure	Switch to backup controller.	There is a problem with the controller electronics.
	Controller Failure	The purge system has stopped. Switch to backup controller.	The controller has detected a purge pressure sensor defect and has stopped the purge system.
	Emergency Shutdown Imminent	Release ON/OFF push button.	Power switch pressed for 15 seconds while Impella® is still connected.
	Impella Disconnected	1. Check cable connection to console. 2. Check Impella connection to cable.	Running Impella® Catheter disconnected.
	Impella Failure	Replace Impella.	There is a problem with the Impella® Catheter motor.

Table 8.2 Automated Impella® Controller Alarm Messages (continued)

Severity	Alarm Header	Action	Cause
Critical Alarms	**Impella Position In Ventricle**	1. Reduce the P-level to P-2 until imaging is available. 2. Reposition with imaging. 3. Return to preferred P-level and confirm positioning with imaging.	Controller has detected that Impella® Catheter is fully in the ventricle.
	Impella Position Wrong	1. Reduce the P-level to P-2 until imaging is available. 2. Reposition with imaging. 3. Return to preferred P-level and confirm positioning with imaging.	Controller has detected that Impella® Catheter is in the wrong position.
	Impella Stopped **Retrograde Flow**	To prevent retrograde flow, restart Impella or withdraw pump from ventricle.	Impella® Catheter is not running; possible retrograde flow through Impella® Catheter.
	Impella Stopped	1. Restart Impella. 2. Replace Impella after 3rd unsuccessful restart attempt.	There may be a mechanical or electrical problem in the Impella® Catheter.
	Impella Stopped	1. Replace white connector cable. 2. Switch to backup controller. 3. Replace Impella Catheter.	There is a problem with the electronics.
	Impella Stopped **Controller Failure**	Switch to backup controller.	There is a problem with the controller electronics.
	Impella Stopped **Motor Current High**	1. Restart Impella. 2. Replace Impella after 3rd unsuccessful restart attempt.	There is a problem with the Impella® Catheter motor.
	Purge Disc Not Detected	Reinsert Purge Disc.	The controller is not detecting that the purge disc is clicked into the front of the controller.
	Purge Pressure High	1. Check purge system tubing for kinks. 2. Decrease concentration of dextrose in the purge solution.	Purge pressure is ≥1100 mmHg with the purge flow <2 mL/hr.
	Purge Pressure Low	1. Check purge system tubing for leaks. 2. Increase concentration of dextrose in the purge solution. 3. Replace purge cassette.	Purge pressure has dropped below 300 mmHg with the purge flow ≥30 mL/hr for 30 seconds or longer.

Table 8.2 Automated Impella® Controller Alarm Messages (continued)

Severity	Alarm Header	Action	Cause
Critical Alarms	**Purge System Blocked**	1. Check all purge system tubing for kinks or blockages. 2. Decrease concentration of dextrose in the purge solution.	Purge flow has dropped below 1 mL/hr. Kinked or blocked purge connecting tube. Kinked or blocked purge lumen in Impella® Catheter.
	Purge System Failure	1. Replace purge cassette. 2. Switch to backup controller.	There is a problem with the purge cassette or purge unit driver.
	Purge System Open	1. Check the purge system tubing for open connections or leaks. 2. Replace purge cassette.	Purge pressure has dropped below 100 mmHg for 20 seconds or longer.
	Retrograde Flow	Check for high afterload pressure.	Retrograde flow detected at high motor speed.
Serious Alarms	**Battery Comm. Failure**	Plug controller into AC power.	Loss of communication to the battery.
	Battery Level Low	Plug controller into AC power.	Battery has 50% remaining capacity.
	Battery Temperature High	1. Check controller for blocked air vents. 2. Switch to backup controller.	Battery temperature is greater than 50°C and less than or equal to 60°C.
	Complete Procedure	1. Follow the steps on the screen or 2. Exit the procedure	User has not responded to a de-air or purge procedure screen for more than 1 minute or a transfer to standard configuration screen for more than 5 minutes.
	Controller Error	Switch to backup controller.	There is a problem with the controller electronics.
	Impella Catheter Not Supported	1. Replace Impella with supported catheter (2.5, CP, 5.0, LD, RP). 2. Contact Abiomed Service to upgrade Impella Controller.	The Impella® Catheter is not supported to operate with the current version of controller software and/or hardware.
	Impella Defective	Do not use Impella. Replace Impella.	There is a problem with the Impella® Catheter electronics.
	Impella Flow Low	1. Check for suction. 2. Check for high afterload pressure.	Actual flow is below 2.5 L/min.
	Impella Outflow Blocked	1. Confirm Impella position with imaging. 2. Pull Impella back 2 cm.	Flow to Impella Catheter outlet area obstructed.

Table 8.2 Automated Impella® Controller Alarm Messages (continued)

Severity	Alarm Header	Action	Cause
Serious Alarms	**Impella Position Wrong**	1. Confirm Impella position with imaging. 2. Pull Impella back 2 cm.	Controller has detected that the Impella® Catheter is in the wrong position, with the outlet area too close to the aortic valve.
	Placement Signal Not Reliable	Placement Monitoring and Suction are suspended. 1. Monitor patient hemodynamics. 2. Monitor Impella position with imaging.	There is a problem with the Impella® Catheter sensor signal.
	Purge Cassette Failure	Replace purge cassette.	There is a problem with the purge cassette hardware.
	Purge Volume Critically Low	1. Open the **PURGE SYSTEM** menu and select Change Purge Fluid. 2. Follow the instructions to change the purge fluid.	There are 15 mL (in addition to 5% of the starting bag volume) or fewer remaining in the purge fluid bag.
	Reinstall Software	Software installation was unsuccessful. Reinstall software.	Software was not installed successfully
	Suction	1. Check filling and volume status. 2. Check Impella position. 3. Reduce P-level.	Suction is detected.
Advisory Alarms	**AC Power Disconnected**	Controller is running on battery power.	AC power was disconnected.
	Audio Off	The audio for the following alarm has been disabled. *<Alarm will be listed here>*	User has disabled audio for Placement Signal Not Reliable, Purge Pressure High, Purge System Blocked, Suction, or Placement Signal Lumen Blocked alarm.
	Impella Flow Reduced	1. Check Impella position. 2. Check filling and volume status. 3. Reduce P-Level.	Motor speed has been reduced in response to suction.
	Impella Position Unknown	Impella Catheter position unknown due to low pulsatility. Assess cardiac function.	Impella Catheter position unknown due to low pulsatility.
	Impella Position Unknown	Confirm Impella position with imaging.	Impella Catheter position unknown detected by algorithm
	Placement Signal Lumen Blocked	Placement and Suction Monitoring are Suspended. Aspirate with syringe, then flush.	Placement signal pulsatility is low and placement signal amplitude is high (>130mmHg) for 30 consecutive seconds.

Table 8.2 Automated Impella® Controller Alarm Messages (continued)

Severity	Alarm Header	Action	Cause
Advisory Alarms	**Preventing Retrograde Flow**	Impella P-level has increased to prevent retrograde flow. 1. Consider increasing target P-level. 2. For weaning, disable Retrograde Flow Control through **MENU** soft key.	Retrograde flow has been detected and minimum motor speed has been increased to more than target P-level
	Purge Cassette Incompatible	Contact Abiomed Service to update Impella Controller.	Incompatible purge cassette RFID version.
	Purge Flow Decreased	The purge flow has decreased by 2.5 mL/hr or more. This is a notification only; no action is required.	Purge flow has decreased by ≥2.5 mL/hr.
	Purge Flow Increased	The purge flow has increased by 2.5 mL/hr or more. This is a notification only; no action is required.	Purge flow has increased by ≥2.5 mL/hr.
	Purge Volume Low	1. Open **PURGE SYSTEM** menu and select Change Purge Fluid. 2. Follow the instructions to change the purge fluid.	There are 30 mL (in addition to 5% of the starting bag volume) or fewer remaining in the purge fluid bag.
	Surgical Mode Enabled	Impella pump stopped. Purge system running. 'Impella Stopped' alarm disabled. To exit this mode start Impella pump.	Surgical Mode has been enabled to silence "Impella Stopped" alarm at P-0.
	Transfer to Standard Configuration	Press the Purge System soft key then select Transfer to Standard Configuration.	Follow instructions or press **MUTE ALARM** to clear the alarm for 30 minutes.
	Unexpected Controller Shutdown	Switch to back-up Controller if condition persists.	Unexpected restart of controller due to software of hardware failures.

9 GENERAL SYSTEM INFORMATION

TERMINOLOGY, ABBREVIATIONS, AND SYMBOLS

TERMINOLOGY AND ABBREVIATIONS

Table 9.1 Terminology and Abbreviations

Catheter serial number	Identification number of the Impella® Catheter; stated on the package label, on the red Impella® plug, and the Automated Impella® Controller display screen
Dextrose and **Glucose**	The terms "dextrose" and "glucose" are used interchangeably to refer to the solution used as purge fluid for the Impella® System
Hz	Hertz
Motor housing (or pump housing)	Enclosure of the Impella® Catheter motor
Pump	Central delivery unit of the Impella® Catheter, consisting of the motor, motor housing, cannula with inlet and outlet, and pigtail at the tip
Purge pressure	Pressure present in the Impella® Catheter and in the infusion line
Purge system	Impella® purge cassette used for rinsing the Impella® Catheter
Retrograde flow	Reverse flow through the cannula when the Impella® Catheter is at a standstill (eg, regurgitation)
V	Volt
VA	Volt ampere (Watt)

SYMBOLS

Table 9.2 Symbols

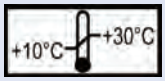
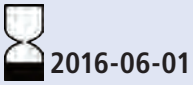
	Caution; consult instructions for use
	Defibrillator-proof type CF equipment
	Keep dry
	Storage temperature (eg, 10°C to 30°C)
CE	Declares conformity with Directive 93/42/EEC for medical devices, and with Directive 2011/65/EU on the restriction of the use of certain hazardous substances in electrical and electronic equipment
 2014-10-01	Date of manufacture (eg, October 1, 2014)

Table 9.2 Symbols (continued)

	Protect from sunlight
	Symbol for lot designation; the manufacturer's lot designation must be stated after the LOT symbol
REF 123456	Abiomed part number (eg, part number 123456)
SN 123456	Manufacturer's serial number (eg, serial number 123456)
Non Sterile!	The product is not sterile
	Use-by date (eg, use before June 1, 2016)
	Do not reuse
	Sterilized using ethylene oxide
	Electric scrap; must be disposed of separately. Must not be disposed of as domestic waste.
	Protective Earth
	ON / OFF
	Alternating current (AC) only
	Equipotentiality
	Fuse
	Non-ionizing electromagnetic radiation
	USB port
	CAT 5 Port (Ethernet)
	MR Unsafe
	Do NOT flush
	Use glucose in the purge fluid
	Use saline in the pressure bag; squeeze at the green arrows to flush

AUTOMATED IMPELLA® CONTROLLER MECHANICAL SPECIFICATIONS

Table 9.3 Mechanical specifications for the Automated Impella Controller

Parameter	Specification	
Model Number	0042-0000-US	
Temperature	Operating:	10°C to 40°C (50°F to 104°F)
	Storage:	–15°C to 50°C (5°F to 122°F)
Relative Humidity	Operating:	95%
	Storage:	95%
Atmospheric Pressure	Operating:	8000 ft (750 hPa) to –1000 ft (1050 hPa)
	Storage:	18,000 ft (500 hPa) to –1000 ft (1050 hPa)
Dimensions	Height:	351 mm (13.8 in)
	Width:	443 mm (17.4 in)
	Depth:	236 mm (9.3 in)
Dimensions – Packaged	Height:	508 mm (20.0 in)
	Width:	559 mm (22.0 in)
	Depth:	406 mm (15.0 in)
Weight	Maximum:	11.8 kg (26.1 lbs)
Weight – Packaged	Maximum:	13.6 kg (30 lbs)
Maintenance and repair interval	12 months (Work must be performed by technicians authorized by Abiomed who have completed Abiomed's Service Training Certification Program)	

AUTOMATED IMPELLA® CONTROLLER ELECTRICAL SPECIFICATIONS

Table 9.4 Electrical specifications for the Automated Impella Controller

AC operation	100-230 V AC (nominal); 47-63 Hz; 1.1 A
Internal battery operation	14.4 V DC (nominal); lithium ion
Characteristic values	
Max. power consumption under load	120 VA
Fuses	2 Amp. 250 V. 5 mm x 20 mm, slow-blow fuses
Running time without AC power with fully charged batteries	At least 60 minutes (charging duration of at least 5 hours)
Electrical system	Installation in accordance with pertinent regulations is required for use in medical facilities (eg, IEC stipulations).

NOTE: Circuit diagrams available upon request.

EQUIPMENT DESIGN

The Automated Impella® Controller conforms to the applicable requirements of the following standards:

- IEC 60601-1 (2005/01/01) Ed:3 *Medical Electrical Equipment Part 1: General Requirements for Basic Safety and Essential Performance*
- CSA C22.2#60601-1 (2008) Ed:3 *Medical Electrical Equipment Part 1: General Requirements for Basic Safety and Essential Performance*
- CENELEC EN60601-1 (2006) *Medical Electrical Equipment Part 1: General Requirements for Basic Safety and Essential Performance. Included when concurrent with IEC 60601*
- AAMI ES60601-1 (2005) *Medical Electrical Equipment Part 1: General Requirements for Basic Safety and Essential Performance*
- UL 60601-1 (2003), +Revision (2006) 1st Edition *Medical Electrical Equipment, Part 1: General Requirements for Safety*
- CAN/CSA C22.2 No 601.1-M90 (1990; Reaffirmed 2005) + Amendment 2 (2006), *Medical Electrical Equipment, Part 1: General Requirements for Safety*
- IEC 60601-1 (1998) 2nd Edition *Medical Electrical Equipment Part 1: General Requirements for Safety* + (Amd. 1-1991) (CENELEC EN 60601-1: 1990) + (Amd. 2-1995) (Corrigendum-1995)
- IEC 60601-1-1 (2000), 2nd Edition *Medical Electrical Equipment, Part 1-1: General Requirements for Safety – Collateral Standard: Safety Requirements for Medical Electrical Equipment*
- IEC 60601-1-4 (2000), Edition 1.1 Consolidated Edition, *Medical Electrical Equipment Part 1-4: General Requirements for Safety – Collateral Standard: Programmable Electrical Medical Systems*
- IEC 60601-1-2:2007 Edition 3, *Medical Electrical Equipment – Part 1-2: General Requirements for Basic Safety and Essential Performance – Collateral Standard: Electromagnetic Compatibility – Requirements and Tests*
- IEC 60601-1-2 (2001), *Medical Electrical Equipment, Part 1-2: General Requirements for Safety – Collateral Standard: Electromagnetic Compatibility – Requirements and Tests*
- IEC 60601-1-6 (2010) 3rd Edition *Medical Electrical Equipment – Part 1-6: General Requirements for Safety – Collateral Standard: Usability*
- IEC 60601-1-6 (2004) *Medical Electrical Equipment – Part 1-6: General Requirements for Safety – Collateral Standard: Usability*
- IEC 60601-1-8 (2006) 2nd Edition *Medical Electrical Equipment – Part 1-8: General Requirements for Basic Safety and Essential Performance – General Requirements, Tests and Guidance for Alarm Systems in Medical Electrical Equipment and Medical Electrical Systems*
- IEC 60601-1-8 (2003) *Medical Electrical Equipment – Part 1-8: General Requirements for Safety – Collateral Standard: General Requirements, Tests and Guidance for Alarm Systems in Medical Electrical Equipment and Medical Electrical Systems*

EQUIPMENT CLASSIFICATIONS

Table 9.5 Equipment classifications

Type of protection against electric shock	IEC 60601-1: Class I degree of protection: CF defibrillation-proof and internally powered. Relies not only on basic insulation against shock but also includes additional protection. Accomplished by providing means for connecting the equipment to the protective earth conductor of the fixed wiring of the installation in a way that prevents accessible metal parts from becoming live if basic insulation fails.
Degree of protection against electric shock for Automated Impella® Controller	Class I Equipment
Mode of operation	Continuous
Degree of protection against explosion hazard	Not suitable for use in the presence of a flammable anesthetic mixture with air or with oxygen or nitrous oxide. Also not suitable for use in an oxygen-enriched atmosphere.
Degree of protection against harmful ingress of water	IEC 60529: IPX1 protected against dripping water.

FEDERAL COMMUNICATIONS COMMISSION (FCC) NOTICE

This device complies with Part 15 of the FCC Rules. Operation is subject to the following two conditions:

1. This device may not cause harmful interference.
2. This device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

Changes or modifications not expressly approved by Abiomed, Inc. could void the user's authority to operate this device.

ELECTROMAGNETIC COMPATIBILITY

	Medical electrical equipment needs special precautions regarding EMC and needs to be installed and put into service according to the electromagnetic compatibility (EMC) information provided in this document.
	Portable and mobile RF communications equipment can affect medical electrical equipment.
	The equipment or system should not be used adjacent to or stacked with other equipment. If adjacent or stacked use is necessary, the equipment or system should be observed to verify normal operation in the configuration in which it will be used.
	Use of cables, other than those sold by Abiomed, may result in increased emissions or decreased immunity of the Automated Impella® Controller.
	The Automated Impella® Controller uses RFID (radio frequency identification) to identify and communicate with the purge cassette. Other equipment may interfere with the Automated Impella® Controller even if that other equipment complies with CISPR emission requirements.
	During transport, the Automated Impella® Controller may be exposed to stronger electromagnetic disturbance than during in-hospital use. Strong electromagnetic disturbance may cause the Automated Impella® Controller to display soft button menu selections that were not selected by the user. Operators should be aware that, under these conditions, the operating parameters are not affected. No user intervention is required. Monitor Impella® Catheter flow and patient hemodynamics to confirm normal operation. The condition will resolve itself once the Automated Impella® Controller is no longer exposed to the disturbance.

NOTE: The EMC tables and other guidelines that are included in this manual provide information to the customer or user that is essential in determining the suitability of the equipment or system for the electromagnetic environment of use, and in managing the electromagnetic environment of use permit the equipment or system to perform to its intended use without disturbing other equipment and systems or non-medical electrical equipment. For the electromagnetic testing (detailed in the following tables), the AIC Essential Performance was specified as: *during the entire testing period, the AIC continues to provide support to the patient.*

TRANSPORT BETWEEN HOSPITALS

During transport, the Automated Impella® Controller may be exposed to stronger electromagnetic disturbance than during in-hospital use. Strong electromagnetic disturbance may cause the Automated Impella® Controller to display soft button menu selections that were not selected by the user. Operators should be aware that, under these conditions, the operating parameters are not affected. No user intervention is required. Monitor Impella® Catheter flow and patient hemodynamics to confirm normal operation. The condition will resolve itself once the Automated Impella® Controller is no longer exposed to the disturbance.

GUIDELINES FOR PATIENT TRANSPORT

Intra-hospital transport with the Impella® Catheter in place may be required if a patient requires additional resources and specialized teams located at another hospital. The patient may be transferred to such a location using the Automated Impella® Controller for hospital-to-hospital transport via ambulance, helicopter, or fixed-wing aircraft.

Maintaining optimal patient hemodynamic status and correct Impella® Catheter position are two key factors in managing patients supported with the Impella Ventricular Support Systems during transport. Steps should be taken to eliminate or minimize any aspect of the transport that might adversely affect these factors.

The Automated Impella® Controller is designed to operate for 60 minutes on battery power. Transport teams should take this into consideration when planning the transport. If the total transport time is expected to include more than 60 minutes during which the system will be disconnected from AC power, arrangements should be made to use a vehicle with a built-in DC to AC power inverter.

IMPORTANT TRANSPORT CONSIDERATIONS

1. Planning is critical to success. Abiomed representatives can help with planning for transport. They can be contacted 24 hours a day at 1-800-422-8666.
2. The Automated Impella® Controller should be fully charged prior to transport. Keep the Automated Impella® Controller connected to AC power (or an AC inverter) whenever possible.
3. Do not stress the connector cable from the controller to the Impella® Catheter. Such tension could move the catheter out of correct position and compromise patient circulatory support.
4. Carefully monitor purge pressures during changes in altitude.
5. The Automated Impella® Controller should be positioned to allow easy access to the display screen and soft buttons to view alarms and make any necessary changes.
6. Maintain ACTs between 160 and 180 or at the level recommended by the physician responsible for the patient.

FAA ADVISORY

The Automated Impella® Controller has been subjected to, and passed, the EMC/EMI tests as specified in IEC 60601-1-2 (General requirements for basic safety and essential performance—Collateral standard: Electromagnetic compatibility—Requirements and tests). The Automated Impella® Controller does not, however, meet the requirements for conducted emissions of RTCA/DO-160G section 21.4 and has not been tested for radiated emissions per RTCA/DO-160G section 21.5. Abiomed recommends that air transport carriers follow the guidance FAA Advisory Circular AC No: 91-21.1B. Section 8-a of FAA Advisory Circular AC No: 91-21.1B states:

> "Equipment tested and found to exceed the section 21, Category M, emission levels are required to be evaluated in the operator's M-PED selected model aircraft for electromagnetic interference (EMI) and radio frequency interference (RFI). All navigation, communication, engine, and flight control systems will be operating in the selected aircraft during the evaluation."

Table 9.6 Guidance and manufacturer's declaration - emissions, all equipment and systems

The Automated Impella® Controller is intended for use in the electromagnetic environment specified below. The customer or user of the Automated Impella® Controller should ensure that it is used in such an environment.

Emissions Test	Compliance	Electromagnetic Enforcement – Guidance
RF Emissions CISPR 11	Group 1 Class A	The Automated Impella® Controller uses RF energy only for its internal function. Therefore, its RF emissions are very low and are not likely to cause any interference in nearby electronic equipment.
Harmonics IEC 61000-3-2	Class A	The Automated Impella® Controller is suitable for use in all establishments other than domestic and those directly connected to the public low-voltage power supply network that supplies buildings used for domestic purposes.
Flicker IEC 61000-3-3	Complies	

Table 9.7 Guidance and manufacturer's declaration - immunity

The Automated Impella® Controller is intended for use in the electromagnetic environment specified below. The customer or user of the Automated Impella® Controller should ensure that it is used in such an environment.

Immunity Test	IEC 60601 Test Level	Compliance Level	Electromagnetic Environment – Guidance
Electrostatic Discharge (ESD) IEC 61000-4-2	±6 kV contact ±8 kV air	±8 kV contact ±15 kV air	The relative humidity should be at least 5%.
Electrical Fast Transient/burst IEC 61000-4-4	±2 kV Mains ±1 kV for input/ output lines	±2 kV Mains ±1 kV for input/ output lines	Mains power quality should be that of a typical commercial or hospital environment.
Surge IEC 61000-4-5	±1 kV Differential ±2 kV Common	±1 kV Differential ±2 kV Common	Mains power quality should be that of a typical commercial or hospital environment.
Voltage dips, short interruptions and voltage variations on power supply input lines IEC 61000-4-11	> 95% dip for 0.5 cycle 60% dip for 5 cycles 30% dip for 25 cycles > 95% dip for 5 seconds	> 95% dip for 0.5 cycle 60% dip for 5 cycles 30% dip for 25 cycles > 95% dip for 5 seconds	Mains power quality should be that of a typical commercial or hospital environment. If the user of the Automated Impella® Controller requires continued operation during power mains interruptions, it is recommended that the Automated Impella® Controller be powered from an uninterruptible power supply or battery.
Power Frequency 50/60 Hz Magnetic Field IEC 61000-4-8	3 A/m	3 A/m	Power frequency magnetic fields should be that of a typical location in a typical commercial or hospital environment.

Table 9.8 Guidance and manufacturer's declaration - emissions, equipment and systems that are life-supporting

The Automated Impella® Controller is intended for use in the electromagnetic environment specified below. The customer or user of the Automated Impella® Controller should ensure that it is used in such an environment.

Immunity Test	IEC 60601 Test Level	Compliance Level	Electromagnetic Environment – Guidance
			Portable and mobile RF communications equipment should be separated from the Automated Impella® Controller by no less than the recommended separation distances calculated/listed below:
Conducted RF IEC 61000-4-6	10 Vrms 150 kHz to 80 MHz	10 Vrms	$d = 0.35\sqrt{P}$
Radiated RF IEC 61000-4-3	10 V/m 80 MHz to 2.5 GHz	20 V/m	$d = 0.6\sqrt{P}$ 80 to 800 MHz $d = 1.2\sqrt{P}$ 800 MHz to 2.5 GHz Where P is the maximum power rating in watts and d is the recommended separation distance in meters. Field strengths from fixed transmitters, as determined by an electromagnetic site survey[a], should be less than the compliance level in each frequency range.[b] Interference may occur in the vicinity of equipment marked with the following symbol: 

NOTE 1: At 80 MHz and 800 MHz, the higher frequency range applies.

NOTE 2: These guidelines may not apply in all situations. Electromagnetic propagation is affected by absorption and reflection from structures, objects, and people.

[a] Field strengths from fixed transmitters, such as base stations for radio (cellular/cordless) telephones and land mobile radios, amateur radio, AM and FM radio broadcast and TV broadcast cannot be predicted theoretically with accuracy. To assess the electromagnetic environment due to fixed RF transmitters, an electromagnetic site survey should be considered. If the measured field strength in the location in which the Impella® Controller is used exceeds the applicable RF compliance level above, the Impella® Controller should be observed to verify normal operation. If abnormal performance is observed, additional measures may be necessary, such as re-orienting or relocating the Impella® Controller.

[b] Over the frequency range 150 kHz to 80 MHz, field strengths should be less than 10 V/m

Table 9.9 Recommended separation distances between portable and mobile RF communications equipment and the Automated Impella Controller, equipment and systems that are life-supporting

Recommended Separation Distances Between Portable and Mobile RF Communications Equipment and the Automated Impella® Controller, Equipment and Systems that are Life-Supporting

The Automated Impella® Controller is intended for use in the electromagnetic environment in which radiated disturbances are controlled. The customer or user of the Automated Impella® Controller can help prevent electromagnetic interference by maintaining a minimum distance between portable and mobile RF communications equipment and the Automated Impella® Controller as recommended below, according to the maximum output power of the communications equipment.

Rated Maximum Output	Recommended Separation Distances for the Automated Impella® Controller (m)		
Output Power of Transmitter (Watts)	150 KHz to 80 MHz $d = 0.35\sqrt{P}$	80 to 800 MHz $d = 0.6\sqrt{P}$	800 MHz to 2.5 GHz $d = 1.2\sqrt{P}$
0.01	0.04	0.06	0.12
0.1	0.11	0.19	0.38
1	0.35	0.6	1.2
10	1.11	1.9	3.8
100	3.5	6.0	12

For transmitters rated at a maximum output power not listed above, the recommended separation distance (d) in meters (m) can be determined using the equation applicable to the frequency of the transmitter, where P is the maximum output power rating of the transmitter in watts (W) according to the transmitter manufacturer.

NOTE 1: At 80 MHz and 800 MHz, the separation distance for the higher frequency range applies.

NOTE 2: These guidelines may not apply in all situations. Electromagnetic propagation is affected by absorption and reflection from structures, objects, and people.

Table 9.10 RFID transmitter / receiver specifications

Frequency	13.56 MHz
Receiver bandwidth	14 kHz
Effective radiated power	30 nW
Modulation	ASK

VGA MONITOR CONNECTION

The Automated Impella® Controller, which is equipped with a VGA output connector, which can be connected to a remote monitor to display the information from the controller to another screen at a resolution of 800 x 600 pixels. The connection between the controller and the monitor can be made using a cable up to 20 feet in length, or other MDDS device. One MDDS device, the Remote Link, can be used to transfer the video stream from medical devices, which have a VGA output, to a remote viewing location (via the internet.

To set-up the Remote Link with the AIC, first it is connected to AC power. Then, the VGA output from the AIC, which provides a direct video stream of its display, is connected to the Remote Link. The communication between the Remote Link and the AIC is one-way. The streamed video data is limited to Impella device operating parameters and alarms messages. There is no patient identifiable information on any of the AIC screens. Lastly, the Remote Link is connected to the

hospital LAN and the set-up is complete. The video stream information can then viewed by authorized users on their computer screen via a web browser.

During use with the Remote Link, a Medical Device Data System (MDDS), if the Automated Impella® Controller is exposed to strong electromagnetic disturbances, the Remote Link may either restart or shut down. Operators should be aware that, under these conditions, the Automated Impella® Controller operating parameters are not affected. If the Remote Link stops working because of electromagnetic disturbances, a hard restart (by first disconnecting, and then reconnecting its AC power) will correct the problem.

ALARM DELAY INFORMATION

For some Automated Impella® Controller alarms, there is a short delay between the triggered event and the audible annunciation and visual display of the alarm.

Table 9.11 Alarm Delay Information

Impella Defective	8 second delay
Impella Position Wrong	11±5 second delay
Controller Error	12±3 second delay
Emergency Shutdown Imminent	15±1 second delay
Battery Failure	28±8 second delay
Controller Failure	38±8 second delay
Battery Comm. Failure	40±10 second delay
Purge System Blocked	75±45 second delay

PATIENT ENVIRONMENT

The Automated Impella® Controller and the components of the Impella Ventricular Support Systems are approved for use within the patient environment defined in IEC 60601-1: 3rd edition and in the figure below.

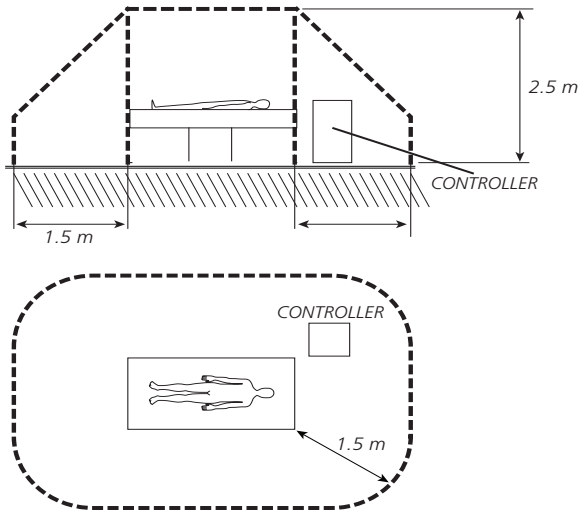


Figure 9.1 Automated Impella® Controller Patient Environment

WHITE CONNECTOR CABLE

Length	2.5 m
Service life	Single use only

Latex

The Automated Impella® Controller and Impella® Catheter, including all accessories, are not made with natural rubber latex.

IMPELLA® CATHETER PARAMETERS

Table 9.12 Impella Catheter Parameters

	Impella® 2.5	Impella CP®	Impella® 5.0	Impella® LD
Speed range	0 to 51,000 rpm	0 to 46,000 rpm	0 to 33,000 rpm	0 to 33,000 rpm
Power consumption	19.8 W	24 W	Less than 13 W	Less than 13 W
Voltage	Max. 20 V DC	Max. 20 V DC	Max. 20 V DC	Max. 20 V DC
Flow-Maximum	2.5 L/min	3.3 L/min	5.0 L/min	5.0 L/min
Purging the Impella® Catheter	5% dextrose solution with heparin concentration of 50 IU per mL	5% dextrose solution with heparin concentration of 50 IU per mL	5% dextrose solution with heparin concentration of 50 IU per mL	5% dextrose solution with heparin concentration of 50 IU per mL
Recommended purge fluid				
Dextrose concentration	5% to 40%	5% to 40%	5% to 40%	5% to 40%
Purge pressure	300 to 1100 mmHg	300 to 1100 mmHg	300 to 1100 mmHg	300 to 1100 mmHg
Infusion rate	2 to 30 mL/hr	2 to 30 mL/hr	2 to 30 mL/hr	2 to 30 mL/hr
Catheter dimensions				
Length of invasive portion (without catheter)	130 ± 3 mm	150 ± 3 mm	155 ± 3 mm	100 ± 3 mm
Diameter	Max. 4.2 mm (nom. 4.0 mm)	Max. 4.9 mm (nom. 4.7 mm)	Max. 7.2 mm (nom. 7.0 mm)	Max. 7.2 mm (nom. 7.0 mm)
Classification per IEC 60601-1	Protection class I, degree of protection: CF defibrillation-proof (Automated Impella® Controller and Impella® Catheter)	Protection class I, degree of protection: CF defibrillation-proof (Automated Impella® Controller and Impella® Catheter)	Protection class I, degree of protection: CF defibrillation-proof (Automated Impella® Controller and Impella® Catheter)	Protection class I, degree of protection: CF defibrillation-proof (Automated Impella® Controller and Impella® Catheter)
Latex content	Not made with natural rubber latex	Not made with natural rubber latex	Not made with natural rubber latex	Not made with natural rubber latex
Maximum duration of use	4 days	4 days	6 days	6 days

Weaning the patient from the Impella® Catheter is at the discretion of the physician. The Impella 2.5 and CP Systems have been approved for ≤ 4 days and the Impella 5.0 and LD Systems have been approved for ≤ 6 days of use. However, weaning could be delayed beyond the normal use for temporary support as an unintended consequence of continued instability of the patient's hemodynamics. Inability to wean the patient from the device within a reasonable time frame should result in consideration of a more durable form of left ventricular support.

IMPELLA® 2.5 CATHETER DIMENSIONS

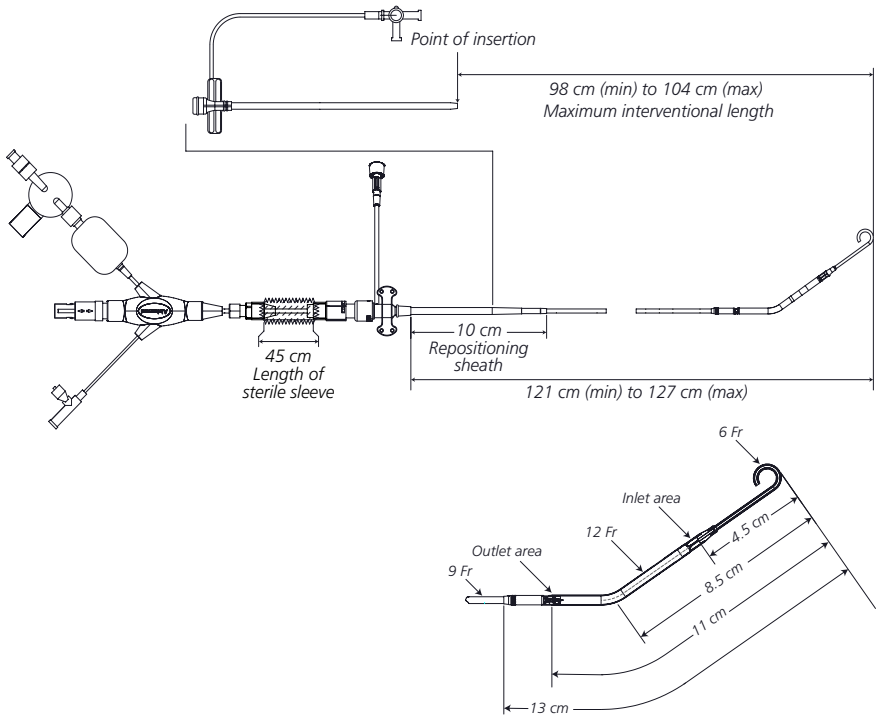


Figure 9.2 Impella® 2.5 Catheter Dimensions

IMPELLA CP® CATHETER DIMENSIONS

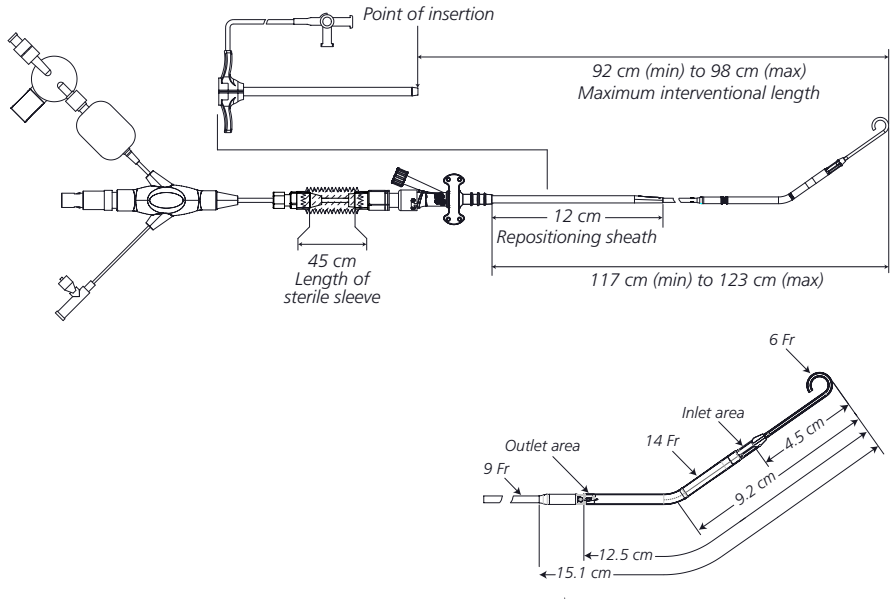


Figure 9.3 Impella CP® Catheter Dimensions

IMPELLA® 5.0 CATHETER DIMENSIONS

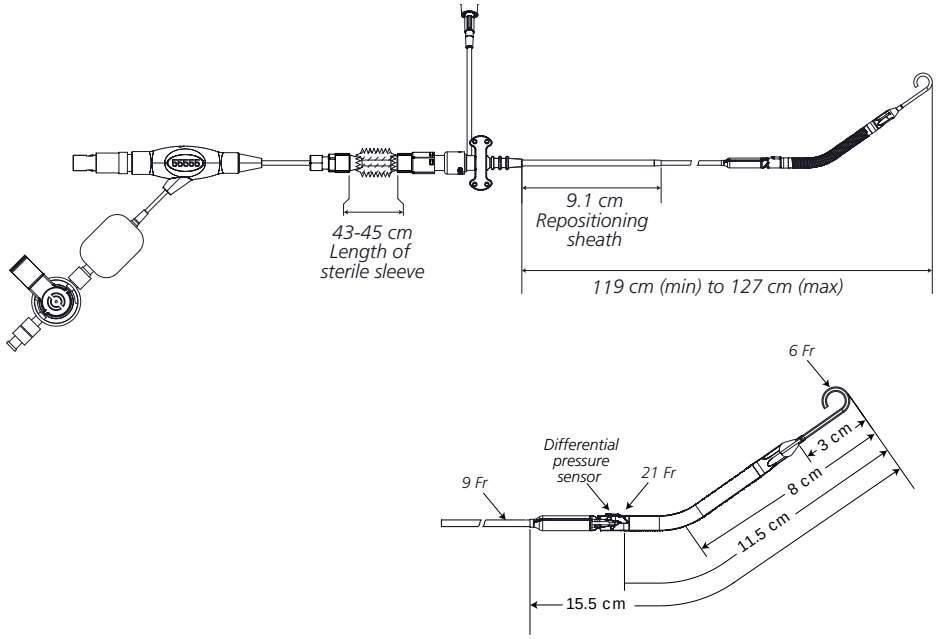


Figure 9.4 Impella® 5.0 Catheter Dimensions

IMPELLA® LD CATHETER DIMENSIONS

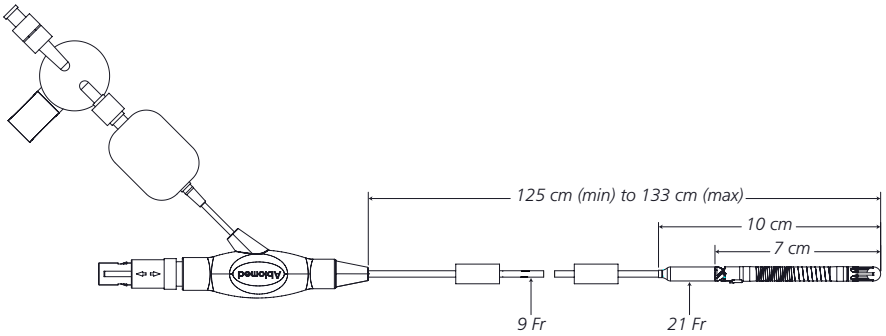


Figure 9.5 Impella® LD Catheter Dimensions

Alcohol Warning

Do NOT clean the Impella® Catheter infusion filter or pressure reservoir with alcohol and AVOID exposing these components to products containing alcohol.

CLEANING

- Clean the Automated Impella® Controller keypad and display with either 70% isopropyl alcohol or soap and water. (NOTE: Be aware that soft buttons may be activated when you spray or wipe the display.)
- Clean the Automated Impella® Controller housing with mild detergent.
- Do NOT clean with or expose any part of the clear sidearm of the Impella® Catheter (eg, infusion filter, pressure reservoir) to alcohol. Alcohol has been shown to cause cracks and leaks in these components. Carefully read labels on common skin preps and lotions to avoid using any alcohol-containing products in the area of the infusion filter or pressure reservoir.
- Do NOT allow any fluids to enter the connector sockets.
- Clean the connector cable with 70% isopropyl alcohol.

STORING THE AUTOMATED IMPELLA® CONTROLLER

Storing the Controller

To keep the Automated Impella® Controller battery charged, the controller should be plugged into an AC outlet. When plugged into an AC outlet, the controller battery will charge whether the controller is on or off.

The Li-Ion batteries must be charged for 5 hours prior to system operation in order to meet the runtime requirement of 1 hour. Failure to do so will yield a shorter runtime. After being unplugged, the Automated Impella® Controller will operate for at least 60 minutes after the batteries have been fully charged.

- Place the Automated Impella® Controller on a horizontal surface to prevent falling.
- Connect the AC power cord to an AC outlet.
- The battery may be destroyed if the Automated Impella® Controller is stored with a depleted battery.

RETURNING AN IMPELLA® CATHETER TO ABIOMED (UNITED STATES)

To return an Impella® Catheter to Abiomed, contact your local Clinical Consultant for an Abiomed-approved return kit.* The kit includes instructions for returning the Impella® Catheter to Abiomed.

** Only available in the United States*

APPENDICES

APPENDIX A: IMPELLA VENTRICULAR SUPPORT SYSTEMS LIMITED SERVICE WARRANTY (UNITED STATES)

Abiomed®, Inc. warrants that, at the time of installation, all Impella Ventricular Support Systems (the "Goods") sold will be free from defects in material and workmanship and remain free from defects under normal use and service for a period of one (1) year from the date of shipment. Extended warranty and service may, at Abiomed's option, be offered for an additional charge, in which event separate or additional terms and conditions may apply. This warranty provides coverage for the Automated Impella® Controller.

This warranty does not cover routine preventative maintenance or replacement parts that are consumed per the controller's periodic maintenance schedule outlined in the Operator's and Service Manuals.

The express warranty set forth on this page is the only warranty given by Abiomed with respect to any goods furnished hereunder. Abiomed makes no other warranty, express, implied or arising by custom or trade usage, and specifically makes no warranty of merchantability or of fitness for any particular purpose. Said express warranty shall not be enlarged or otherwise affected by Abiomed's rendering of technical or other advice or service in connection with the Goods.

Abiomed shall not be liable for incidental or consequential losses, damages or expenses, directly or indirectly arising from the sale, handling or use of the Goods, or from any other cause relating thereto, and Abiomed's sole responsibility under this warranty will be, at its option, to 1) repair or replace the Goods or any components of the Goods found to be defective in workmanship or material during the foregoing warranty period, or 2) to refund the purchase price paid. All replaced components and Goods will become the property of Abiomed. This warranty shall not apply if the Goods have been: (a) repaired or altered in any way by other than Abiomed or Abiomed authorized service personnel; (b) subjected to physical or electrical abuse or misuse; or (c) operated in a manner inconsistent with Abiomed's instructions for use of the Goods. If Abiomed determines that a claim was not caused by Abiomed or Abiomed's authorized service personnel, then Buyer shall pay Abiomed for all related costs incurred by Abiomed. This warranty is not transferable without the express written consent of Abiomed.

Under this warranty, Abiomed will provide at no charge, updates or modifications which directly affect the safe operation of the Goods. Abiomed is not obligated to provide updates or modifications which provide (a) product improvement or enhancement; (b) new product features, or (c) options to the Goods.

Abiomed has no obligation to provide a loaner system during service or maintenance of the Goods. However, at Abiomed's sole discretion, Abiomed may provide such loaner systems.

This warranty applies to the Automated Impella® Controller and not to any disposable or other component of the Impella® System. Specific items excluded from this warranty include, but are not limited to, pumps, external tubing, and accessories.

This warranty may not be amended without the express written consent of an authorized officer of Abiomed.

APPENDIX B: ABIOMED-APPROVED GUIDEWIRES AND INTRODUCERS (IMPELLA® 2.5 AND IMPELLA CP®)

ABIOMED-APPROVED GUIDEWIRES

Use only Abiomed-tested and supplied guidewires with the Impella® Catheter. Guidewires are specifically designed with unique characteristics to optimize performance of the Impella® System. Guidewires and catheters should always be used in accordance with Abiomed's instructions.

Table B.1 lists the alternative guidewires that have been tested and approved for use with the Impella® 2.5 System.

Table B.1 Alternative Guidewires for Impella® 2.5 System

Guidewire	Catalog number
Boston Scientific Platinum Plus™ ST 0.018 in	46-605, model ST/0.018/260
Boston Scientific V-18 Control Wire™ ST 0.018 in	46-854, model V18/18/300

ALTERNATIVE QUALIFIED INTRODUCER SHEATHS

Abiomed has developed and qualified introducer kits for use with the Impella® 2.5 and Impella CP® Catheters. These kits were specifically designed for use with the Impella® 2.5 and Impella CP® Catheters and take into account several technical parameters, such as:

- Size of the sheath (internal diameter and length)
- Blood leakage through the hemostatic valve
- Force required to pass the device through the hemostatic valve
- The ability to replace the introducer with a longer-term sheath

Testing and qualification, based on the above criteria, has been completed.

Table B.2 describes alternative introducer sheaths that have been tested and approved for use with the Impella Ventricular Support Systems. Use this information to evaluate the performance of these alternative introducer sheaths relative to each other and to the Abiomed-provided introducer.

Table B.2 Alternative Introducer Sheaths for Impella® 2.5 and Impella CP® System

Manufacture	Model	Fr	Length	Catalog Number
Cook Incorporated	Check-Flo® Introducer (alternative for Impella® 2.5 only)	14	13 cm	RCF-14.0-38-J
Cook Incorporated	Check-Flo Performer® Introducer *(non peel-away)*	14	30 cm	RCFW-14.0-38-30-J

Note: Use of the Cook introducer may require higher than expected insertion and removal forces.

APPENDIX C: AUTOMATED IMPELLA® CONTROLLER MENU STRUCTURE

OVERVIEW

The soft buttons on the Automated Impella® Controller provide access to the controller menu structure. The menu structure has 5 main elements:

- **MUTE ALARM**
- **FLOW CONTROL**
- **DISPLAY**
- **PURGE SYSTEM**
- **MENU**

This Appendix provides an overview of the Automated Impella® Controller menu structure. Many of the functions accessed through this menu structure are also discussed elsewhere in this manual.

MUTE ALARM

The **MUTE ALARM** soft button mutes (silences) active alarms. It does not open another menu.

When you press **MUTE ALARM**, a bell icon with an X through it replaces the words "MUTE ALARM" in the upper right of the display screen. If no alarms are active, no bell icon is displayed. When you press **MUTE ALARM** it acknowledges all active alarms and silences the audible alarm indicator for 2 minutes (for red or yellow alarms) or 5 minutes (for white alarms). (Refer to section 8 of this manual for more information about Automated Impella® Controller alarms.)

FLOW CONTROL

The **FLOW CONTROL** soft button opens the **FLOW CONTROL** menus. Before the Impella® Catheter is started, the menu options include **OFF** and **Start Pump**. Once the controller is running, the menu options for the Impella® 2.5 and Impella CP® include **BOOST, AUTO**, and P-levels between P-0 and P-8. For the Impella® 5.0 and LD, menu options include P-levels between P-0 and P-9 as shown in section 5 in this manual. The procedure for setting P-level is described in "Positioning and Starting the Impella® Catheter" in section 5.

DISPLAY

The **DISPLAY** soft button opens a menu that includes the following options for viewing waveforms and navigating to other screen displays:

- **Y-axis Scale** – opens a menu from which you can select a waveform and change its appearance by adjusting the scale of the y-axis.

  Once the waveform is selected, turn the selector knob clockwise to increase the y-axis scale and counterclockwise to decrease the y-axis scale.

  Select **OK** to accept the new y-axis scale.

  Select **Restore Default** to return to the default y-axis scale.

  Select **Center Signal** to center the waveform.

  Select **Cancel** to exit the tool.

- **Time Scale** – allows you to apply different time scales to the currently displayed waveforms.
- **Center Motor Current** – automatically centers the motor current waveform and adjusts the range accordingly.
- **Infusion** – opens the Infusion History screen. The Infusion History screen, which is discussed in section 4 of this manual, shows the volume and amount of heparin and dextrose delivered. The top entry in the table shows the volume and amount of heparin and dextrose infused from the top of the hour through the current time.
- **Purge** – displays the purge system waveforms and pressure and flow values.
- **Placement** – opens the placement signal / motor current placement screen (described in section 4 under "Placement Screen").
- **Home** – opens the home screen (described in section 4 under "Home Screen").

PURGE SYSTEM

The **PURGE SYSTEM** soft button opens a menu that includes the following purge system procedure options:

- **Change Purge Fluid** – starts the procedure to change the purge fluid
- **Change Purge Cassette** – starts the procedure to replace the purge cassette
- **Change Purge System** – starts the procedure to change both the purge fluid and purge cassette
- **De-air Purge System** – starts the de-air procedure
- **Transfer to Standard Configuration** – starts the procedure for transferring from the set-up configuration of the Impella® 2.5 or Impella CP® System to the standard configuration.

These procedures are described in section 5 of this manual.

MENU

The **MENU** soft button opens a menu of options related to controller settings, alarm history, repositioning, and starting a procedure. The menu includes the following options:

- **Settings / Service**

  Service

  System Information. Opens the System Information table. This provides information about the software version, IP addresses, current type of Impella Catheter, and current catheter runtime.

  Set Date/Time. Displays the menu for changing the date and time

  Service Timers. Displays the Service Timers menu. Console operating time and purge motor operating time are displayed in hours.

  Screen Brightness. Opens the Screen Brightness selection box. The brightness of the screen display can be set from 50% to 100%.

  Language. Opens the Language selection box. Use the selector knob to select German, English, French, Italian, Spanish, or Dutch. The system will immediately change the language on the controller for all displayed text. This language will be used after system restart unless another language is selected.

  Disable (Enable) Placement Monitoring.

  Disable (Enable) Retrograde Flow Control.

  Disable (Enable) Audio–Placement Signal Not Reliable. Allows you to enable or disable audio for the Placement Signal Not Reliable alarm. This selection is available only if a Placement Signal Not Reliable alarm is active or the audio has been disabled for this alarm.

  Disable (Enable) Audio–Purge Pressure High/System Blocked. Allows you to enable or disable audio for the Purge Pressure High or Purge System Blocked alarms. This selection is only available if one of these two alarms is active or the audio has been disabled for one of these alarms.

  Disable (Enable) Audio–Placement Signal Lumen Blocked. Allows you to enable or disable audio for the Placement Signal Lumen Blocked alarm. This selection is available only if a Placement Signal Lumen Blocked alarm is active or the audio has been disabled for this alarm.

  Disable (Enable) Audio - Suction. Allows you to enable or disable audio for Suction alarms. This selection is available only if a Suction alarm is active or the audio has been disabled for this alarm.

  Enable (Disable) Purge Flow Change Notification. Allows you to enable or disable the purge flow notification white alarms ("Purge Flow Increased" and "Purge Flow Decreased").

  Enable (Disable) Surgical Mode. Allows you to enable or disable Surgical Mode. If Surgical Mode is enabled, the "Impella Stopped" alarm is silenced at P-0.

- **Alarm History** – opens the Alarm History table. This provides a visual display of the chronology of stored alarm messages. The most recently occurring alarm message is displayed at the top of the list. For each message, the date and time it occurred and the alarm message heading is displayed. You can use the selector knob to select individual alarm messages and an explanation for the selected alarm message will be displayed in the failure description box.
- **Start Data Snapshot** – starts the timed data recording function to save real-time operating data for later analysis. Timed Data Recording is described under "Timed Data Recording" in section 7 of this manual.
- **Start Manual Zero** – opens the procedure for manually zeroing the differential pressure sensor of the Impella® 5.0 or LD. (This process is described under "Pressure Sensor Drift and Sensor Failure" in section 6 of this manual.)
- **Case Start** – begins the case procedure. Case Start is described in section 5 of this manual under "Case Start."

ABIOMED®

Recovering hearts. Saving lives.™

Clinical support 24 hours per day, 7 days a week:

1-800-422-8666 (US)

+49 (0) 1805 2246633 (EU)

www.abiomed.com

Abiomed, Inc.
22 Cherry Hill Drive
Danvers, Massachusetts 01923 USA
Voice: 978-777-5410
Facsimile: 978-777-8411
Email: clinical@abiomed.com

Abiomed Europe GmbH
Neuenhofer Weg 3
52074 Aachen, Germany
Voice: +49 (241) 8860-0
Facsimile: +49 (241) 8860-111
Email: europe@abiomed.com